



Washington was born in  
1732, and died in 1792 and was  
elected president in 1789.

3

mine

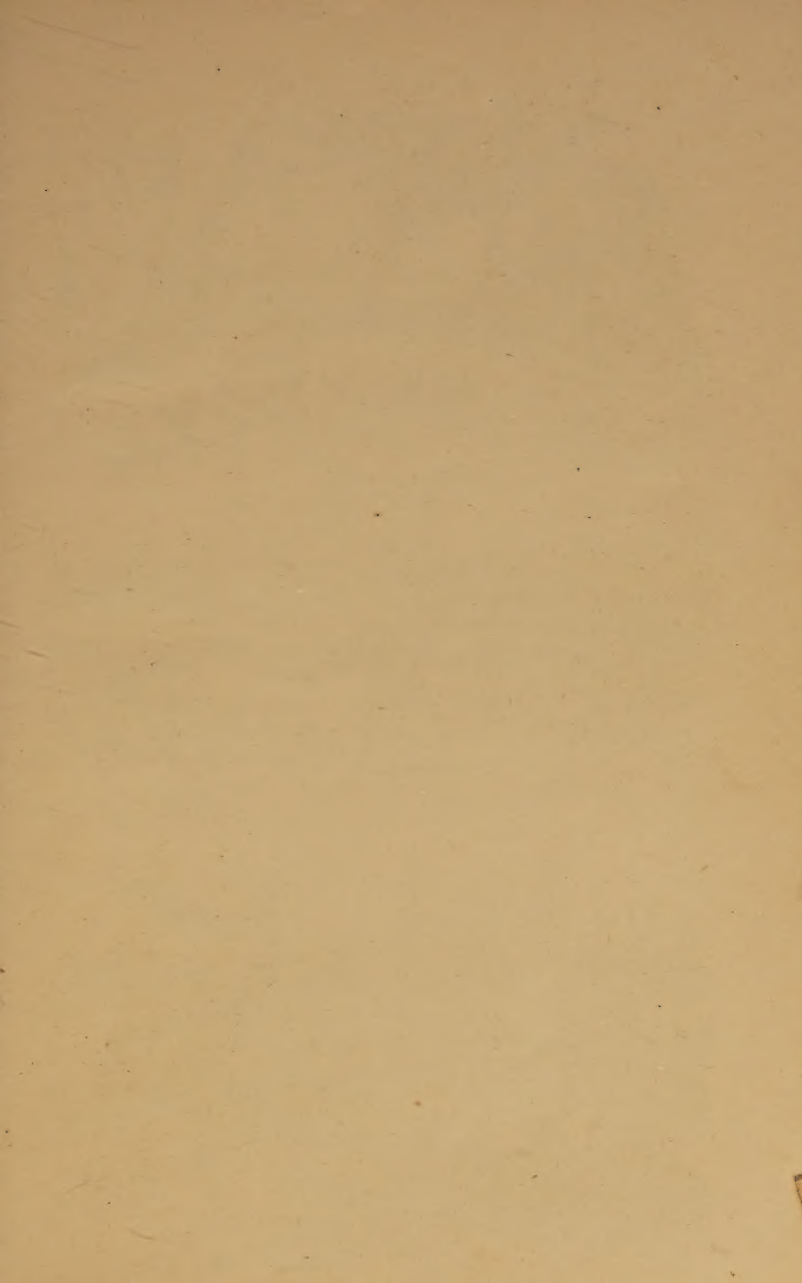
Ala 4

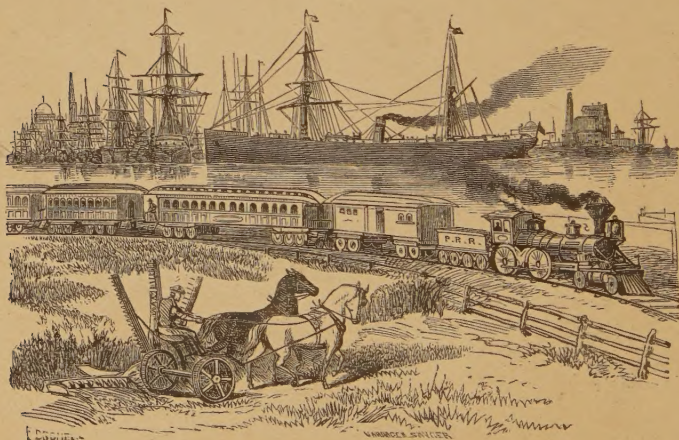
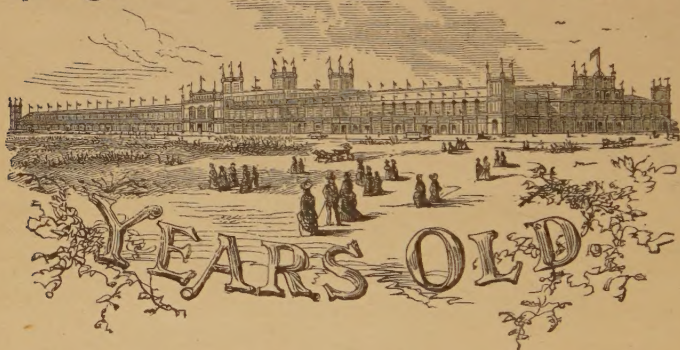












THE NEW AMERICAN SERIES.

---

BUTLER'S  
PICTORIAL HISTORY  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES.

WITH MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

BY  
JOHN A. STEWART,  
PRINCIPAL OF THE READING, PA., HIGH SCHOOL.



PHILADELPHIA:  
E. H. BUTLER & CO.



---

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1875, by  
J. H. BUTLER & CO.,  
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

---

Copyright, 1885, by E. H. BUTLER & CO.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

---

THE history of the United States of America properly commences with the period when the thirteen North American colonies of Great Britain threw off their allegiance to the mother-country and established themselves as an independent nation. All that precedes belongs either to the history of England itself or to that of those other countries whose adventurous sons were participants in the discovery, exploration or settlement of any part of our broad national area.

But in writing such a history it is necessary to prepare the reader's mind to comprehend readily and connect easily these early events, so that he may be able to trace their influence in the formation of the colonies, and fully understand the circumstances which kneaded a widely-scattered people into the magnificent nation of which it would treat. The narrative has therefore been divided into such distinct epochs or periods as naturally present themselves, which would seem to be as follows :

- First, Early Discoveries and Settlements in North America.
- Second, Formation of the English Colonies.
- Third, The Revolutionary War.
- Fourth, Development of the Nation.
- Fifth, The War with England.
- Sixth, Extension of the National Territory.
- Seventh, The War with Mexico.
- Eighth, Agitation of the Slavery Question.
- Ninth, The Civil War.
- Tenth, Effect of the War, and Passing Events.

Upon the first period enough has been told to make the narrative clear and connected. The second period presents many

tempting points for the historian ; but as a full account of each colony would lead far beyond the range of an ordinary volume, and as it would be manifestly improper to magnify any section unduly, only such parts of our colonial history are here presented as have an intimate connection with the nationality of the united country. The remaining periods have been treated as fully as the limited extent of the book would permit, detailing in clear language the important and interesting events in the life of a country upon which its own people look with pride, and which other nations have learned to respect.

A few words may here be added for the benefit of our younger students. Read history as you would a newspaper, and for the same purpose—namely, to get the information it contains. Do not attempt simply to memorize the language of the writer, ignoring the general knowledge conveyed. Read thoughtfully and understandingly, and you will soon acquire a taste for this most pleasant of studies, while your ideas will clothe themselves spontaneously in easy, natural and expressive language.

# CONTENTS.

---

## FIRST PERIOD.

### *EARLY DISCOVERIES AND SETTLEMENTS.*

#### CHAPTER I.

##### DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.

PAGE

Early Voyages—Christopher Columbus—The Cabots—Amerigo Vespucci.... 15

#### CHAPTER II.

##### THE ABORIGINES OR FIRST INHABITANTS.

Manners and Customs of the Red Men—The Four Great Indian Tribes—  
Animals and Plants of North America..... 19

#### CHAPTER III.

##### EXPLORATIONS BY VARIOUS ADVENTURERS.

Balboa—Grijalva—Cordova—Cortez—Ponce de Leon—Narvaez—Verraz-  
zani—Cartier—Ribault—Champlain—Marquette—La Salle..... 22

#### CHAPTER IV.

##### EXPLORATIONS BY THE ENGLISH.

The Cabots—Frobisher—Sir Francis Drake—Sir Humphrey Gilbert—Sir  
Walter Raleigh—Gosnold—The London and Plymouth Companies—  
Newport—Settlements at Jamestown and New Amsterdam..... 25

#### CHAPTER V.

##### PERMANENT SETTLEMENTS.

The Spaniards in Florida and New Mexico—The English in Virginia—The  
Dutch in New York—The French in Canada..... 29

## SECOND PERIOD.

### *THE COLONIES, THEIR SETTLEMENT AND DEVELOPMENT.*

#### CHAPTER I.

##### THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.

Description of Massachusetts—Voyage of the Mayflower—The Puritans  
and at Plymouth—Their Religious Opinions—Roger Williams and Anne  
Hutchinson—The Quakers—Founding of Harvard College.. 32

## CHAPTER II.

## THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.—CONTINUED.

PAGE

- Description of Connecticut—Settlements at Hartford and New Haven—  
Andros and the Charter—Founding of Yale College..... 37

## CHAPTER III.

## THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.—CONCLUDED.

- Description of Rhode Island and New Hampshire—Character of the Col-  
onists—Their Treatment of the Natives—Labors of the Missionaries..... 41

## CHAPTER IV.

## THE MIDDLE COLONIES.

- Description of New York—Henry Hudson—Dutch East India Company—  
Van Twiller—Stuyvesant—The British take possession of the Colony..... 45

## CHAPTER V.

## THE MIDDLE COLONIES.—CONCLUDED.

- Description of New Jersey and Pennsylvania—William Penn—Settlement  
of Delaware..... 51

## CHAPTER VI.

## THE SOUTHERN COLONIES.

- Description of Maryland—Lord Baltimore and Leonard Calvert—Clay-  
borne's Rebellion—The Toleration Act..... 58

## CHAPTER VII.

## THE SOUTHERN COLONIES.—CONTINUED.

- Description of Virginia—Landing at Jamestown—John Smith—Powhatan  
—Pocahontas—Prosperity of the Colony—First Arrival of Slaves—Mas-  
sacre by the Savages—Bacon's Rebellion—Berkeley and Lord Culpepper.. 62

## CHAPTER VIII.

## THE SOUTHERN COLONIES.—CONCLUDED.

- Description of the Carolinas—The Albemarle and Carteret Colonies—De-  
scription of Georgia—Savannah founded by Oglethorpe..... 73

## CHAPTER IX.

## FRENCH EXPLORATIONS AND AGGRESSIONS.

- Romantic Exploits in the South and West—King William's War—Massacre  
at Schenectady—Inter-Colonial Wars—The French cross the Alleghanies.. 78

## CHAPTER X.

## THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

- French Encroachments on the English Grants—George Washington sent as  
Messenger to the French Commander—He loses a Battle and capitulates  
—Expeditions planned by the British Government..... 82



CHAPTER XI.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.—CONTINUED.

PAGE

Outrages in Acadia—Braddock's Defeat—Unsuccessful Attempts upon Fort Du Quesne and Crown Point—The French capture Fort William Henry—Pitt becomes Prime Minister.....	87
---	----

CHAPTER XII.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.—CONCLUDED.

Capture of Louisburg—Expedition against Ticonderoga—Capture of Fort Du Quesne—Wolfe and Montcalm—Capture of Quebec—Pontiac's War....	92
--	----

CHAPTER XIII.

CONSOLIDATION OF THE COLONIES.

The Three Colonial Forms of Government—Necessity for Union.....	99
---	----

CHAPTER XIV.

BREAKING AWAY FROM THE MOTHER COUNTRY.

The Colonists restive under Taxation and Bad Government—The Navigation Act—Writs of Assistance—Taxation without Representation.....	101
---	-----

CHAPTER XV.

BREAKING AWAY FROM THE MOTHER COUNTRY.—CONCLUDED.

The Stamp Act—A Declaration of Rights—The Mutiny Act—The Boston Massacre—Tea-Parties at Baltimore and Boston—The Boston Port Bill—First Continental Congress—Samuel Adams and Patrick Henry.....	105
--	-----

THIRD PERIOD.

THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR.

CHAPTER I.

EVENTS OF THE FIRST YEAR.

Battles of Lexington and Concord—The Minute-Men—Israel Putnam—Battle of Bunker Hill—Capture of Ticonderoga—Washington Commander-in-Chief—Expeditions against Canada.....	112
--	-----

CHAPTER II.

EVENTS OF THE SECOND YEAR.

The British evacuate Boston, and occupy Staten Island—The Declaration of Independence—The United States of America—Washington is defeated on Long Island, and abandons New York—He crosses the Delaware into Pennsylvania—Battle of Trenton—Congress asks Assistance from France	119
--	-----

CHAPTER III.

EVENTS OF THE THIRD YEAR.

Battle of Princeton—Arrival of Lafayette, De Kalb and others—The British capture Philadelphia—Battle of Saratoga—Burgoyne's Surrender	126
---	-----

## CHAPTER IV.

## EVENTS OF THE FOURTH YEAR.

PAGE

- Winter at Valley Forge—Treaties with France—Battle of Monmouth—  
Massacres at Wyoming and Cherry Valley—The British lose Philadelphia  
and New Jersey, and take Savannah—Robert Morris and the Treasury.... 133

## CHAPTER V.

## EVENTS OF THE FIFTH YEAR.

- The British ravage the Coast—Exploit of Putnam—Paul Jones—The  
English Commander-in-Chief sails for Charleston..... 138

## CHAPTER VI.

## EVENTS OF THE SIXTH YEAR.

- The British capture Charleston—Cornwallis Master of South Carolina—  
Assistance from France—Treason of Benedict Arnold—Execution of  
Major André..... 142

## CHAPTER VII.

## EVENTS OF THE SEVENTH YEAR.

- Mutiny in the American Camp—Battle of Cowpens—Cornwallis occupies  
Yorktown—Washington invests his Army—Surrender of Cornwallis—  
Exultation in America and Agitation in England..... 148

## CHAPTER VIII.

## EVENTS OF THE EIGHTH YEAR.—END OF THE WAR.

- The House of Commons in favor of Peace—The Independence of the United  
States acknowledged—The Treaty of Paris—The British evacuate New  
York..... 154

## CHAPTER IX.

## THE ADOPTION OF THE CONSTITUTION.

- Articles of Confederation—Difficulties between the States—Shays' Rebel-  
lion—A Convention meets at Philadelphia, and forms a Constitution—  
The Constitution ratified—Washington first President..... 156

## FOURTH PERIOD.

*DEVELOPMENT OF THE STATES INTO A POWER.*

## CHAPTER I.

## WASHINGTON'S PRESIDENCY.

- Organization of the Executive Departments—Boundaries of the United  
States—Hamilton and the Finances—A National Bank—Washington  
re-elected—Trouble with France—The French Ambassador recalled—  
Washington's Farewell Address—New States..... 159

CHAPTER II.

JOHN ADAMS'S PRESIDENCY.

PAGE

Rénewed Trouble with France—The Difficulty settled—Death of Washington—The Sedition Laws—The City of Washington.....	167
--	-----

CHAPTER III.

JEFFERSON'S PRESIDENCY.

Purchase of Louisiana—War with the Barbary States—The Pirates punished—Death of Hamilton—Trial of Aaron Burr—The Right of Search—Robert Fulton—Admission of Ohio.....	170
---	-----

FIFTH PERIOD.

WAR WITH ENGLAND.

CHAPTER I.

MADISON'S PRESIDENCY.

Impending War with England—Battle of Tippecanoe—The Country unprepared for War—Admission of Louisiana.....	176
--	-----

CHAPTER II.

MADISON'S PRESIDENCY.—CONTINUED.

Invasion of Canada—Surrender of Hull—His Trial for Treason—Brilliant Naval Victories—Re-election of Madison.....	180
--	-----

CHAPTER III.

MADISON'S PRESIDENCY.—CONTINUED.

Campaign of 1813—Second Invasion of Canada—Battles of Lake Erie and North Bend—Death of Lawrence—Captain Porter.....	183
--	-----

CHAPTER IV.

MADISON'S PRESIDENCY.—CONTINUED.

Opposition to the War—Attack upon Plattsburgh repelled—Capture of a British Fleet.....	189
--	-----

CHAPTER V.

MADISON'S PRESIDENCY.—CONTINUED.

The British burr Washington, and invade Louisiana—Battle of New Orleans—Close of the War.....	194
---	-----

CHAPTER VI.

MADISON'S PRESIDENCY.—CONCLUDED.

Treaty of Peace—Condition of the Country—Hartford Convention—Trouble with the Algerines—United States Bank—Indiana admitted. ....	198
---	-----

## SIXTH PERIOD.

*RAPID GROWTH OF THE COUNTRY.*

## CHAPTER I.

## MONROE'S PRESIDENCY.

PAGE

War with the Seminoles—Purchase of Florida—New States—The Missouri Compromise—Mason and Dixon's Line—Monroe re-elected—Lafayette revisits America.....	202
--	-----

## CHAPTER II.

## ADAMS'S PRESIDENCY.

A Quiet Administration—A Semi-Centennial Anniversary—The Tariff Question—The Erie Canal—The First Railroad.....	209
---	-----

## CHAPTER III.

## JACKSON'S PRESIDENCY.

Rotation in Office—Osceola and the Seminoles—The Black-Hawk War—State Rights—Nullification—Contest with the United States Bank—France threatened—New States.....	211
--	-----

## CHAPTER IV.

## VAN BUREN'S PRESIDENCY.

A Financial Storm—Extra Session of Congress—Revolt in Canada...	217
---	-----

## CHAPTER V.

## HARRISON AND TYLER'S PRESIDENCY.

Death of Harrison—President Tyler deserted by his Cabinet—Settlement of the Maine Boundary Question—The Mormons—The First Telegraph Line—Annexation of Texas—Admission of Florida and Iowa.....	220
---	-----

## SEVENTH PERIOD.

*WAR WITH MEXICO.*

## CHAPTER I.

## POLK'S PRESIDENCY.

General Taylor sent to Texas—He is attacked by the Mexicans—Battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma—Capture of Monterey—Operations in California—General Kearney and Colonel Doniphan—Battle of Buena Vista—General Scott's Campaign—Battle of Cerro Gordo—Capture of Contreras, Molino del Rey and Chapultepec—The Army enters Mexico—Terms of Peace, and Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo—The Wilmot Proviso—General Taylor elected President—Admission of Wisconsin.....	225
--	-----

## EIGHTH PERIOD.

## AGITATION OF THE SLAVERY QUESTION.

## CHAPTER I.

## TAYLOR AND FILLMORE'S PRESIDENCY.

PAGE

California applies for Admission—Slavery Question—Omnibus Bill—Death of Taylor—Fugitive Slave Law—Pierce elected President—Admission of California .....	237
--	-----

## CHAPTER II.

## PIERCE'S PRESIDENCY.

The Gadsden Purchase—Expeditions and Explorations—The Kansas-Nebraska Bill—Squatter Sovereignty—Buchanan elected President.....	242
---	-----

## CHAPTER III.

## BUCHANAN'S PRESIDENCY.

The Dred-Scott Decision—John Brown—Presidential Canvass of 1860—Election of Abraham Lincoln—Secession of seven States—The Peace Conference—Fort Sumter fired upon—New States.....	244
---	-----

## NINTH PERIOD.

## THE CIVIL WAR.

## CHAPTER I.

## LINCOLN'S PRESIDENCY.

Lincoln's Inaugural Address—Capitulation of Fort Sumter—Secession of four more States—Seizure of Harper's Ferry Arsenal—Battle of Bull Run—Capture of Port Royal—The Alabama.....	251
---	-----

## CHAPTER II.

## LINCOLN'S PRESIDENCY.—CONTINUED.

Capture of Fort Donelson—Capture of New Orleans—The Merrimac and Monitor—Battle of Pittsburg Landing—Grant's Attempts against Vicksburg—Advance of the Army of the Potomac—The Seven Days' Battles—Lee invades Maryland—Battle of Antietam—Battle of Fredericksburg...	258
--	-----

## CHAPTER III.

## LINCOLN'S PRESIDENCY.—CONTINUED.

Emancipation Proclamation—Battle of Chancellorsville—Battle of Gettysburg—Capture of Vicksburg—Surrender of Port Hudson—Battles of Chickamauga and Chattanooga—Admission of West Virginia.....	272
--	-----

## CHAPTER IV.

## LINCOLN'S PRESIDENCY.—CONTINUED.

Condition of the North and South—Expedition up the Red River—Alabama and Kearsarge—Capture of Atlanta—Battles of Franklin and Nashville—Sherman's March to the Sea—Capture of Savannah—Battle of the Wilderness—Siege of Richmond—Shenandoah Valley evacuated—Forts in Mobile Bay taken—Attack upon Fort Fisher—Re-election of President Lincoln—Admission of Nevada.....	280
---	-----



## CHAPTER V.

## LINCOLN'S PRESIDENCY.—CONCLUDED.

Fall of Fort Fisher—Sherman's March Northward—Grant's Final Operations—Sheridan's Raid—Petersburg and Richmond abandoned by the Confederates—Lee's Surrender—End of the Civil War..... 290

## TENTH PERIOD.

*EFFECTS OF THE CIVIL WAR—PASSING EVENTS.*

## CHAPTER I.

## JOHNSON'S PRESIDENCY.

Assassination of President Lincoln—Inauguration of Andrew Johnson—His Task—The Thirteenth Amendment—Disagreements between Congress and the President—Impeachment of Johnson—The Fourteenth Amendment—Purchase of Alaska—The Transatlantic Cable—Grant elected President—The Fifteenth Amendment—Admission of Nebraska..... 293

## CHAPTER II.

## GRANT'S PRESIDENCY.

Completion of the Pacific Railroad—Alabama Claims settled by Arbitration—Great Fires in Chicago and Boston—Re-election of President Grant—Reconstruction—Admission of Colorado—The Centennial Celebration—Indian Troubles—Yellow Fever—Corruption—Presidential Contest. .... 295

## CHAPTER III.

## HAYES'S PRESIDENCY.

Condition of Affairs—Composition of Congress—President Hayes's First Efforts—Noted Events..... 302

## CHAPTER IV.

## GARFIELD'S PRESIDENCY.

Garfield's Installation—Shooting of the President, July 2, 1881—His Death, September 19—The Universal Expression of Sympathy..... 304

## CHAPTER V.

## ARTHUR'S PRESIDENCY.

Vice-President Arthur sworn into Office—The Presidential Succession—Chinese Immigration—Brooklyn Bridge—Greely's Expedition..... 305

## CHAPTER VI.

## CLEVELAND'S PRESIDENCY.

Death of General Grant—Centennial Anniversary of the Adoption of the Constitution—The Tariff—Election of Harrison..... 307

APPENDIX.....i-xxxviii.

# HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

---



## FIRST PERIOD.

### EARLY DISCOVERIES AND SETTLEMENTS.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### *DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.*

1. NORTH AMERICA, in which the United States are situated, lies between Europe and Asia, being washed by the Atlantic Ocean on the east, and by the Pacific Ocean on the west. It extends from near the North Pole almost to the equatorial regions, and



SAN SALVADOR.

embraces a vast area, presenting every variety of climate and soil.

2. Of this continent the United States occupy the largest and by far the most valuable portion, being separated from the cold and inhospitable north by the possessions of Great Britain, and from the sultry south by Mexico. They have thus every advantage of situation to make them a great and prosperous nation.

3. America was practically unknown to Europeans prior to the year 1492. A short time before that date there seems to have been awakened in Europe a general desire for geographical knowledge. Narratives of travel, especially voyages, were eagerly read; and no wonder, for the maritime cities of Venice and Genoa had become immensely wealthy by foreign, and especially East Indian, traffic. Thus the knowledge of man, stimulated by his cupidity, was ever impelling him to new enterprises.

4. Among those who had caught the spirit of adventure was a young Genoese named Christopher Columbus. He was a poor boy, the son of a wool-comber, but had all the elements of character fitting him for the undertaking which he proposed to himself. He was a hard student, and an honest, fearless, determined youth. Profound reflection, and his geographical knowledge, applied to the earth considered as a globe, led him to believe that India might be reached by sailing westward.

5. At this time, also, rumors were current of a land discovered beyond the Atlantic by the hardy Northmen dwelling on the coasts of Sweden and Norway; and these were probably not without their effect on the imagination of the Italian navigator.

6. But, whether thus influenced or not, certain it is that, after almost incredible efforts, Columbus induced Queen Isabella, the wife of Ferdinand of Spain, to espouse his cause; and, after much persuasion, her husband agreed to equip a little fleet for the hardy adventurer.

7. The whole cost of the expedition, as set down by the king's treasurer, was, in our money, about twenty thousand dollars, a very large sum for those days. The king and queen supplied Columbus with three small vessels, named the *Pinta*, the *Santa Maria* and the *Niña*, and after great difficulty he procured a crew.

8. The affecting scenes which occurred in the little town of Palos, on the Spanish coast, upon the 3d of August, 1492—the impressive ceremonies of the Church, the womanly tears of Isabella, the sterner parting of the king, the weeping of those who were about to be separated, and finally the unfurling of the sails and the departure of the fleet—belong rather to the painter and the poet than to the narrator.

9. After a toilsome passage of sixty-eight days, land was reached—the discovery of the New World was an accomplished fact. The cry of “LAND!” rang forth from the *Pinta* on the evening of the 11th of October, and on the next morning Columbus, bearing the banner of Spain, stepped upon the soil, and took possession of it in the name of Ferdinand and Isabella.

10. Thus, on Friday, October 12, 1492, America was made known to Europeans, and Guanahani, one of the Bahama Islands, became famous in history. To this island Columbus gave the name of San Salvador, for it had indeed proved a saviour to him. Columbus himself, however, did not obtain the honor of giving his name to the continent. This happened, perhaps, more by accident than by design.

11. In the year 1497, John and Sebastian Cabot, father and son, Venetians by birth, sailed from Bristol, England, with one vessel, under a commission from Henry VII. of that country. Having coasted along the Atlantic shores of the New World for a great distance, the Cabots discovered the mainland, to which they gave the name New-found-land. They were thus the first Europeans to touch the continent of America.

12. Amerigo Vespucci, a Florentine navigator, two years later, made some discoveries in the West, and gave to Europeans the first published account of the new region, and thus his name, in its Latinized form (*Americus*), became permanently associated with the land which he had mapped out and described.

13. The services of Columbus were ill requited by the sovereign whose reign he had rendered illustrious. He returned from a fourth voyage in 1506, and died two years later in obscurity and absolute want. Most cruel of all, unaware of the grandeur of his exploits, the Genoese navigator died in the belief that it was but a part of India which he had discovered.

## QUESTIONS.

1. How is North America situated? How far does it extend? What does it embrace?
2. What country forms a principal part of North America?
3. What of the knowledge of geography before 1492?
4. What of the early life of Columbus? How did Columbus think of reaching India? What led to this belief?
5. What rumors were afloat at this time?
6. Who espoused the cause of Columbus? What assistance was granted him?
7. What was the whole cost of the expedition? Name the vessels in which Columbus and his crew sailed.
8. When and from what place did he sail?
9. After how long a voyage was land reached? When and in whose name did Columbus take possession of the newly-discovered country?
10. Name the exact date of the discovery of America. Where did Columbus first land, and what did he name it?
11. What country after Spain sent explorers to the New World? When and from what place did they sail? What made the discoveries of the Cabots remarkable?
12. Why was the country named America? When did Vespucci visit the New World?
13. What is said of the death of Columbus? What did Columbus think he had discovered?

## PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

CABOT (Cab'-ot).	PINTA (Peen'-tah).
AMERIGO VESPUCCI (Ah-may-re'-go Ves-poot'-chee).	SANTA MARIA (San'-tah Mah-ree'- ah).
VENICE (Ven'-iss).	NIÑA (Neen'-yah).
GENOA (Jen'-o-ah).	GUANAHANI (Gwah-nah'-hah'-ne).
INDIES (In'-diz).	BAHAMA (Bah-hā'-mah).
PALOS (Pah'-los).	SAN SALVADOR (San Sal-vah-dōr').



AMERIGO VESPUCCI.



## CHAPTER II.

*THE ABORIGINES OR FIRST INHABITANTS.*

1. WHEN Columbus reached the shores of San Salvador, he found the island inhabited by people of a copper color, very rude and uncivilized, but simple and confiding in disposition. These people he named Indians, for he supposed them to be the inhabitants of India. The name thus imposed by the great navigator clings to that peculiar race to-day, although it is now well known to everybody how inappropriate it is.

2. When first known to Europeans, the Indians were found to be unsettled in their habits, wandering from place to place, as fancy dictated, or as the means of support seemed to be abundant. Yet the tribes seldom trespassed upon one another's territory; and the hunting-grounds of one were, as a rule, respected by all others.

3. Living by the chase, for the most part, they paid little attention to agriculture; and when the ground was tilled, the labor was invariably performed by their women. An Indian brave would have deemed it an indignity to engage in the servile employment of hoeing the ground. To him belonged the proud duty of stocking his wigwam—for so he named his hut or tent—with venison and fish; and beyond this, except to battle with his foe, he knew no care.



INDIAN WIGWAM.

4. The wigwam, in winter, was made of the skins of animals, supported on branches of trees; in summer the leafy branches themselves sufficed. Sometimes, for society, convenience or defence, the wigwams were clustered together and surrounded by a palisade of young trees. These formed an Indian village or town, the only approximation to the white man's city.

5. The dress of the sexes corresponded with their employment.

Both were rude and savage-like, but they well portrayed the disposition of mind and the social condition which existed among this people. The female was meanly clad in winter with the skins of animals ; in summer she had scarcely any covering at

all. The male, whether warmly clothed for winter or almost naked in summer, paid great attention to his appearance. Paint and feathers, beads and rings, together with implements of hunting or of war, were his delight. With these he tattooed, ornamented and equipped himself, according as he desired to be an object of admiration to his own people or of terror to his foes.



INDIAN BRAVE.

6. The weapons originally found in use among the Indians were the tomahawk, the spear and the club, which were principally employed in war ; and the bow and arrow, which were the constant companions of the chase. The arrows and spears were at first rudely tipped with stone, but afterwards, when the use of iron became known, were ingeniously made from that metal.

7. Like all other barbarous people, the red men were tyrants to their women, whose lot it was to raise the crops, prepare food and clothing, and carry on their backs, with their papposes or infants, the heavy burdens imposed by their lords. Yet bravery, hospitality and the remembrance of benefits marked the race, and the word of promise given by a sachem was rarely broken.

8. Altogether, the Indian possessed many admirable traits of character ; and if we are at times disposed to denounce him for his cunning, treachery and general bad faith, let us not forget that we have inflicted innumerable ills upon this freedom-loving son of the forest ; let us remember the white man's destruction of his race, his hunting-grounds wrested from him, and the remnant of his people ever driven onward to the great ocean of his final oblivion.

9. Four families of these people form no inconsiderable part in the historical picture of the States. These were the Algonquins, the Huron-Iroquois, the Cherokees and the Mobilians.

10. The Algonquins extended from Hudson Bay in the north to Cape Fear River in the south, and from the Atlantic to the Mississippi.

11. The Huron-Iroquois lay within the Algonquin territory,—the Hurons around Lake Erie, and the Iroquois farther east and south. But, though thus encompassed, the Huron-Iroquois were a distinct and powerful people, speaking a different language; and they exerted no little influence during colonial and Revolutionary times.\*

12. The Cherokees occupied the country along the southern slope of the Alleghanies, and lay between the great Algonquin and Mobilian families.

13. The Mobilians held all that region which extends from Cape Fear River to the Gulf of Mexico.

14. The early adventurers, besides finding this new and peculiar race of people upon the continent of America, also found many plants and animals then wholly unknown in the Old World. Among the new plants were Indian corn or maize, potatoes and tobacco; and among the new animals, the bison, usually called the buffalo, and the turkey.

15. The domestic animals, such as horses, oxen and sheep, were not found. Neither, strange to say, was man's constant companion, the dog. Now Indian corn, potatoes and tobacco are everywhere cultivated in Europe, and the domestic animals we have named are as common in America as in the Old World.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What race of people did Columbus find in the newly-discovered country?

2, 3. Describe the habits of the Indians. Upon whom did all servile labor devolve?

4. What kind of habitations had they? Had they any villages or towns?

\* The Iroquois or Five Nations—viz., the Senecas, Cayugas, Onondagas, Oneidas and Mohawks—were especially famous in colonial story.

5. How did the Indian warrior equip himself? How was the female dressed?
6. What is said of their weapons?
7. How were the women treated?
8. Why should we judge the Indian leniently?
9. Name the four great Indian tribes.
10. Locate the Algonquins.
11. Locate the Huron-Iroquois.
12. Locate the Cherokees.
13. Locate the Mobilians.
14. Name the three native plants of America. What animals were found?
15. What animals were not found?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

PAPPOOSE (Pap-pōōse').	ALLEGHANIES (Al-le-ghā'-neez).
SACHEM (Sā'-chem).	ABORIGINES (Ab-ō-rij'-ī-nēz).
ALGONQUINS (Al-gon'-kwins).	SENECAS (Sen'-e-cāz).
HURON-IROQUOIS (Hu'-ron E'-ro-kwah).	CAYUGAS (Kā-yoo'-gāz).
CHEROKEE (Chēr'-o-kee).	ONONDAGAS (On-on-daw'-gāz).
MOBILIANS (Mo-bil'-yāns).	ONEIDAS (O-ni'-dāz).
	MOHAWKS (Mo'-hawks.)

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### *EXPLORATIONS BY VARIOUS ADVENTURERS.*

1. IMMEDIATELY after the discovery of this country by Columbus, numerous adventurers, anxious to render their names famous by daring exploits, hastened to the New World. Various motives actuated these fearless men, but doubtless the acquisition of wealth was the paramount one.

2. Soon the West India Islands, Cuba, Porto Rico, Hispaniola and Jamaica, were occupied by the Spaniards. Darien, on the narrow neck of land which unites the northern and southern continents, was settled early in 1510; and three years after, Vasco Nuñez de Balboa discovered the Pacific Ocean, and took possession of it in the name of his sovereign, Ferdinand of Castile.

3. Florida was discovered in 1512 by Juan Ponce de Leon, a Spanish nobleman. Sailing among the islands contiguous to Porto Rico—of which he was the governor—in search of the wonderful fountain of perpetual youth, he reached the mainland on Easter Sunday, and in honor of the day of its discovery named it Florida.

4. Yucatan was explored by the Spaniard Cordova in 1517, and Southern Mexico in 1518 by his countryman, Grijalva. Hernando Cortez, a brave but ruthless soldier, with a mere handful of daring men, destroyed the Aztec empire, with its ruler, Montezuma, and reduced Mexico to a Spanish province, between the years 1519 and 1521.

5. About the same time, or in 1520, Vasquez de Ayllon, also a Spaniard, driven by a storm upon the coast of South Carolina, enticed into his ships a number of the natives, by whom he had been treated kindly, and tried to carry them to the mines of Hispaniola. But the liberty-loving, red men preferred death to slavery, and died of voluntary starvation.

6. Panfilo de Narvaez attempted a settlement in Florida in 1528, but, after terrible disasters, failed. About the year 1539, Ferdinand de Soto, a companion-in-arms of Balboa, followed Narvaez in pursuit of El Dorado, "the land of gold;" but his search was also in vain. He made his name illustrious, however, by discovering the great "father of waters," the Mississippi River, in 1541. In the bed of that mighty stream the body of the disappointed chief was buried in the following year.

7. In 1565, Melendez, a Spanish adventurer, attempted to colonize Florida, and in September, St. Augustine, the oldest town in the United States, was founded. In 1580 a monk, named Augustine Ruyz, penetrated into what is now New Mexico, and in 1582 he founded there the town of Santa Fé, which is thus the second oldest in the United States.

8. During all this time the French were not idle. In 1524, Verrazzani, a Florentine, sent out by Francis I., King of France, explored the coasts of New Jersey, Rhode Island, Massachusetts, Maine and Nova Scotia. In 1534 the king sent James Cartier to the Gulf of St. Lawrence and Newfoundland. In a second voyage, this French navigator sailed up the St. Lawrence as



far as Montreal, to which he gave its present name. Cartier claimed possession of Canada in behalf of the French.

9. In 1562, some Huguenots, or French Protestants, under John Ribault, explored Florida, and, entering Port Royal Inlet, built a fort called Carolina, in honor of Charles IX. of France. This was abandoned; but two years later Laudonnière led another colony of Huguenots to the Florida coast. These were destroyed by Melendez, who in the name of Spain claimed the country. The slaughter of his brethren was avenged by Dominic de Gourgues, who surprised and captured two hundred Spaniards at Fort Carolina and hanged them all.

10. De Monts, a Huguenot, and Champlain, a warm Catholic came out together in 1604, and formed a settlement at Port Royal, Nova Scotia, which was then called Acadia. This was the first permanent settlement of the French in America. Champlain explored and gave his name to the lake so called; he also in 1608 founded the oldest French settlement in Canada, which he named Quebec.

11. About 1679, La Salle, Marquette, Joliet, Father Hennepin, and other French missionaries, explored the Mississippi Valley, and the names given by them to places there still linger. La Salle called the whole region Louisiana, in honor of Louis XIV. of France.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What motives led many adventurers to visit the newly-discovered country?

2. When and where was the first attempt made to settle the mainland? When and by whom was the Pacific Ocean discovered, and who laid claim to it?

3. What discovery was made by Ponce de Leon? When did he make it, and why did he name the land Florida?

4. When and by whom were Yucatan and Mexico explored? When and by whom was Mexico reduced to a Spanish province?

5. Of what crime was Vasquez de Ayllon guilty?

6. When and by whom was an attempt made to settle Florida? What led to the discovery of the Mississippi? What became of its discoverer?

7. When and by whom was the oldest settlement in the United States founded? Which is the second oldest city in the United States?

8. What of French explorations? By whom was the St. Lawrence River discovered?





NORTH AMERICA.



9. What settlements were made by the Huguenots in 1562 and 1564? What crime was avenged by De Gourgues?

10. When, where and by whom was the first permanent French settlement made in America? Which is the oldest French settlement in Canada?

11. What French missionaries made explorations in America? Why was Louisiana so named?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

CUBA (Kû'-bah).	SANTA FÉ (San'-tah Fay).
PORTO RICO (Port'-o Ree'-ko).	VERRAZZANI (Vér-rat-sah'-nee).
HISPANIOLA (Hiss-pan-e-ô'-lah).	FLORENTINE (Flör'-en-teen).
JAMAICA (Jă-mă'-kah).	CARTIER (Car'-te-ây).
DARIEN (Day-re-en').	MONTREAL (Mont-re-awl').
VASCO NUÑEZ DE BALBOA (Vahs'- ko Noon'-yěth day Băl-bo'-ah).	HUGUENOTS (Hu'-ghě-nots).
CASTILE (Cas-teel').	RIBAUT (Re-bo').
YUCATAN (Yoo-kă-tan').	LAUDONNIÈRE (Lô-dôn-î-air').
HERNANDO CORTEZ (Her-nan'-do Kor'-tez).	DE GOURGUES (Deh Goorg).
AZTEC (Az'-těk).	CHAMPLAIN (Sham-plane').
MONTEZUMA (Mon-te-zoo'-mah).	NOVA SCOTIA (No'-vă Scô'-shî-ă.).
JUAN PONCE DE LEON (Hwahn Pon'-thay day Lay-own').	ACADIA (Ah-kă'-dî-ă).
PANFILO DE NARVAEZ (Pan'-fe-lo day Nar-vah-eth').	QUEBEC (Kwe-bek').
DE SOTO (Day So'-to).	MARQUETTE (Mar-ket').
MISSISSIPPI (Mis-sis-sip'-pe).	JOLIET (Zho'-î-ă).
MELENDEZ (May-len'-deth).	LA SALLE (Lah Săl).
AUGUSTINE (Aw-gus-teen').	LOUISIANA (Loo-is-î-ăn'-ă).
BUYZ (Roo-eeth').	VASQUEZ DE AYLLO (Vas'-keth day Îe-yôn').
	DE MONTS (Deh Mong').
	GRIJALVA (Grê-hăl'-vah.)
	CORDOVA (Kor'-do-vah).

---

### CHAPTER IV.

#### EXPLORATIONS BY THE ENGLISH.

1. THE Cabots, as has been mentioned, sailing under a commission from Henry VII. of England, first discovered the American continent, and explored its coast from Labrador to Albe-marle Sound. The English claimed the northern part of the

continent by right of this discovery, but nothing was done to establish their claim until the year 1576.

2. In this year Martin Frobisher made an attempt to find a north-western passage to India, but he succeeded merely in pushing his way among the ice of the northern seas, through the strait which bears his name, and returned home without having accomplished anything worthy of notice.

3. Three years later, or in 1579, Sir Francis Drake, a noted English sailor, fitted out an expedition to the Pacific Ocean by way of the Straits of Magellan, and explored the western American coast as far north as Oregon, passing the winter of that year in the bay now known as that of San Francisco.

4. Sir Humphrey Gilbert, half-brother of the celebrated Sir Walter Raleigh, made some efforts to plant a colony in the New World. Having obtained a patent from Queen Elizabeth for a large tract of territory, he sailed, in 1583, for the American coast. His expedition, however, failed, and he, with all his crew, was lost.

5. His half-brother, Sir Walter Raleigh, was a great favorite with the English queen, and entering into Gilbert's plan attempted to carry it out. For this purpose Raleigh obtained from Elizabeth a patent for an extent of territory still larger than that previously granted to his half-brother. This tract was called Virginia, in honor of the maiden queen.

6. His first expedition thither was not conducted by himself, but was entrusted by him to Amidas and Barlow, two skilful naval commanders of the day. It was eminently successful. Indeed, so pleased was Queen Elizabeth with the valuable cargo of skins and cedar wood with which the ships returned laden that she conferred the order of knighthood upon the fortunate projector. This occurred in 1584.

7. In the following year a second expedition was sent out by Sir Walter, under Sir Richard Grenville, to Roanoke Island, with the design of planting a colony. Grenville left one hundred and ten men there; but as they spent their time in searching for gold, and did not cultivate the soil, they would have starved to death had not Sir Francis Drake chanced to appear off the coast the following year on his return home from the Indies.

8. Drake, pitying their forlorn condition and prompted by friendship for Raleigh, carried them back with him to England in 1586. These men had learned the use of tobacco and potatoes, and introduced the plants into England.

9. Raleigh prepared a third expedition in 1587 with the design of colonizing the country. This time he sent out families, and appointed John White the governor. The first object was to found the "city of Raleigh" on Chesapeake Bay. White returned home the same year for supplies, leaving in the colony one hundred and seventeen persons in all.

10. Owing to the threatened invasion of England by Spain, he was unable to return for three years. When he did get back, in 1590, the entire colony, including his own family, had perished.

11. Raleigh had spent the large sum of two hundred thousand dollars in his attempts at colonization, and, becoming disheartened with his failures, had, in 1589, the year before White returned to America, sold his patent to some London merchants, who commenced trading on a small scale with the country.

12. Among the traders employed by these merchants was Bartholomew Gosnold, who, sailing directly west from England, and thereby shortening the usual voyage nearly three hundred miles, discovered and named Cape Cod, Nantucket, Martha's Vineyard and the Elizabeth Islands.

13. Raleigh fell into disgrace with James I., the successor of Elizabeth, and the king, disregarding previous grants, re-granted in the year 1606 all the territory between the 34th and 45th parallels of north latitude to two associations known as the London and Plymouth Companies.

14. To the London Company was assigned all the land between the 34th and 38th degrees, and to the Plymouth Company all between the 41st and 45th degrees. The intervening space, from the 38th to the 41st degree, was to remain unoccupied, so as to keep the companies apart. There was no western limit set to these grants.

15. The London Company at once sent out Christopher Newport, with three ships and one hundred and five emigrants, with the design of landing at Roanoke, but their vessels were forced

by stress of weather into Chesapeake Bay. When, ascending the river, which Newport named the James, they reached what they deemed a suitable spot, fifty miles from its mouth, they there made the first permanent English settlement, on the 23d of May, 1607. This they called Jamestown, both river and town being named in honor of the English king.

16. Of the Plymouth Company it will be necessary to say more farther on in the narrative, therefore no special mention of it will be made here, except that its first colony was planted in 1620, at Plymouth, on Cape Cod Bay, in Massachusetts.

17. In the year 1607, while the London Company was effecting a settlement in Virginia, Henry Hudson, an English navigator, was attempting a north-western passage to India in an English ship, and searched in vain along the American coast. Two years later, being in the employ of the Dutch East India Company, he made an attempt by the north-east, but this likewise proved unsuccessful.

18. Again crossing the Atlantic, impelled by his favorite idea, he discovered and entered what is now the Bay of New York, and ascended the river which bears his name. Upon this discovery the Dutch claims in America were based, but no settlement was made until 1613, when New Amsterdam, now New York, was founded on Manhattan Island.

19. As the English explorations are manifestly more intimately connected with the history proper of the United States than those of other nations, a more extended narration has been given of them than our space has allowed us to furnish of those of the Spanish, French and Dutch.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. When and by whom was the continent of America first discovered? Under whose patronage did they sail?
2. What discoveries were made by Frobisher?
3. When did Sir Francis Drake set out on an expedition, and what did he accomplish?
4. What English settlements were attempted in 1583?
5. What grant of territory was made to Raleigh by Elizabeth, and what did he name it?
6. Who conducted the first expedition to Virginia?



7. What is said of the second colony sent out by Raleigh?
8. What became of the colony in 1586? What of tobacco and potatoes?
9. Describe the third expedition to Virginia.
10. When did White return to Virginia? What did he find?
11. What sum of money had Raleigh expended on these expeditions to America? How did he dispose of his patent?
12. What discoveries were made by Gosnold?
13. What grants were made by James I.?
14. What were the limits of the territory granted to the two companies?
15. Describe the expedition sent out by the London Company. When, where and by whom was the first permanent English settlement made in the United States?
16. What colony was established by the Plymouth Company in 1620?
17. What discoveries were made by Henry Hudson?
18. Upon what discoveries were the Dutch claims in America based? When and by whom was New York founded? What was it then called?
19. What is said of English explorations?

---

PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

ALBEMARLE (Al-be-marl').	PLYMOUTH (Plīm'-uth).
FROBISHER (Frōb'-ish-er).	NEW AMSTERDAM (Am'-stēr-dam).
MAGELLAN (Mā-jel'-lan).	ARCTIC (Ark'-tik).
OREGON (Or'-e-gon).	AMIDAS (Am-ī'-dass).
SAN FRANCISCO (San Fran-sis'-ko).	BARLOW (Bar'-lo).
GILBERT (Ghil'-bert).	CHESAPEAKE (Chess'-ā-peek).
RALEIGH (Raw'-lee).	GOSNOLD (Goz'-nold).
GRENVILLE (Gren'-vil).	ROANOKE (Rō'-an-ōke).

---

CHAPTER V.

PERMANENT SETTLEMENTS.

1. THE explorations of Europeans on the North American continent have been briefly recounted in the two preceding chapters, and it only remains to recapitulate with corresponding conciseness the leading events of the Period of Early Discoveries and Settlements, so far as they have any bearing on the history of the United States.

2. The Spaniards, as might naturally have been expected, were the first who firmly established themselves in the country discovered under the auspices of their rulers, Ferdinand and Isabella. The West Indies were soon occupied. Radiating from these, the hardy adventurers extended their explorations to many points both of the northern and the southern continent, but, so far as concerns the United States, settled only in Florida and New Mexico.

3. The French, although the Huguenot adventurers made attempts at Port Royal Inlet and the St. John's River, planted no colonies within our confines, but explored the northern part, especially about the St. Lawrence, and laid claim to a vast extent of territory, to which they gave the name of New France. Their first settlements were made in Acadia and Canada.

4. The English, by right of the discoveries of the Cabots, claimed the whole continent from Labrador to Florida, but their explorations were confined to Pamlico and Albemarle Sounds on the south, and the coast of Massachusetts and Maine on the north. To this claim they gave the name of Virginia.

5. The Dutch asserted their right to that portion of what was then called Virginia which Hudson had explored, and gave the name of New Netherlands to the territory extending from Cape Cod to the Delaware River.

6. These rival claims of course conflicted with one another, for the mother countries, unaware of the vast extent of territory of which they were so summarily disposing, made their grants quite indefinite in terms. England gave unlimited rights westward, the French gave the same southward, while Spain was equally munificent towards the north. Thus France and Spain, one from the north and the other from the south, covered the land twice, and England overlapped both, going west, while the phlegmatic Hollander claimed part of the lands which had been granted by England to her subjects.

7. These overlappings of territory, as we shall hereafter see, gave rise to constant disputes, which had eventually to be left for the most part to the arbitrament of the sword.

8. Thus what was actually accomplished during this first period within the limits of the United States was the settlement

of St. Augustine, in Florida, by the Spaniards, in 1565; the founding of Santa Fé, in New Mexico, by the same people, in 1582; the settling of Jamestown, Virginia, by the English, in 1607; the settlement of New Amsterdam, now New York, by the Dutch, in 1613; and the landing of the Plymouth Colony in 1620.

9. Although not immediately connected with the narrative, mention may properly be made here of the settlement of Quebec by the French, in 1608, as its history will be found hereafter to be somewhat linked with our own.

### QUESTIONS.

1. What events are mentioned in this chapter?
2. What parts of America were claimed by the Spanish?
3. What parts by the French?
4. What parts by the English?
5. What parts by the Dutch?
6. What of the claims of the above-named nations?
7. What was caused by these overlappings of territories?
8. Name all the settlements actually made during the First Period.
9. What of a settlement made in Canada during this period?

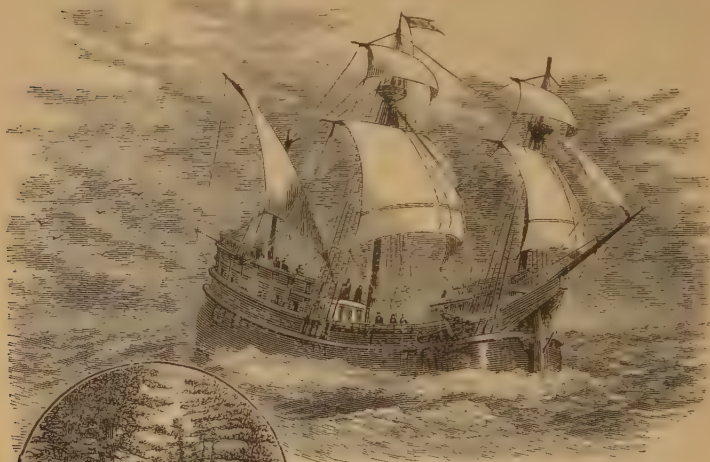
### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

LABRADOR (Lab-ra-dor').  
PAMLICO (Pām'-lī-co).

DELAWARE (Del'-ā-war).  
NETHERLANDS (Neth'-er-lands).



LANDING AT ST. AUGUSTINE



THE MAYFLOWER.

## SECOND PERIOD.

THE COLONIES, THEIR SETTLEMENT AND  
DEVELOPMENT.

LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS.

## CHAPTER I.

THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.—  
MASSACHUSETTS, CONNECTICUT,  
RHODE ISLAND, NEW HAMPSHIRE.

1. It is now proposed to give a succinct account of each of the original thirteen colonies, following a geographical rather than a chronological order in doing so. This is for the student's convenience, that he may be able to locate each readily in his mind as it is presented.

2. Dividing, then, the colonies into northern, middle and southern, we find the northern comprising Massachusetts, Con-

necticut, Rhode Island and New Hampshire, or, as they are better known, the New England colonies.

3. The first of these which naturally presents itself is Massachusetts. Stretching from a point a little north of the Merrimac River where it empties into the Atlantic, its eastern limit runs in irregular outline along that ocean until it unites with Rhode Island, at a spot only a short distance from New Bedford. From Newburyport, on the Merrimac, it sweeps in ragged curve round to Cape Ann, thence inclines at first west, then east and south, and finally turns boldly northward, and with a narrow tongue of land, terminating in Cape Cod, encloses the bay of that name.

4. From Barnstable, where the peninsula of Cape Cod begins to turn northward, to the extreme westward point of its coastline, where it joins Rhode Island, in longitude  $71^{\circ}$  west from Greenwich, the coast is greatly indented, Buzzard's Bay, on a small estuary of which New Bedford is situated, being a deep inlet of the sea.

5. From a point where its coast meets that of Rhode Island it runs due north to Fall River, thence north-west to an angle a few miles north of Pawtucket, whence it stretches along the 42d parallel to Bald Peak Mountain, in longitude  $73\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  west. Here it turns northward, slightly inclining east of a true meridian, until it reaches Williamstown, in latitude  $42^{\circ} 53'$ . Along this parallel it runs to Andover, on the Merrimac, and from this place it follows closely the course of that river to the ocean.

6. The extent of territory thus enclosed is about eight thousand square miles, and it contains a greater number of large towns than any other part of the United States of equal area.

7. Although generally uneven and sometimes rugged in surface, with a comparatively unfavorable soil and a fickle climate, yet the skill and industry of its people have made its rocky soil to yield abundantly; while in manufactures, and indeed in all things requiring ingenuity and enterprise, the Bay State, as it is often called, takes the lead in the country.

8. Within sight of bleak Cape Cod there came, one stormy day in the month of December, 1620, a small band of religious



people, one hundred souls in all, crowded upon a little vessel named the *Mayflower*.

9. For more than two months had this little ship, with its freight of heart-sick men and women, been buffeted by wind and wave on the broad Atlantic. At last, when all had well-nigh despaired, it reached the longed-for harbor, and upon the 21st of this midwinter month, after having spent some time in exploring, the weary voyagers landed at Plymouth Harbor, which they named after the place they had left behind in their native land.

10. The 21st day of December is accordingly kept by their descendants as the anniversary of the landing of the Pilgrim Fathers. This holiday is often called "Forefathers' Day."

11. Of this people a brief account must be given. The Pilgrims—for so they named themselves, because they were exiles from their native land—were dissenters from the Church as established in England after its separation from the Roman see. In derision of their claims to a holier and purer life, they were called Puritans; and being molested in the exercise of their peculiar faith, they fled from their native country.

12. The Pilgrim emigrants who came out in the *Mayflower* were mainly the followers of Rev. John Robinson, who first led them to Leyden in the Netherlands. But, not feeling at home among a people speaking an unfamiliar tongue, they at last resolved upon emigration to the New World.

13. Accordingly, they obtained a grant of lands from the Virginia Company, in 1619, purchased a small Dutch vessel, which they named the *Speedwell*, and sailed in it for Southampton, England.

14. Here they met with another band of sympathizing friends, who had hired a ship called the *Mayflower*, and were prepared to join in the hazardous adventure.

15. Twice did the two vessels attempt the westward passage, and twice were they compelled to put back to land, owing to the unseaworthy condition of the miscalled *Speedwell*. At length, having abandoned her, they all, to the number of one hundred persons, went on board the little *Mayflower*, and on the 16th of September, 1620, bade farewell to their native shore.



16. They landed after a trying voyage, as has been stated. Before leaving the ship they assembled in the cabin and signed a compact, by which they agreed that all should have equal rights, and that they would obey the laws enacted for the common good.

17. They chose John Carver for their first governor, but he died soon afterwards, and Mr. Bradford, the future historian of the colony, was selected to fill his place. The new governor was a man of energy and determination, and by his efforts the surrounding natives were kept in awe.

18. The colony suffered greatly during the first years of its existence. The severity of the climate, the failure of crops and the threatenings of the dissatisfied Indians kept it from making any marked progress. But the hardihood and perseverance of its founders were eventually rewarded with success, and after a lapse of ten years from the first landing the Massachusetts Bay colony was in a prosperous condition.

19. Settlements were speedily formed at Salem, Charlestown, Dorchester, Watertown and Boston. This last-mentioned place was founded by Governor John Winthrop, in 1630, from which date the progress of the Massachusetts colony was very rapid.

20. One thing only seemed to retard its growth. The settlers came to America to enjoy, as they said, religious liberty, yet they were not willing to allow it to those who were not Puritans in faith.

21. This intolerance was so marked that not only were those who differed in religious views from the dominant party excluded from any participation in the government, but many most estimable persons were banished and otherwise badly used.

22. Among those who suffered persecution from these inconsistent lovers of religious liberty were Roger Williams and Anne Hutchinson. Williams was ordered, in 1635, in the depth of a New England winter, to leave the colony, and was compelled to seek shelter among the untutored children of the forest. The liberty which was denied him by the Puritan was cheerfully accorded to him by the Indian, and Canonicus, the Narragansett sachem, gave him, in 1636, for a settlement, the land which he in gratitude named Providence.

23. Anne Hutchinson claimed to receive special revelations of the divine will, and dared to talk plainly concerning those from whom she differed. Though she was supported by the governor and a powerful party, she was mercilessly banished, also in winter, from the society of her intolerant brethren.



ROGER WILLIAMS.

24. The unoffending Quakers fared still worse, for they were fined, whipped, imprisoned, and in some instances executed. Such are the anomalies of the human mind in

matters pertaining to liberty of conscience.

25. Nevertheless, whatever may have been their faults, the Puritans were earnest, energetic men, and were in every way fitted to subdue the rugged wilderness on which it was their fortune to be cast.

26. Not only was a comparatively sterile soil made to yield abundantly by these hardy sons of toil, but the cultivation of the mind was not neglected. For as early as 1636 we find one thousand dollars set apart by the General Court to found a college at Newton, now Cambridge, and two years later John Harvard, a clergyman, left his books and eight hundred pounds in money to the new institution of learning. The noble university known as Harvard College is a proud monument to the wisdom of the "Pilgrim Fathers."

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Which of the present New England States were included in the thirteen original colonies?
2. How are the latter divided?
3. Define the geographical limits of Massachusetts.
4. What of its coast? Locate New Bedford.
5. Give the latitude and longitude of Massachusetts.
6. Its area. What of its towns?
7. The soil and climate? What name is frequently given to it?
8. What led to the settlement of Massachusetts? When was it settled?
9. What is said of the voyage across the Atlantic? How did the Pilgrims name their first settlement?

10. Why is the 21st day of December still celebrated in Massachusetts?
11. Why were the Pilgrims called Puritans?
12. Where had they gone before coming to America, and why did they leave there? Who was their leader?
13. From whom did they obtain a grant of land? What was the name of their vessel?
14. By whom were they joined?
15. When did they set sail on their expedition?
16. What agreement was made before landing?
17. Who was chosen governor, and who succeeded him?
18. What caused great suffering among the early settlers? When did they become prosperous?
19. What other settlements were made in Massachusetts?
20. What was the condition of Massachusetts in 1630?
21. What greatly retarded its progress? How were those treated who differed from the Puritans in matters of faith?
22. Name the victims of their persecution. Who befriended Williams? What settlement was made by him?
23. What is said of Anne Hutchinson?
24. How were Quakers treated by the Puritans?
25. What good traits of character did the Puritans possess?
26. What led to the foundation of Harvard College?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

MASSACHUSETTS (Mas-să-choo'-sets).	BARNSTABLE (Barn'-sta-b'l).
CONNECTICUT (Kon-net'-i-cut).	NARRAGANSETT (Năr-ră-gan'-set).
RHODE ISLAND (Rôde i'-land).	PROVIDENCE (Prov'-i-dence).
NEW HAMPSHIRE (Hamp'-shîr).	GREENWICH (Grin'-ij).
MERRIMAC (Měr'-rî-mak).	BUZZARD'S BAY (Buz'-zards).
NEW BEDFORD (Bed'-ford).	PAWTUCKET (Paw-tûk'-et).
HUTCHINSON (Hûch'-in-son).	CAMBRIDGE (Căm'-brij).
NEWBURYPORT (Nû'-běr-rî-port').	HARVARD (Har'-vard).
CANONICUS (Kă-non'-i-cus).	ANDOVER (An'-do-ver).

---

## CHAPTER II.

### THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.—CONTINUED.

1. THE second of the New England colonies is Connecticut, bounded on the north by the southern limits of Massachusetts—namely, the 42d parallel; on the east by the 72d meridian,

which separates it from Rhode Island; on the west by the 74th meridian, which divides it from New York; on the south by Long Island Sound. It extends in extreme length from east to west 93 miles, in its greatest breadth from north to south 68 miles, and includes an area of less than five thousand square miles.

2. Although of small territorial extent, Connecticut has formed a conspicuous member of the united sisterhood, and its early history is intimately connected with that of Massachusetts. Its soil and climate being very much like that of its somewhat larger neighbor, a description of the one is applicable to the other.

3. Three considerable rivers, the Connecticut, the Housatonic and the Thames, cross its territory and empty into the sound, which forms its southern boundary. Of these streams the Connecticut is the most important, and, as it is navigable for fifty miles, adds greatly to the wealth of the State.

4. The inhabitants are essentially of the same stock as those of Massachusetts, and are noted for their inventive skill, especially in the manufacture of small articles.

5. About the year 1630 the council of Plymouth granted to Lord Say-and-Seal and Lord Brooke the territory now embraced in Connecticut. But the Dutch also claimed the same country, and before the English proprietors could take possession, had built a fort where the city of Hartford now stands, and commenced trading with the Indians. A Plymouth company, however, under the command of Captain Holmes, sailed up the Connecticut River, and, notwithstanding the threats of the Dutch to fire upon them, passed the fort and established themselves at Windsor. This was in the year 1633.

6. In the autumn of 1635 another pioneer band laid the foundation of Hartford, and about the same time John Winthrop established a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut, thus completely preventing any further incursions of the Dutch. The fort erected was called, in honor of the proprietors, Saybrook.

7. Other settlements were soon made; but scarcely were the colonists fixed in their new abode when difficulties with the natives arose. The Pequod Indians committed many acts of hos-

tility, and when the colonists retaliated upon them they sought an alliance with the Narragansetts for the purpose of exterminating the whites. Roger Williams heard of this, and, forgetting the wrongs done to himself, went, at great personal risk, to the Narragansett chief, and persuaded him not to take sides against the English.

8. Thus the Pequods were forced to fight alone, and were soon, principally through the energy of Captain John Mason, entirely overcome. Indeed, so completely were they routed that from that time they ceased to exist as a distinct tribe.

9. The battle which resulted in the overthrow of the Pequods was fought on the Mystic River, at a spot eight miles from where New London now stands. There between six and seven hundred Indians, men, women and children, perished by fire or the sword. Only seven warriors fell alive into the hands of Mason.

10. After the fall of the Pequods, Connecticut made rapid progress, and new settlements everywhere sprang up. In 1638 the colony of New Haven was founded by a number of wealthy London families, under the leadership of the Rev. John Davenport and Theophilus Eaton, a rich merchant.

11. Three distinct colonies now existed in the territory—namely, the Connecticut colony, comprising Hartford, Windsor and Wethersfield, the Saybrook colony and the New Haven colony. Of these the first is remarkable for having adopted a written constitution in which all freemen were given the right to vote on every question of public policy, and all residents of good character were considered freemen. This is the first instance in history of a written constitution framed by the people.

12. In 1662 a royal charter was obtained which embodied the Hartford principles and applied to the three colonies, thus uniting them into one. This document was of inestimable value, as it guaranteed the people almost complete independence.

13. So precious was the instrument in the eyes of the inhabitants that twenty-four years after, when the arrogant Andros, governor of New England, attempted to obtain possession of it, and came over to Hartford from Boston for that purpose, it was

stolen from the table at which he sat, and successfully concealed.

14. The assembly was in session at the time. The governor entered, and demanded the charter. It was brought out and laid on the table; a debate on its surrender ensued, which was protracted until evening, when lights were brought in. Suddenly these were extinguished; and when they were relighted, the charter was nowhere to be found. Some liberty-loving hand had carried it off and hidden it in the hollow trunk of a tree, which was known thereafter as the Charter Oak.

15. It remained in this concealment till the tyrannical governor was deposed, when it was brought forth, and under it the assembly or General Court again met, in spite of the haughty "finis" previously written by Andros upon its proceedings when balked in his attempt to capture the document under whose authority it sat. The noble tree itself survived these events about two hundred years.

16. The only other events that need be mentioned relating to the colony prior to the Revolution, are the making of Hartford and New Haven alternately the capitals, which took place in 1701, and the establishment at Saybrook of a school for the education of ministers which was afterward removed to New Haven and named Yale College, after Elihu Yale, its first patron.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Which is the second of the New England colonies? How is it bounded? Its length, breadth and area?

2. With what other State is its early history connected? What of its soil and climate?

3. Name the principal rivers. Why is the Connecticut River important?

4. For what are the inhabitants of Connecticut noted?

5. What grant was made in 1630 by the council of Plymouth? What other nation laid claim to this country? Who finally made a settlement in Connecticut, and where?

6. When and by whom was Hartford settled?

7. In what war were the settlers engaged?

8. Who defeated them?

9. What became of the Pequods?

10. When was the colony of New Haven founded?



11. What is remarkable in the constitution adopted by these three colonies?

12. When was a royal charter obtained?

13. What was attempted by Andros, governor of New England?

14, 15. How was he foiled in his attempt?

16. Name other important events in the early history of Connecticut.

---

### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

HOUSATONIC (Hoo-sä-ton'-ik).

THAMES (Tēmz).

HOLMES (Hōmes).

ROBINSON (Rōb'-in-son).

WINDSOR (Win'-zör).

WINTHROP (Win'-thröp).

LEYDEN (Lī'-den).

SAYBROOK (Say'-bröök).

PEQUOD (Pee'-kwöd).

VIRGINIA (Vir-jin'-Yä).

MYSTIC (Mis'-tik).

DAVENPORT (Dav'-en-port).

SOUTHAMPTON (Süth-amp'-ton).

THEOPHILUS EATON (Thē-ōph'-Y-lūs  
Eē-ton).

ANDROS (An'-dross).

SALEM (Sä'-lem).

ELIHU YALE (E-lī'-hu Yāle).

---

## CHAPTER III.

### *THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.—CONCLUDED.*

1. THE third New England colony is Rhode Island. This, the smallest of the sisterhood, is wedged in between Massachusetts and Connecticut, being bounded on the east and north by the former State, and on the west by the latter. On the south the Atlantic Ocean forms an extensive seaboard. Narragansett Bay, a noble sheet of water studded with picturesque islands, projects into its territory for a distance of thirty miles, and occupies one-tenth of its area. Though there are no large rivers within her borders, Rhode Island has great water facilities, and Newport Harbor is one of the best on our eastern coast. The area of the State is about thirteen hundred square miles.

2. The soil of Rhode Island is of the same general character as that of the two contiguous States, but its climate is greatly modified by its proximity to the ocean, being neither so cold in winter nor so hot in summer as other places in the same latitude

3. In November, 1635, Roger Williams, as we have seen, was banished from the Massachusetts colony. He wandered for weeks through the pathless woods without a guide, but at last found refuge among the Narragansetts, who not only received him kindly, but also granted him the lands on which the city of Providence now stands. Williams gave the name of Providence to the place, in remembrance of God's mercy to him in his distress.

4. Shortly after his settlement in his new home, we find him using his influence successfully to prevent the Narragansetts from joining the Pequods in their war against the settlers in Connecticut. But the service was ill requited, for the Massachusetts ministers and magistrates, in 1638, forbade all trade with the people of Providence, and threatened to arrest them if found within the limits of their colony.

X 5. In 1637, Mrs. Hutchinson, also a Plymouth exile, with her husband and others, came to Narragansett Bay, and bought from the Indians Aquiday Island, which they named the Island of Rhodes, but which was subsequently called Rhode Island.

6. Thus were founded the Rhode Island and Providence Plantations. But the Plymouth colony claimed both, as being within the limits of the Plymouth and Massachusetts grants. To terminate disputes in the matter, Williams went to England, and in 1644, through the assistance of Sir Henry Vane, a former governor of Massachusetts, obtained a charter which applied to the two plantations, uniting them in one colony. In 1647 the plantations elected officers and agreed upon a code of laws, the most notable of which was one guaranteeing freedom of faith and worship to all. This was one of the first legal declarations of the kind adopted in either Europe or America.

7. New Hampshire, the fourth and the largest of the New England colonies, lies north of Massachusetts. In shape it is almost a right-angled triangle, the northern boundary of Massachusetts,  $42^{\circ} 53'$ , forming the base, or southern boundary; the 71st meridian, which separates it from Maine, its perpendicular; and the Connecticut River, which divides it from Vermont, its hypotenuse. It has a short coast-line, extending from the mouth of the Salmon Falls River to a point near the outlet of

the Merrimac, which river runs nearly through the middle of the State.

8. New Hampshire has an area of over nine thousand square miles. It contains the highest land, with one exception, east of the Mississippi, and is rugged and mountainous in its general character, but has fertile tracts along the course of its rivers. The White Mountains, of which Mount Washington, 6234 feet high, is the highest peak, are remarkable for their sublimity, and have given to the region the name of the Switzerland of America.

9. The mountainous portions of the State are composed largely of granite, whence it is often called the "Granite State." But although New Hampshire has a stony soil and a severe climate, the skill, industry and economy of its people have rendered it a productive region.

10. The territory of New Hampshire originally belonged to the Plymouth grant, but in 1622 the council of Plymouth gave to Sir Ferdinand Gorges and John Mason, two of its most active members, that portion of its claim which lay between the Merrimac and Kennebec Rivers. A few fishing-stations were established along the coast, but for some years little was done in the way of actual settlement.

11. In 1629 a new grant, almost as extensive and quite as ill defined, was made to Mason, who gave the name of New Hampshire to it, after his native county in England. For a time the new colony was under the protection of Massachusetts, but in 1680, at the request of Mason's heirs, it was placed in direct charge of the royal government.

12. The descendants of Mason had frequent disputes with the settlers as to the right of possession of the soil, but the royal proprietors were finally compelled to yield their claims, and thenceforward the colonists united themselves closely with Massachusetts, and New Hampshire's history became indissolubly connected with that of the parent colony.

13. Thus the settlers of the four original New England colonies were of the same stock. Stern, hardy and courageous, they were just the men to subdue the rugged soil upon which it was their lot to be thrown.

14. Their treatment of the natives was not always just; but considering the grasping disposition of the Anglo-Saxon race, its conscious superiority to the red man and the necessity compelling the settlers to be stern and harsh, they behaved generally well, and often with wondrous magnanimity, towards their savage and untrustworthy neighbors.

15. The efforts made by the settlers for the conversion of the aborigines to Christianity, and the labors of many missionaries, especially of John Eliot, are particularly commendable.

16. The necessities of the colonists made them ingenious and inventive; and Boston was no sooner founded than its citizens engaged in shipbuilding, and trade with the other colonies, and even with the West Indies and Europe, soon sprang up.

17. In matters of education the Puritan colonists took a deep interest, and wherever a settlement was made the school-house rose side by side with the church. Higher seminaries, too, were established at a very early day; and Harvard College, as has been said, bears noble testimony to the zeal for learning which animated the Pilgrim Fathers.

18. One feature of the New England settlements was the "town-meeting." Here every citizen might give his opinion, and all questions were discussed with perfect freedom. Hence sprang that bold and independent spirit, even in the young, which is a marked characteristic of New England people.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What is the third New England colony? Name its boundaries. What bay indents its coast?

2. What is said of its soil and climate?

3. Describe the settlement of Rhode Island.

4. What assistance did Williams render the Massachusetts settlers during the Pequod war? How was he requited?

5. What led to the settlement of the Island of Rhodes?

6. By whom were the Rhode Island and Providence Plantations claimed? What is remarkable in the laws made for this colony?

7. Which is the fourth New England colony? What figure does New Hampshire resemble? How is it bounded?

8. What is its area? What is said of its natural features? What range of mountains pass through it? Name its highest peak. What is it often called?

9. Why is New Hampshire called the Granite State?
10. To whom did New Hampshire originally belong? How was it disposed of in 1622?
11. What new grant was made in 1629? When did New Hampshire receive a royal charter?
12. With whom did the descendants of Mason come in conflict? The result?
13. What is said of the New England settlers in general?
14. How were the natives treated by them?
15. What is said of New England missionaries?
16. In what were the settlers of Boston early engaged?
17. What did the Puritans do for the education of the colonists?
18. Describe the town-meeting.

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

CHARLESTOWN (Charlz'-town).	SWITZERLAND (Swits'-er-land).
AQUIDAY (Ak'-wě-day).	HYPOTHENUSE (Hi-pōth'-ē-nūse).
DORCHESTER (Dōr'-ches-ter).	GORGES (Gōr'-jez).
VANE (Vain).	ELIOT (El'-i-ot).
SALMON FALLS (Sam'-mon).	EUROPE (Yoo'-rōpe).

---

### CHAPTER IV.

#### *THE MIDDLE COLONIES.—NEW YORK, NEW JERSEY, PENNSYLVANIA, DELAWARE.*

1. THE second division of the original colonies comprises what are called the middle colonies—New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania and Delaware.

2. First of these, and the largest of the middle colonies, is New York. It is bounded on the north by Lake Ontario and the river St. Lawrence to the point where the 45th parallel crosses that river; thence to the northern extremity of Lake Champlain, this parallel forms the dividing line. Lake Champlain separates it in part from Vermont, and the meridian of 73° 30' constitutes the remaining boundary between it and that State. Massachusetts and Connecticut complete its eastern confines.

3. The Niagara River, Lake Erie and a small strip of Penn-

sylvania from the lake along the 80th meridian, nearly, to the 42d parallel, form its western limit. The 42d parallel separates it on the south from Pennsylvania as far as the Delaware River. The river continues to be its southern boundary until it bends around at the base of the Blue Mountains. From this point an oblique line extending to the Hudson River, a little north of New York city, cuts it off from New Jersey. The Hudson and East Rivers and Long Island Sound make up the remainder of the southern limits.

4. Long Island, a large island 115 miles in length and separated from the main land by the East River and by Long Island Sound, belongs to the State, which, from its great size, is often called the Empire State.

5. Its territorial extent, over forty-seven thousand square miles, is rather more than twice that of the New England colonies combined, and almost equal to that of England proper. It presents every variety of surface and soil, and considerable diversity of climate. Although it has sterile spots, this State, as a whole, is very fertile, and the climate, while offering extremes of heat and cold according to the season, is healthful and invigorating.

6. As has been stated in a previous chapter, Henry Hudson, an Englishman in the employ of the Dutch East India Company, first ascended the river since called by his name, in the year 1609. No permanent settlement was made by the Dutch until 1614, when Fort Orange, now Albany, and New Amsterdam, now New York city, were founded.

7. The English claimed the country by right of prior discovery, as well as by Hudson's nationality, and frequent conflicts ensued; but eventually, in 1674, the colony surrendered to English dominion. A few words must here be said of the early Dutch settlements.

8. Although Fort Orange and New Amsterdam were established as trading-posts in 1614, no families settled at either place until 1623, when Captain May, in the employ of the Dutch West India Company, brought out a number of families, who established themselves in these places, and also at Fort Nassau, where Camden now stands.



9. In 1626, Peter Minuits came out as director of New Netherlands, and brought with him a party of Walloons, or descendants of the French Huguenots. He purchased from the Indians the whole site of the present city of New York for about twenty-four dollars. It was around the little fort at the southern end of Manhattan Island that the village of New Amsterdam sprang up, and this was the nucleus of the metropolis of the Western world.

10. So anxious were the Hollanders to colonize the new country that they offered large tracts of land, with extraordinary privileges, to any who would form settlements of fifty persons each. Those who obtained these grants were styled *Patroons*—that is, patrons—and the name continued in use in New York for more than two hundred years. The disturbances known as the “anti-rent difficulties” arose out of these grants.

11. In 1632, Minuits was recalled, and Wouter Van Twiller succeeded him. Under his administration arose the disputes already mentioned between the Dutch and English on the Connecticut River, in which the English gained a decided advantage. Sir William Kieft, the next governor, was a rash and tyrannical man, and involved the colony in disastrous strifes with the Swedes and Indians. In the Indian contest, Mrs. Hutchinson and all of her family except one were murdered by the natives.

12. After an unfortunate administration of about nine years' duration, Kieft was recalled in 1647, and was drowned on his way home to Europe. He was succeeded by Peter Stuyvesant, the last and best of the Dutch governors, a brave and energetic but arbitrary man. Under his rule a boundary between the English and Dutch in Connecticut was agreed upon, and the Indians were conciliated. Industry and commerce were encouraged by him, and numerous immigrants, especially from England, were attracted to his colony. These, however, gave Stuyvesant great trouble, for they soon began to demand a participation in the government and a voice in the making of the laws—a privilege which the choleric old governor was not disposed to grant.

13. Stuyvesant was thus kept in constant turmoil until 1664.

when Charles II. of England granted to his brother James, duke of York, afterward James II., the entire territory from the Connecticut to the Delaware, and a fleet under command of Colonel Nicolls appeared in front of Fort Amsterdam to take possession of the territory. Stuyvesant, though over sixty years of age, was stout-hearted and defiant, but he could not get his council to agree to resist. Besides, the English settlers, whose demands he had so haughtily refused, favored the change, hoping to enjoy freedom under English rule.

14. Still the brave old man, faithful to his trust, held out, and not until the place was in the actual possession of his enemies would he sign the articles of capitulation. The English changed the name of New Amsterdam to New York, and that of Fort Orange to Albany. Soon after, the name New York was given to the entire province, in honor of its owner. Nicolls became the first English governor, and for three years he administered its affairs wisely.

15. Lovelace, a weak and tyrannical man, succeeded to the governorship, and in a short time so alienated the affections of the colonists that, a war having broken out in 1672 between England and Holland, and a Dutch squadron appearing in the following year in the harbor, New York surrendered without delay. But this renewal of authority lasted only for fifteen months, for in November, 1674, peace having been proclaimed, New York was restored to the British Crown.

16. A succession of bad governors followed, among them the notorious Andros, of whose proceedings in Connecticut we have spoken; so that when the duke of York, now James II., was compelled to abdicate his throne in 1688, the colonists speedily transferred their allegiance to William and Mary, his successors.

17. James Leisler, a merchant, aided by the citizens, seized the fort in King William's name, and Nicholson, the governor, fled. Two years after, Col. Sloughter having been sent out as governor, Leisler, who had in the mean time administered affairs with prudence, though without recognized authority, was tried and convicted of treason, with his son-in-law, Milborne, and both suffered ignominious deaths.

18. About this time the French, with their Indian allies, proved

very troublesome to the colonists, and in 1690 Schenectady, a frontier village, was burned by them and its inhabitants massacred. In 1741 a report was circulated that the negro slaves had formed a conspiracy to burn New York and kill the inhabitants. This created intense excitement, which was not allayed until more than thirty persons had been executed or banished.



MASSACRE AT SCHENECTADY.

19. From this time the history of New York presents only the usual incidents of pioneer life until the commencement of the French and Indian War, about one year after the close of what is historically known as King George's War—that is to say, in 1749. Open hostilities did not commence between England and France until the latter part of 1753, but the French were continually making incursions within the colonial limits, and thus kept the settlers in a state of constant alarm.

20. One good resulted from these struggles—they developed the spirit of liberty, made the people self-reliant, and fitted the men of the Empire State for the conspicuous part they were soon called upon to take in the Revolutionary contest and in shaping the destinies of the country.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Which of the Middle States belonged to the thirteen original colonies?

2. Name the largest. How is it bounded?
3. What lakes and rivers form the northern and southern boundaries?
4. What large island belongs to the State? Its length? What is New York often called?
5. How many square miles does it contain? What of its natural features and climate?
6. When and by whom was New York city founded?
7. Upon what grounds did the English lay claim to all of New York?
8. When and where did the Dutch first settle it? What of families?
9. Who was the first Dutch governor of New York? What lands did he purchase from the natives?
10. What inducements did the Hollanders offer to settlers? How did the term "Patroon" originate?
11. Who was the second Dutch governor of New York? What disputes arose during his administration? Who was the third Dutch governor? What disastrous effect had his administration upon the country?
12. What was the fate of Kieft? Who was the fourth and last Dutch governor? His character? What good results did he bring about? What attracted immigrants to New York? What trouble did they cause Stuyvesant?
13. What grant was made in 1664 by Charles II. of England? How did the grant affect the Dutch at New York?
14. What resistance did Stuyvesant make? What changes did the English make? Who was the first English governor of New York?
15. When and how did the Dutch regain their possessions?
16. Who was made king of England in 1688, and how were the colonists affected?
17. For what crime was Leisler executed?
18. What trouble arose in 1690 with the Indians? What of the negro plot?
19. In what other wars was New York engaged?
20. What good resulted from these struggles?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

NEW JERSEY (Jer'-ze).	WOUTER VAN TWILLER (Woo'-ter văn Twil'-ler).
PENNSYLVANIA (Pen-sil-vā'-nĭ-ă).	KIEFT (Keeft)
ONTARIO (On-tā'-rĭ-o).	STUYVESANT (Sti'-ve-sant).
NIAGARA (Nĭ-ăg'-ă-ră).	LEISLER (Lice'-ler).
MINUITS (Min'-oo-its).	SLOUGHTER (Slaw'-ter).
WALLOONS (Wal-loonz').	MILBORNE (Mil'-burn).
HOLLAND (Hol'-lănd).	SCHENECTADY (Ske-nek'-tă-de).
PATROON (Pă-troon').	

## CHAPTER V.

*THE MIDDLE COLONIES.—CONCLUDED.*

1. NEW JERSEY, the second of the Middle States, was called New Netherlands by the Dutch. It is bounded on the north by New York, on the east by the Atlantic Ocean and on the south and west by the Delaware River and Bay. Its area is somewhat over eight thousand square miles.

2. The southern and middle portions of the country are for the most part flat and sandy, but in the north it is hilly, and sometimes rises even into mountains. The Blue Mountains cross the extreme north-western portion, and ridges of the Alleghanies extend from Pennsylvania through New Jersey into New York.

3. The soil, though naturally light and in many places poor, is easily improved, and produces largely of vegetables and fruits, a ready market for which is found in the great neighboring cities of New York and Philadelphia.

4. The climate is greatly modified by its proximity to the sea, but resembles that of the southern portion of New York and the northern part of Pennsylvania.

5. New Jersey was settled by the Dutch in the north, by the English in the centre, and by the Swedes in the south. But the English element predominated and gave character to the whole.

6. The first settlement was made in Bergen, about the year 1620, when a few Dutch crossed the Hudson, called the North River to distinguish it from the Delaware, which was named the South River. Little, however, was done until 1664, when the whole country passed into the possession of the duke of York. In that year Elizabethtown was settled by immigrants from Long Island and New England, encouraged by Colonel Nicolls, the governor of New York. This was the first English settlement within the territory.

7. The duke of York in the same year sold New Jersey to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. Philip Carteret, brother



of Sir George, came out as the first governor, and gave to the territory its present name, after the island of Jersey, in the British Channel.

8. Colonists soon flocked into the new province, as the terms for the purchase and renting of lands were easy and there were no incursions of savages to be dreaded. Disputes arose in a few years about the possession of the land, and indeed about the proprietorship of the entire territory, but these were eventually settled by the purchase of the whole country by William Penn and eleven other Quakers.

9. Upon the accession of the duke of York to the English throne he entirely disregarded the claims of the Quakers, and Andros, who has been previously mentioned, assumed the governorship. The Revolution in England in 1688 and the expulsion of Andros from America restored the Quaker proprietors to their rights.

10. But the old disputes about individual proprietary rights and quit-rents again arising, the Quakers, in 1702, resigned to the Crown their government of the whole of Jersey, and it was united with New York under one governor, although each colony had its own assembly. This arrangement continued until 1728, when, on the earnest petition of the people, a separate government was granted to Jersey, and from that time to the Revolution it remained a distinct royal province.

11. Pennsylvania is a large State, having an area of forty-six thousand square miles. It is bounded on the north by Lake Erie and New York, and on the east by New York and New Jersey, from which it is separated by the Delaware River. The parallel of  $39^{\circ} 43'$  forms its southern limit and separates it from Maryland and West Virginia, while the meridian of  $80^{\circ} 30'$  west longitude constitutes its western boundary and divides it from Ohio. It thus has a width from north to south of nearly one hundred and sixty miles, and a length from east to west of almost three hundred and ten miles.

12. No State in the entire country presents a greater variety of surface. The Appalachian chain of mountains, in various ramifications known by local names, spreads over about one-fourth of its extent, running in a general direction of south-west



and north-east. But although thus mountainous, the State is eminently agricultural in its character, and the soil yields abundantly all the staple articles of the farm.

13. Besides, it is wonderfully productive of the two most valuable minerals—iron and coal. These have made it rich and populous in a greater ratio than any other of the original thirteen States. It has a very variable climate, presenting the extremes of heat and cold in rapid succession. Generally these changes are of short duration, and the average temperature is pleasant and invigorating.

14. In the year 1681, William Penn, a son of the well-known Admiral Penn, received as payment of a debt of sixteen thousand pounds, due to his father from the Crown, a grant of land in America. Charles II., by whom this grant was made, called the territory Pennsylvania—that is, Penn's woods. The king's brother, the duke of York, added what is now the State of Delaware, which soon became known as the "three lower counties on the Delaware."



WILLIAM PENN.

15. William, while a young man at Oxford, had joined the sect called Quakers, or "Friends," as they prefer being named. Like all dissenters from the established faith, the Quakers received their share of reproach and persecution. When, therefore, this American grant was obtained, Penn at once made it a refuge for his persecuted people, and sent over as many as two thousand of them in the first year.

16. In the following year, 1682, he came himself, accompanied by a hundred immigrants. He landed at New Castle in November, and was warmly received by the settlers on the Delaware. The next year he purchased land from the Swedes who had preceded him and laid out the city of Philadelphia. This progressed so rapidly that in one year there were a hundred substantial houses built, and at the end of two years it numbered two thousand inhabitants.

17. Penn's treatment of the Swedes who had settled within his limits was as generous as it was politic, and had the effect of attaching warmly to himself an industrious and estimable class of people.

18. Equally commendable was the course he pursued towards the natives. Collecting the Indians under an elm-tree near Philadelphia, he spoke to them lovingly and trustingly, assured them that no advantage would be taken of them, and concluded with them a treaty of peace and friendship.

19. So delighted with his kindly words and looks were these simple children of the forest that they vowed they would love William Penn and his children as long as the sun and moon shone. And they kept their promise, for a Quaker dress was ever after a safe passport among the Indians.

20. The great principle on which Penn proposed to conduct his newly-acquired possessions was "freedom in matters of religion to all who acknowledged a belief in Almighty God." But to qualify for full citizenship required also faith in Jesus Christ. Still, no one in Penn's settlement suffered either pain or penalty for conscience' sake.

21. Not only was there freedom of conscience, but there was also a large degree of civil liberty, in the Pennsylvania colony; for Penn gave to its citizens the right to elect all subordinate officers, and the law-making power was placed in their hands.

22. Lord Baltimore differed with Penn as to the boundary of a grant made to him, and claimed that the north line of Maryland ran west along the 40th parallel. This took in not only the "three lower counties," but also the city of Philadelphia. As they were not able to settle the dispute amicably themselves, Penn went to England to have the matter adjusted there.

23. He was allowed half the land between the Chesapeake and the Delaware, and north of Cape Henlopen. During his absence, however, his deputy and council gave such offence to the "three lower counties on the Delaware" that they set up a government for themselves. This Penn allowed, although with reluctance, and sent out a deputy-governor for them, and granted them an assembly in 1703.

24. Thus was founded the colony of Delaware, the fourth of

the middle colonies. This, however, remained under the same governor as Pennsylvania until the Revolution. After Penn's death, in 1718, the colony was governed mostly by deputies, and in 1779 (while the Revolution was in progress) the State of Pennsylvania, out of respect and gratitude, granted to the heirs of Penn five hundred and eighty thousand dollars as an equivalent for the loss of their proprietary rights.

25. Of Delaware, whose colonial history is so closely interwoven with that of Pennsylvania, it remains to be said that it is, after Rhode Island, the smallest of the original colonies, having an area of only twenty-one hundred and twenty square miles. It is bounded on the north by a semicircular line drawn to the Delaware River from the point where the meridian of  $75^{\circ} 45'$  meets the parallel of  $39^{\circ} 45'$ ; on the west the boundary starts on the meridian just mentioned, and runs south  $3'$  east, separating the State from Maryland; and on the south the parallel of  $38^{\circ} 28'$  divides it from the same State. Its eastern boundary is the Delaware River and Bay and the Atlantic Ocean.

26. The face of the country resembles that of New Jersey, but is much more diversified by hill and dale than the lower part of that State. The climate of the northern part is at times severe, but the contiguity of the ocean has a modifying effect upon that of the southern portion. The soil is good though sandy, producing largely of most of the staples, as well as of peaches and other fruits.

27. In the middle colonies there was among the early settlers much greater diversity of race than in New England. In the latter nearly all were of the pure English stock, while in New York and New Jersey the Dutch characteristics are noticeable to the present day. In Pennsylvania and Delaware, while the English element greatly predominated, there were extensive settlements of Germans, a considerable number of French and a few Swedes. To East Jersey also came a large influx of Scotch Presbyterians.

28. This very diversity of race was an advantage to the colonies, for the customs and habits of differing people were well calculated to inspire broader views of life, and the various languages and dialects spoken introduced a taste for a wider range

of literary pursuits. The mineral productions of these colonies, particularly of Pennsylvania, also promoted a desire for scientific knowledge, especially in geology and mineralogy.

29. The great freedom from Indian disturbances in New Jersey, Pennsylvania and Delaware is noteworthy, and was, undoubtedly, one cause of their rapid growth and general prosperity. Penn's treatment of the red man was most salutary in its effects, and contributed greatly to the happiness and security of the colonists.

30. This immunity New York was not so fortunate as to enjoy. The early settlers of this colony were greatly exposed to the fury of the maddened savages. The Dutch were the cause of this, for they treated the natives in a manner calculated to arouse all the worst passions of human nature, and dearly did the oppressors pay for their cruelty.

31. The spirit of liberty was strongly developed in the people of the middle colonies, and manifested itself with great vigor and intensity when the final struggle with the mother country began; and within their borders were fought the most important battles of that eventful time.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Which is the second in order of the Middle States? What did the Dutch call it? Give its boundaries and area.

2. How does the northern portion differ from the southern? Its mountains?

3. Its soil, climate and productions?

4. How is the climate modified?

5. What two nations settled New Jersey?

6. When and where was it first settled by the Dutch? Into whose hands did it pass in 1664? When and where was it first settled by the English?

7. How did the duke of York dispose of it? Why was New Jersey so named?

8. What encouraged immigration? What caused disputes, and how were they settled?

9. How were the Quakers deprived of their possessions? When were these restored?

10. Why did the Quakers resign their government of Jersey? With what other State was it united? When did it become a separate government again?

11. Which is the third in order of the Middle States? What is its area? Its boundaries? Length and breadth?
12. What causes its great variety of surface? What of its productions?
13. What has added greatly to the wealth of Pennsylvania? What peculiarity of climate do we observe?
14. Describe the first settlement made in Pennsylvania. Why was it so named? What additional grant was made by the king?
15. What of Penn's religion? What persons particularly settled in his country?
16. When did Penn first come to America, and where did he land? What name did he give to his first settlement? What of its progress?
17. How were the Swedes treated?
18. What of his treatment of the natives?
19. What promise did the Indians make?
20. What was the great law by which Penn conducted his settlement? How was full citizenship acquired?
21. What civil liberty did Penn's colonists enjoy?
22. What disputes arose between Baltimore and Penn? What was done by Penn?
23. How did the king adjust the dispute? What was done during Penn's absence? What was Penn compelled to do in 1703?
24. Which is the fourth in order of the Middle States? What of Pennsylvania and Delaware together? What was done for the heirs of Penn after his death?
25. What is the area of Delaware? Bound the State.
26. What of its climate and productions?
27. What of the diversity of race among the early settlers of the middle colonies?
28. What advantage resulted from this diversity?
29. What aided the growth of Pennsylvania, New Jersey and Delaware?
30. Why was New York not so fortunate?
31. What is said of the spirit of liberty?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

PHILADELPHIA (Fil-ă-del'-fī-ă).	NEW CASTLE (Nū-kas'-sl).
BERGEN (Berg'-en).	HENLOPEN (Hen-lō'-pen).
BERKELEY (Berk'-le).	PRESBYTERIAN (Pres-bī-tē'-rī-an).
CARTERET (Car'-ter-et).	CHARACTERISTIC (Kāi'-ak-ter- s' tik).
APPALACHIAN (Ap-pă-lă'-chī-an).	
QUAKER (Kwā'-ker).	



## CHAPTER VI.

*THE SOUTHERN COLONIES.—MARYLAND, VIRGINIA, NORTH CAROLINA, SOUTH CAROLINA AND GEORGIA.*

1. THE third division of the original colonies included what we shall here term the southern colonies. They are Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina and Georgia.

2. Maryland presents itself first, from its geographical position. Were we, indeed, to consider its location only, we might properly classify it, as is commonly done, among the middle colonies; but as in all its social and historical affiliations it is more intimately connected with the southern division, we have so ranked it. Its territory is exceedingly irregular in outline, and may be described as follows.

3. The parallel of  $39^{\circ} 45'$  from the point where it is crossed by the meridian of  $75^{\circ} 45'$  constitutes the northern line of the State, and separates it from Pennsylvania. Its eastern boundary starts on the meridian just mentioned, and runs south  $3'$  east, dividing it from Delaware. On reaching the parallel of  $38^{\circ} 28'$ , the southern limit of Delaware, it stretches east to the Atlantic Ocean, which completes its limit on the east. The 38th parallel, the Pocomoke River and the Virginia shore of the Potomac River form its southern boundary, and a meridian line ( $79^{\circ} 20'$ ) from the source of the north branch of the Potomac to the Pennsylvania border constitutes its western limit.

4. The Chesapeake Bay, which is a widening of the Susquehanna River, divides the territory into two unequal parts, called the Eastern and Western Shores, of which the Eastern is the smaller. The greatest breadth in a north and south direction is one hundred and twenty miles, while the northern line presents a length of one hundred and ninety miles. Its area is nine thousand three hundred and fifty-six square miles.

5. On both sides of the Chesapeake the soil is diversified and the country level, but a range of hills enters the State where the northern boundary strikes the Susquehanna, and extends in a south-westerly direction to the Potomac. This ridge divides the



level tract near the bay from a more elevated portion, which sometimes becomes mountainous.

6. This State, like Pennsylvania, abounds in iron and bituminous coal; and it is noted for its chrome, limestone and granite. Chesapeake Bay has a width varying from seven to twenty miles, and is navigable for vessels of the largest class. It has also numerous inlets, rendering transportation to all parts cheap and easy, besides affording an abundant supply of fish.

7. The climate is happily moderated by the large body of water which so deeply indents the coast. The temperature is consequently a mean between the extreme of northern cold and southern heat; but in some of the lowlands bordering on the bay miasmatic fevers are prevalent.

8. In its productions we find tobacco a staple, and this State ranks fifth in the Union in its yield of this article. There is also an abundant return of fruits, wheat, corn, and of all other crops adapted to the soil of this latitude.

9. The early settlement of Maryland is due to the exertions of George Calvert, an English nobleman, better known as Lord Baltimore. Of the original "London Company," which we have already mentioned, Lord Baltimore was a member. In religion he was a Catholic, and in his time those professing the old faith met with little toleration in Protestant England: so he was anxious to secure for himself and his people a refuge in the New World.

10. At first he tried to plant a colony in Newfoundland; but the sterility of the soil and the severity of the climate defeated his purpose. He next tried Virginia; but a visit to Jamestown in 1628 taught him that Catholics would not be even so well off there as they were in England, for the feeling against them in that colony was at the time exceedingly bitter.

11. After his return to England he obtained from Charles I., in 1632, a grant of land north of the Potomac, and in honor of the king's wife, Henrietta Maria, he called it Maryland. He died, however, before the patent for his grant was issued, and his son Cecil, who succeeded him as Lord Baltimore, obtained the charter in his own name.

12. By this charter greater liberties than had heretofore been granted by the Crown were secured to settlers. The government of the colony was invested in the proprietors, and all laws were to be enacted with the consent of the people. It was also provided that no tax should be levied on them by the king, and that no distinction should be made in favor of any Christian sect. This was the first colonial charter that conferred on the citizens the right of making laws for themselves.

13. The first body of settlers, led by Leonard Calvert, brother of the proprietor, consisted of a company principally of Catholic gentlemen who arrived in Chesapeake Bay, early in 1634, in two vessels called the Ark and Dove; and on the 27th of March of the same year they established themselves at an Indian village near the mouth of the Potomac, which they named St. Mary's.

14. But trouble at once arose with Virginia. That colony protested against Lord Baltimore's grant, alleging that Maryland was within its limits, as granted to the London Company. One William Clayborne, a member of the Virginia council, was especially active in making resistance. He had already, in 1628, established under royal license two trading-posts within Calvert's limits, and these he prepared to defend by force. As soon, therefore, as the colonists landed, he began to annoy them, having fitted out a small vessel for that purpose.

15. He was, however, worsted in a sharp skirmish and compelled to flee to Virginia, whose governor sent him to England to be tried for treason. He was acquitted of the charge, and in 1644 returned to Maryland, where he incited a rebellion and drove the governor out of the colony. Calvert, in 1646, came back with a strong body of troops, and Clayborne fled. Thus ended the contest which is commonly called "Clayborne's Rebellion."

16. In 1649 an assembly summoned in accordance with the provisions of the charter confirmed the right of religious freedom by passing the celebrated "Toleration Act," which secured to all Christians the liberty of worshiping God according to the dictates of their own conscience. Maryland thus became an asylum for those who were persecuted for religion's sake—the

most tolerant of the colonial governments, with the exception of those of Rhode Island and Pennsylvania.

17. Following the dispute that arose between King Charles I. and his Parliament, or about 1652, commissions were sent out to take charge of the plantations on the Chesapeake, and a struggle with the proprietors ensued. Strange as it may seem, other settlers, who had come to Maryland to participate in the benefit of the Toleration Act, having obtained a majority, now took sides against the Catholics and drove them from the assembly, declaring them outside the protection of the law.

18. In the civil war that ensued there were many vicissitudes of fortune. At one time there were two governments, one Catholic and the other Protestant. In 1658 the dispute was settled, and two years after, Lord Baltimore was restored to his rights. When William III. became king, the Calvert grant was withdrawn, and Maryland became a royal province; the Church of England was established, and Catholics found themselves disfranchised in the colony they had established.

19. For twenty-four years Maryland remained a royal province; but in 1715 the proprietary rights of the Calverts were restored, and the colony remained under their administration until the Revolution.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Name the southern colonies as here classified.
2. Why is Maryland classed among the southern colonies?
3. Give its boundaries.
4. What divides the State into two parts? Tell its greatest length and breadth. What is its area?
5. Describe its natural features.
6. What of mineral productions? What is said of its commercial facilities?
7. What of its climate?
8. How does the production of tobacco compare with that of the other States?
9. Through whose exertions was Maryland settled? What is said of Lord Baltimore and his times? What was his design in founding a colony?
10. What of his first attempts to establish colonies?
11. From whom did he obtain a grant of land? Why did he name it Maryland? His death?

12. What were the peculiar features of the Maryland charter?
13. When did the first emigrants arrive, and what settlement was made?
- 14, 15. What disputes arose about the territory? By what name is this contest known?
16. What was done by the assembly in 1649?
17. Of what injustice was the assembly guilty?
18. What evil resulted from this act? What was done by William III. when he became king?
19. How long did Maryland remain a royal province? When were the rights of the Calverts restored?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

MARYLAND (Mă'-re-land).	CECIL CALVERT (Sē'-sil Kāl'-vert).
GEORGIA (Jōr'-jī-ă).	BALTIMORE (Bawl'-tī-mōr).
POTOMAC (Pō-tō'-măk).	CLAYBORNE (Klā'-burn).
SUSQUEHANNA (Sus-kwē-han'-nă).	CUMBERLAND (Kum'-ber-land).

---

## CHAPTER VII.

### *THE SOUTHERN COLONIES.—CONTINUED.*

1. VIRGINIA, the second in geographical position of the southern colonies, was, in point of settlement and importance, the first of the English colonies in America. It is bounded as follows: on the east by the Potomac River, which separates it from Maryland, and by the Atlantic Ocean; on the south by the parallel of  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , which divides it from North Carolina; on the west by the Cumberland Mountains and the Big Sandy, a branch of the Ohio River, and by the Ohio River itself to latitude  $40^{\circ} 38'$ , where the Pennsylvania western line meets it. On the north, Maryland and Pennsylvania complete its boundaries. A narrow strip of land lying between the Ohio River and Pennsylvania is known as the Pan Handle.

2. The limits here given are those of the old colony and State. A division recently made, cutting off the present State of West Virginia, will be noted in the proper place.

3. From the above it will be perceived that the outlines of

Virginia are very irregular. The greatest length of the State from east to west is four hundred and twenty-five miles, and its greatest breadth, exclusive of the Pan Handle projection, two hundred and ten miles. The area is sixty-one thousand square miles.

4. Virginia presents a greater variety of surface than any other of the original colonies, and it has probably a greater extent of mountainous country within its limits than any other State east of the Rocky Mountains. In mineral resources it is exceedingly rich, including most of the useful and some of the precious metals.

5. As may be imagined from its extent, it presents a marked variety of climate, being very hot and unhealthy in summer in the low country near the coast, and cool and salubrious in the central and mountainous portions.

6. With regard to soil, Washington, a competent judge, pronounced the central counties to be the finest agricultural district in the United States. The system of tillage has not, however, been such as to derive from it all the return it is capable of yielding. Besides the ordinary staples in fruits and cereals, Virginia produces large quantities of tobacco. It was in this State that this plant was first cultivated by civilized men.

7. The history of the colonial settlement of the "Mother of Presidents," as Virginia is proudly designated by its people, is long and intricate, and we cannot pretend to do more than present to the reader an outline of the story.

8. Mention has been made, in a foregoing chapter, of the efforts of Sir Walter Raleigh and others to found a colony within the limits of Virginia and North Carolina, and of the failure of these various attempts. In 1589, Raleigh assigned his patent to some Londoners, who did nothing more than keep up a small trading business on the Virginia coast, until 1603, when James I. confiscated the patent, and in 1606 gave all the territory between the 34th and 38th parallels to the association known as the London Company.

9. This grant included all of what is now North Carolina and the greater part of Virginia. The company soon made preparations to occupy its possessions, and in 1606 sent out

Captain Newport with three ships and one hundred and five emigrants. The design was to land at Roanoke, but a storm drove them farther north, and they entered Chesapeake Bay.

10. After some search for a suitable place, they ascended the Powhatan, now the James, River, and fifty miles from its mouth, on the 23d of May, 1607, founded the first permanent English settlement in America, which was named Jamestown, in honor of the king. Thus far we have been obliged to repeat ourselves.

11. By the royal charter the supreme government of the colony was vested in a council resident in England, but the administration was entrusted to a colonial council of seven, whose names, by the king's order, were concealed from the colonists until they landed.

12. When they arrived in Virginia and the box containing the names was unsealed, the members of the council were found to be Newport, the commander, Wingfield, a London merchant, Gosnold, the discoverer of Cape Cod, John Smith, a man under thirty years of age, but who had experienced wonderful vicissitudes of fortune and proved himself to be possessed of remarkable tact, energy and courage, and three others whose names we need not mention.

13. During the tedious voyage, jealousies arose among the leaders, and Smith was accused of sedition by Wingfield and placed under arrest. When it was found, upon their arrival in Virginia, that he was named one of the council, he was not at first allowed to take his place, but was brought to trial upon Wingfield's charge against him. He was acquitted, the jury giving him heavy damages.

14. Smith was now allowed to take his seat, and through his instrumentality alone was the colony saved from ruin. Wingfield, who was elected president of the council, was an avaricious and unprincipled man; he embezzled the public stores, and eventually engaged in an attempt to desert the settlement. For these offences he was driven from his office, and after a short time Smith was entrusted with the management of affairs.

15. Meantime, scarcity of provisions, the hostility of the natives, and sickness resulting from the indolent habits of the



settlers had carried off more than fifty of their number within the first four months, among whom was Gosnold, the projector of the settlement, and a man of great influence. So that when Smith took charge the future of the colony looked almost hopeless.

16. Thanks to the energy and good management of this one man, affairs soon began to wear a brighter aspect. He cheered the spirits of the despondent and persuaded them to erect a fort and to build log huts for the winter. He made frequent excursions into the neighboring country, and, partly by threats, obtained from the Indians supplies of corn. Thus all fear of starvation was for the present removed.

17. Captain Smith's task was no easy one. Placed in authority over a band of men ill fitted to make a living in a new country—for there were only seven or eight mechanics and about a dozen laborers in the company—it required great tact to induce some fifty broken-down gentlemen, who despised labor and had only come to seek for gold, to wield the axe and cultivate the soil.

18. Smith, however, was equal to the emergency. He declared that he who would not work should not eat, and his own indefatigable industry put the laggard to the blush. He explored Chesapeake Bay, and ascended the James River, thus acquiring a knowledge of the country that proved of great service in the government of the colony.

19. In one of his excursions he was captured by the Indians and brought before their chief, or king, named Powhatan. The warriors met in council and condemned him to die; but when his head was laid upon a stone, in readiness for the fatal blow. Pocahontas, the king's daughter, rushed forward, and by her entreaties saved his life. He was allowed to return to the colony after a detention of seven weeks.

20. Upon his arrival he found the settlement in a wretched condition. Its number was reduced to forty men, and the strongest of these were preparing to leave. By Smith's energy, order was soon restored, and supplies were obtained from the Indians, with whom he was now in favor.

21. Soon after, Newport arrived from England with a large

accession to the number of colonists and an abundant supply of provisions. But the one hundred and twenty men they brought were no better than the old settlers. They were chiefly decayed gentlemen and goldsmiths, whose sole aim was the discovery of gold. Finding some glittering mica, which they mistook for the precious metal, they sent a shipload of it to England to gratify the avaricious eyes of the London Company, whose thoughts were bent on such returns.



POCAHONTAS SAVING SMITH'S LIFE.

22. Smith left them to their folly, and busied himself in exploring the country about the Chesapeake and the rivers which flow into it. This he did to the extent of three thousand miles, and designed the first map of this magnificent bay.

23. In 1609 the home company, dissatisfied with their meagre profits from the colony, obtained a new charter, which appointed Lord Delaware governor for life, the resident council being abolished. This charter seems to have been framed without any regard to the wishes or welfare of the settlers.

24. Smith, having been severely wounded by an accidental explosion of gunpowder, returned soon afterwards to England for surgical aid, and the colony, thus deprived of its main stay, soon fell into decay. The shiftless settlers became a prey to famine and disease, were killed by the Indians, or turned pirates.

This winter—that of 1609–10—was long known as the “starving-time.”

25. The colony was now reduced from four hundred and ninety to sixty, and these determined upon leaving their miserable home. But as they were slowly moving down with the tide, to their great joy they fell in with Lord Delaware, who had just arrived with three ships containing abundant supplies and a new set of colonists. All returned to the deserted town, and Jamestown was once more secured from ruin.

26. Other settlers from time to time arrived, but they were all men. What was needed to secure permanency was families; and no woman had yet been induced to accompany the adventurers.

27. Up to this time the Virginia settlement had proved a failure, and was the subject of ridicule in England. The blame was thrown upon the council, and to quiet the outcry the charter was altered in 1612. Every stockholder was allowed a voice in the meetings of the company, and Lord Delaware was still continued in the office of governor.

28. During the same year, 1612, Pocahontas was enticed away from her people, and a refusal to return her almost brought about a war with the natives. This was happily averted by the marriage of the princess with John Rolfe, a young English planter, which took place in the little Episcopal chapel at Jamestown, in April, 1613.

29. This marriage had a happy effect, for during the life of Powhatan the Indians and the settlers were excellent friends. Three years after her marriage Pocahontas visited England with her husband, and was received with marked attention, being presented at court as the Lady Rebecca. As she was about to return to her native land she died, leaving an infant son from whom many of the leading families of Virginia are proud to boast their descent.

30. The cultivation of tobacco as a staple commenced in 1615, and spread very rapidly. So eager, indeed, were the colonists in its production that they neglected the raising of corn, and suffered severely for this want of foresight.

31. Upon the death of Lord Delaware, which occurred in

1617, Yeardley was appointed governor. He found the colonists arranged in "seven plantations," or boroughs, which he increased to eleven. From these, in 1619, he called an assembly composed of two representatives from each, together with the governor, council and deputies.

**32.** This assembly, designated the House of Burgesses, met at Jamestown on the 28th day of June, and was the first legislative body that met in the American colonies. The laws enacted had, it is true, to be ratified by the company in England, but, on the other hand, the orders from England were not binding unless the colonial house agreed to them. This arrangement was, in 1621, embodied in a written constitution, the first of the kind in America.

**33.** Meanwhile, ninety young women of good character had been induced to emigrate to America with a view to become the wives of the settlers. The planters were required to buy these wives with tobacco, the price being fixed at the cost of the passage, or about one hundred pounds of tobacco, worth seventy-five dollars of our present money. Thus domestic ties were formed, and those who had heretofore led very unsettled lives, having now fixed homes, became Virginians in reality.

**34.** But at the same time that this singular traffic commenced, another, of a different character, sprang up. In 1620 the captain of a Dutch vessel brought to the James River a cargo of twenty African negroes, and sold them to the colonists, who employed them in the cultivation of tobacco. This was the beginning of slavery in the colonies. It did not thrive at first, and forty years elapsed before any considerable number of bondmen were to be found within the limits of Virginia.

**35.** The colony now began to increase rapidly in numbers and wealth, and singular liberality was exhibited in the management of its affairs. Martial law was abolished, trial by jury was established, and courts of justice were required to conform to the English laws. All freemen had the right to vote, religious toleration was secured, and Virginia enjoyed the liberty of an almost independent State.

**36.** In 1622 the plantations around Jamestown had become numerous, and everything wore the appearance of security and

prosperity. Powhatan, however, the firm friend of the English, had died in 1618, and his brother, Opeccanough, who hated the colonists, had succeeded him as chief. He concocted a plan for the extermination of the whites, and so well was the secret kept that on the morning of the massacre, March 22, 1622, the settlers suspected nothing. The Indians still spoke the language of friendship, and visited the settlers' homes, buying and borrowing arms.

37. On a preconcerted signal, about mid-day, they attacked the settlements, and in an hour's time three hundred and forty-seven men, women and children fell victims to their savage cruelty. The massacre would have been still greater had not a converted Indian warned a friend whom he desired to save, and thus Jamestown and some other settlements were spared.

38. A fierce war ensued, during which the number of the colonists was reduced from four thousand to twenty-five hundred, while the Indians suffered so severely that they remained quiet until 1644, a period of over twenty years. Then came a fearful massacre of over five hundred settlers, and a war in which the natives were expelled from the entire region.

39. The English stockholders were greatly moved by the first disaster in Virginia, and their meetings became the scenes of political debate. The king was displeased at the great freedom manifested in these discussions, and seized upon an opportunity to dissolve the company in 1624. Virginia thus became a royal province. Henceforward the king appointed the governor and council, but the assembly remained constituted as before. King James, during the short remainder of his life, did not disturb the colony by any other changes. His son, Charles I., who succeeded him in 1625, also allowed the Virginians to manage their own affairs.

40. In all the struggles between the king and his Parliament the cavaliers of Virginia remained loyal. Yet the ungrateful son of the ill-fated monarch made them a poor return for their devotion, for we find that under Charles II., in 1660, a Navigation Act was passed, excluding all foreign vessels from trading with the colonies. Three years later a still more oppressive law was enforced. By this the colonists were compelled to ship their



tobacco and other staples to England and to buy their European goods in the English markets.

41. Nor were the colonists happy at home. Two parties had sprung up: these were the aristocrats and the people's party. The former, composed of the wealthier planters, held the majority in the assembly, and levied exorbitant taxes to pay their large salaries and those of the office-holders. They fixed their own pay at two hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco a day, refused to go out of office when their term expired, restricted the right of voting to "freeholders and housekeepers," and imposed on Quakers a monthly fine of one hundred dollars.

42. Berkeley, the governor, took sides with the aristocrats, and his own words will clearly disclose the spirit that animated him. "I thank God," said he, "there are no free schools nor printing here, and I hope we shall have none of them these hundred years." A bad feeling soon arose between him and the great body of the people; and when matters came to a crisis, the latter rallied round a young man, Nathaniel Bacon by name, who warmly espoused their cause.

43. Bacon, without a commission, collected five hundred men and marched against the Indians, who had long been troublesome, and for defence against whom the governor's measures had been very inefficient. He met and defeated them. Berkeley, in a proclamation, denounced those under arms as rebels, but they did not heed him; their success inspired them with confidence, and they made demands upon which at any previous time they would scarcely have ventured.

44. A struggle ensued, in which the governor and his party were worsted and driven from Jamestown, the town itself being burned to the ground. But just when everything seemed to favor his ultimate success, Bacon suddenly died; his adherents, left without a head, gradually dwindled away, and the "rebellion of Bacon," as it is called, ended in October, 1676.

45. Berkeley resumed his sway, and punished with the greatest severity all concerned in resisting his authority. He caused twenty-two men to be hanged, and imposed fines and imprisonments wholesale. He was, however, recalled by the king, who remarked, "The old fool has hanged more men in that



naked country than I did in England for the murder of my father."

46. Berkeley's successor was Lord Culpepper, to whom and the earl of Arlington the king had granted the country in 1673 for the period of thirty-one years. Culpepper came out in 1680, and occupied the governorship until 1684, when he was deprived of his office on account of his tyranny and rapacity. Virginia again became a royal province, and so remained until the Revolution.

### QUESTIONS.

1. How does Virginia rank compared with the other Southern States? Give its boundaries. What part of it is known as the "Pan Handle"?
2. What State was included in the old colony of Virginia?
3. What is the area of Virginia? Give its greatest length and breadth.
4. What is said of its variety of surface? Of its productions?
5. What variety of climate does it present?
6. What of its soil? Its principal staple?
7. By what other name is Virginia known?
8. Who had made unsuccessful attempts to colonize the State? What was done by James I. in 1606?
9. What land was included in this grant? What colony was sent out in 1606?
10. When and where did they settle, and why is this settlement remarkable?
11. In whom was the government of the colony vested?
12. Name the members of the council.
13. What trouble arose during the voyage?
14. What was the character of Wingfield? Who succeeded him?
15. What caused great distress in the colony?
16. What is said of Smith's administration?
17. What made his task a difficult one?
18. How did Smith compel the colonists to work?
19. What happened to him in one of his explorations? How was his life saved?
20. What bad effect had the absence of Smith upon the colony?
21. What is said of Newport's arrival? What of the new colonists?
22. How did Smith occupy his time?
23. What change took place in 1609?
24. What accident befell Smith? For what is this period noted?
25. What had the colonists planned? What caused them to change their plans?
26. What was needed to secure permanency in the colony?

27. How was the Virginia settlement regarded in England? What change was made in the charter in 1612?
28. What of a threatened war between Powhatan and the settlers in 1612? How was it averted? What good resulted from this marriage?
29. What of Pocahontas's visit to England?
30. What of the cultivation of tobacco in 1615?
31. Who succeeded Lord Delaware as governor? In what condition did he find the colony?
32. Under what circumstances was the first legislative body convened in the colonies?
33. What domestic ties were formed by the settlers about this time?
34. Describe the introduction of slavery into the colony.
35. What liberal acts were now passed by the government?
36. What great disaster happened to the colony in 1622?
37. How were Jamestown and some other settlements saved?
38. What was the loss to the colony? When did the second massacre occur? How were the natives punished?
39. How were the stockholders in England affected? When and how did Virginia become a royal province?
40. With whom did the colonists of Virginia side during the Revolution in England? Describe the Navigation Act.
41. Into what two parties were the colonists now divided? Which was the more powerful, and how did they make use of their power?
42. What of Berkeley? Who was the leader of the people's party?
43. What was done by him? Describe Bacon's rebellion.
44. How did it end?
45. What of the remainder of Berkeley's administration?
46. Who succeeded him as governor? Why and when was Culpepper removed? What change then took place?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

OHIO (O-hī'-o).  
 WINGFIELD (Wing'-feeld).  
 POCAHONTAS (Po-kā-hon'-tas).  
 POWHATAN (Pōw-ā-tan').  
 ROLFE (Rōlf).

YEARDLEY (Yard'-le).  
 OPECANCAHOUGH (Op-e-kan'-kan-ō).  
 BACON (Bā'-kon).  
 CULPEPPER (Kul'-pep-pēr).  
 ARLINGTON (Ar'-ling-ton).

## CHAPTER VIII.

*THE SOUTHERN COLONIES.—CONCLUDED.*

1. NORTH and South Carolina—or, as they are familiarly called, the Carolinas—constitute the third and fourth divisions of the southern colonies.

2. The southern boundary of Virginia—namely, the parallel of  $36^{\circ} 30'$ —forms the northern limit of North Carolina; the Atlantic Ocean, from this parallel to the Savannah River, bounds both North and South Carolina on the east; the Savannah River constitutes the western boundary of the more southern State, and separates it from Georgia; and the Alleghany Mountains separate the northern State on the west from Tennessee. Between the head-waters of the river and the mountains the 35th parallel divides North Carolina from Georgia, and an irregular line from that point to where the 34th parallel meets the ocean, separates the two States from each other, making the southern one almost a triangle in shape.

3. In climate and soil the two States resemble each other, the southern being somewhat the warmer. Along the Atlantic coast the entire stretch of country is level and sandy, and sometimes marshy. It is protected from the inroads of the ocean by a chain of low islands, which line almost the whole length, and form a series of lagoons between themselves and the main land by which a coast navigation is carried on.

4. The face of the country, sixty miles from the coast, becomes mountainous in the north State, several ridges of the Alleghany range passing in a south-westerly direction through it. In the southern State, upon leaving the coast, you enter upon a sandy tract, known as the “Middle Country,” and this in turn is bounded by an abrupt elevation called the “Ridge.” Beyond this the country gradually rises, until in the extreme north-west corner the Blue Ridge Mountains are reached.

5. Both States are rich in mineral productions, gold, copper, iron and coal being found in the north State, and the same, with the exception of iron, in the south State.

6. The climate is hot near the coast, which cannot be said to be healthy either in North or in South Carolina; but when the more elevated lands of the interior are reached, the air is temperate and salubrious. The staple productions of North Carolina are corn and tobacco; South Carolina is especially noted for its cotton, of which that grown on the islands along the coast, and called "sea island," is much valued.

7. The colonial history of this portion of the country may be summed up in a few paragraphs. It will be remembered that Raleigh's grant included North Carolina, and also that he made several unsuccessful attempts to settle on Roanoke Island. Various equally futile efforts were afterwards made.

8. But in 1663, Charles II. granted to Lord Clarendon and seven other English noblemen all the territory now included in both States, and in honor of the king it was called Carolina. Under the auspices of the proprietors a party from Virginia established themselves, in 1664, on the Chowan River, near an old settlement made there in 1651. This was afterwards called "Albemarle colony."

9. A second settlement was made near Wilmington in 1665, likewise on the site of a former one which had been abandoned. This was named the "Clarendon colony," and did not succeed. The country around it was barren, and the settlement was nearly deserted by 1671.

10. The Albemarle colony flourished in numbers, but there was no harmony between the settlers and the proprietors. Although the celebrated John Locke drew up the plan for the government of the colony, it was by no means suited to the wants of a people in a new country. It provided for an order of nobility, who were to make the laws and govern the people, while the latter were to pay yearly rents for the lands.

11. This gave rise to constant disputes. The people were not willing to pay rent for land which they themselves had cleared, and the proprietors could find no means of collecting it. These contentions continued until 1729, when North Carolina became a royal province, and so remained until the Revolution.

12. Meantime, in 1670, a colony was founded on the west bank of the Ashley River, near its mouth, which was called the

"Carteret Colony." This flourished from the first, and ship-loads of Dutch from New York, dissatisfied with the English rule there, came to the more genial climate of the South.

13. Religious persecution in France also drove a large body of Huguenots to seek a home in America, and they too settled on the Ashley, although they do not seem to have been very cordially welcomed by the first settlers.

14. In the course of time most of the settlers of the "Clarendon colony" migrated to the south; and as there were thus only two colonies remaining in the country, one was called North Carolina and the other South Carolina.

15. The two settlements, being so far removed from each other, had from the beginning separate governors, though they remained one province. But there was constant jarring between the proprietors and the colonists, and also between the settlements. Eventually, in 1729, the proprietors sold their rights to the Crown, the province was divided, and from that time until the Revolution North Carolina and South Carolina remained separate royal provinces.

16. Georgia, the fifth of the southern and the last of the original thirteen colonies, is a large territory, containing an area of fifty-eight thousand square miles, and is bounded as follows.

17. On the east the Savannah River separates it from South Carolina, and the Atlantic Ocean, to St. Mary's River, completes its boundary on that side. On the north the 35th parallel separates it from North Carolina and Tennessee. On the south the parallel of  $30^{\circ} 30'$  divides it from Florida, and on the west the Chattahoochie River, from West Point to the Gulf of Mexico, constitutes its limit, and from West Point a line running slightly west of a true meridian until it reaches the 35th parallel completes its western confines. The State is thus about three hundred miles in length and two hundred and sixty in its greatest breadth.

18. Georgia has every variety of surface, from the mountains of the north, through all the gradations of rough, hilly and undulating country, to the marshy flats contiguous to the ocean. Its climate is as varied as its soil, being hot and unhealthy in the lowlands and cool and salubrious in the uplands.

19. The staple productions are cotton and tobacco, and the State is very rich in minerals. The iron found here is represented to be of very superior quality. Altogether, in its natural facilities and resources this territory is unsurpassed by any within the confines of the Union.

20. Georgia was originally included in the grant to Clarendon and others of which mention has been made in speaking of the Carolinas. The southern part of that grant remaining unsettled until 1732, all the land between the Savannah and the Altamaha Rivers was granted to James Oglethorpe, a warm-hearted man, possessed of considerable fortune, an officer in the British army, and a member of Parliament.

21. Oglethorpe conceived the benevolent idea of providing a refuge for delinquent debtors, who were cruelly oppressed by the laws of that day. George II. gave him a grant of land in trust for the poor, which he named Georgia, in honor of the king.

22. Oglethorpe settled at Savannah in 1733. But the class of immigrants that accompanied him was not exactly what was needed in a new country, for bankrupt tradesmen were not likely to become successful tillers of the soil. Nor were the next band of settlers, six hundred in number, any better. They were paupers, lazy and vicious, whom the charitable people of England had enabled to emigrate. Small grants of land, which could not be increased, were made to the settlers, and the importation of rum and slaves was forbidden. But the people were dissatisfied with these regulations, and there was constant fault-finding with the trustees.

23. The Spaniards had all along looked upon the Georgia colony as an intrusion, and claimed the territory as part of Florida. Oglethorpe, foreseeing that a struggle with Spain was imminent, went to England, and returned in 1738 with a regiment of soldiers. Two years later he made an unsuccessful expedition against St. Augustine, and the Spaniards retaliated, with equal want of success.

24. Notwithstanding the efforts of Oglethorpe in their behalf, the colonists sent continual complaints to England against him, and he at last deemed it necessary, in 1743, to go there and meet his accusers face to face. Not only was he acquitted of the



charges brought against him, but the emissary sent to accuse him was punished for making false complaints. Oglethorpe, however, was disgusted with the colony, and never returned to it.

25. Wearied of their troublesome charge, the English trustees surrendered their charter in 1752, and from that time to the Revolution Georgia remained a royal province.

### QUESTIONS.

1. Name the Carolinas.
2. Give their location and their boundaries.
3. What difference of climate do we notice in the Carolinas? How is navigation carried on along the coast?
4. Describe their natural features.
5. Name the mineral productions of both States.
6. What parts of the Carolinas are healthy?
7. In whose grant were the Carolinas originally included?
8. How was the country disposed of in 1663? When and where was the Albemarle colony founded?
9. Describe the second settlement made in Carolina.
10. What of Locke's plan of government?
11. How were the troubles in Carolina adjusted?
12. When and where was the Carteret colony founded?
13. What new colonists arrived at this time?
14. How did these settlements come to be divided?
15. When did they become royal provinces?
16. What is the area of Georgia?
17. Give its boundaries.
18. What variety of surface does it present? Its climate?
19. Name its staple products.
20. In what grant was Georgia originally included? To whom was it granted in 1732?
21. What benevolent intentions had Oglethorpe in view in planting this colony? Why was it called Georgia?
22. What class of people were its early settlers?
23. How were they regarded by the Spaniards? How did Oglethorpe try to avert trouble? When did open hostilities break out? With what result?
24. Why did Oglethorpe go to England in 1743? Why did he not return?
25. When did Georgia become a royal province?

## PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

TENNESSEE (Ten-nes-see').  
 LAGOON (Lă-goon').  
 CLARENDON (Klăr'-en-don).  
 CHOWAN (Cho-wan').

LOCKE (Lök).  
 ASHLEY (Ash'-le).  
 ALTAMAHA (Awl-tă-mă-haw').  
 OGLETHORPE (Ō'-g'l-thorp).

## CHAPTER IX.

*FRENCH EXPLORATIONS AND AGGRESSIONS.*

1. A FEW words must here be said of the explorations of the French and the encroachments they made upon territory included in the English grants.

2. It must be borne in mind that most of the patents bestowed by European sovereigns were extremely liberal, measured on the coast, and were unlimited westward. Long, too, after the Atlantic region had been tolerably well surveyed and defined, the interior, beyond two or three hundred miles, was an entirely unknown tract, and the actual settlers during the early part of the seventeenth century little dreamed what an immense empire lay beyond the Alleghany Mountains.

3. True, a few hardy adventurers had penetrated far beyond the ordinary limits, but their explorations seemed of little value at first to those who had come to the new land for refuge and a home. However, as these discoveries led to serious difficulties, and eventually to war, between the rival claimants, some details are requisite.

4. Mention has already been made of Champlain and La Salle, both Frenchmen, whose daring exploits have been the theme of many a romantic tale. The first brought upon himself and his nation the hostility of the natives by taking sides in their disputes. Still, he was the means of inducing some Catholic missionaries to undertake the conversion of the Indians to Christianity.

5. These missionaries were remarkable for their lofty faith, their zeal and their courage. We soon find them as far west as Lake

Huron, and in 1664 they had penetrated to Lake Superior. In 1668 the mission of St. Mary's, in Michigan, was established, and by the year 1672 numerous others were planted among the Indian tribes on Lake Michigan. Marquette, one of the most energetic of these missionaries, in company with a trader from Quebec named Joliet, made his way to the Mississippi in 1673; and in an open canoe went down the great river as far as the Arkansas.

6. La Salle is famous for his exploration of the Mississippi. He was a man of indomitable courage and energy, and in his efforts to find a western passage to China succeeded in reaching the Gulf of Mexico by the river. He named all the country on either bank Louisiana, in honor of Louis XIV. of France. In his labors he was greatly aided by Father Hennepin, a missionary.

7. In 1683 La Salle went to France to procure men and supplies, and in the following year returned, with a large stock of necessities and about three hundred men, to found a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi. He failed, however, to do so, and instead landed at Matagorda Bay, where he built a fort, which he named St. Louis. He lingered about two years at this place, vainly awaiting assistance from France, and, his numbers having meanwhile been reduced to a mere handful, made an attempt in 1687 to reach Canada by land, but was murdered by his own companions.

8. After La Salle's death, D'Iberville, another French adventurer, sailed up the Mississippi as far as where Natchez now stands, and in 1700 founded a settlement, which he named Rosalie. Two years later he removed this colony to Mobile, but it does not appear to have flourished, for ten years afterwards it numbered only two hundred inhabitants and was dependent on France for its supplies.

9. While these efforts at colonization were in progress on the extreme south, other Frenchmen were busy in the north. Detroit was founded in 1701, and villages sprang up wherever the zealous missionaries established their stations. Most of these were mere Indian towns, for actual French settlers were few, there not being more, it is said, than about three thousand

all told in North America in 1689, when what is called "King William's War" broke out in Europe between the English and French.

10. The American colonies took sides in the contest, as was natural, with the mother countries, and frequent encounters took place between the English and French settlers. Frontier posts naturally suffered the most, being the most exposed. Some of the attacks on both sides were wanton in their cruelty, and both sides invoked the aid of the savages. The Indians of Canada and Maine aided the French, while the Iroquois joined the English.

11. The attack upon Schenectady—which has been referred to—on the night of February 8, 1690, by a band of French and Indians, when sleeping men, women and children were dragged from their beds and tomahawked, was one of the most barbarous acts on record.

12. King William's War lasted eight years, and was concluded by the treaty of Ryswick, but neither French nor English settlers in America were benefited, as each party held precisely the same territory it had owned before.

13. Queen Anne's War followed in 1702, and lasted eleven years. But beyond harassing each other, and the perpetration of an outrage, on the 28th of February, 1704, on the inhabitants of Deerfield, Massachusetts, similar to, and, indeed, more aggravated than, that at Schenectady, nothing occurred that need be mentioned here. True, Acadia was ceded to England by the treaty of Utrecht; but this was an acquisition of doubtful advantage to the colonies.

14. Comparative peace now reigned until the breaking out of King George's War, which occurred in 1744 and lasted four years. The only event of importance in the contest, so far as the colonies were concerned, was the capture, on the 17th of June, 1745, of Louisburg, on the island of Cape Breton, by a combined force of English and colonial troops. The latter distinguished themselves in this siege. But again no territorial advantage was gained, for three years after, by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, this "Gibraltar of America" was given back to the French.

15. These inter-colonial wars had the effect of creating intense

hatred between the French and English in America, which manifested itself very speedily, as we shall presently see.

16. The French had made every exertion to colonize the country from the Great Lakes to the Gulf of Mexico; but except in Louisiana, where they planted a colony in 1722, their efforts were unsuccessful. The enterprise manifested by them, however, was remarkable; for while the English were confined to a comparatively narrow strip east of the Alleghanies, the French had explored the interior for thousands of miles, and before the year 1750 had more than sixty military stations between Lake Ontario and the mouth of the Mississippi.

17. In the year 1748 they came on the east side of the mountains, and took possession of the land in the name of France, burying at many important points leaden plates inscribed with the national arms. This was considered an infringement upon the English claims, for, as has been said, all the colonial grants were unlimited westward. But such was the great extent of the territory that the French, had they kept west of the Ohio River, or even of the Alleghany range, might have held undisputed control until they had so securely planted themselves that they could not have been dispossessed.

18. Their untimely ambition led to a fierce and bloody struggle, in which they were eventually worsted and practically lost all their acquisitions in the New World, with the exception of the Louisiana colony. The particulars of this contest, which is historically known as the French and Indian War, will be detailed in the next chapters.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What is said of the patents bestowed upon the colonies?
2. Of the coast and the interior?
3. What of the discoveries westward?
4. What noted Frenchmen made explorations?
5. What is said of these? When and by whom was the Mississippi explored?
6. What is said of La Salle? What country did he name?
7. Why did he visit France in 1683? Did he succeed in his plans? What city did he found on his return? His fate?
8. What Frenchman then explored the Mississippi? What settlement was made by him?

9. What of French colonies in the north? Their progress? What was the number of French settlers in 1689?

10. In what war were the colonies now engaged? What posts suffered most, and why? What part did the savages take?

11. Describe the attack on Schenectady.

12. How long did King William's War last? What treaty closed it, and what was gained on either side?

13. What war broke out in 1702, and how long did it last? What treaty closed it, and upon what terms?

14. What happened in 1744? What place was captured by the English during this war? By what treaty was it closed? Was there anything gained by this war?

15. What bad effect had these wars upon the colonists?

16. What success had the French in colonizing America? Their enterprise? The extent of their possessions in 1750?

17. What was done by them in 1748? How did the English regard this?

18. What was the result of this? What great war followed?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

JOLIET (Zho-le-ā').

ST. LOUIS (Loo'-is).

HENNEPIN (Hēn'-ne-pin).

CHINA (Chī'-nā).

MATAGORDA (Măt-ă-gŏr'-dă).

CANADA (Can'-ă-dă).

D'IBERVILLE (Dee'-bĕr-veel).

NATCHEZ (Natch'-ez).

ROSALIE (Rôse'-ă-lee).

PASCAGOULA (Pas-kă-goo'-lah).

MOBILE (Mo-beel').

DETROIT (De-troit').

RYSWICK (Riz'-wik).

UTRECHT (Yoo'-trekt).

LOUISBURG (Loo'-is-burg).

GIBRALTAR (Gib-rawl'-tar).

BRETON (Brit'-t'n).

AIX-LA-CHAPELLE (Aiks-lah-shă-pel').

---

### CHAPTER X.

#### THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

1. It has been stated that the three inter-colonial wars had produced deep hatred between the French and English colonies. This feeling was rendered still more bitter by the aggressions of the former upon territory claimed by the latter, the French having crossed the Alleghanies and taken possession of various points east of that mountain range. These encroachments



alarmed the English colonists and brought about the French and Indian War.

2. The immediate cause of the dispute which resulted in so severe a struggle was as follows. In the year 1749, very soon after the close of King George's War, a grant of a large tract of territory lying between the Ohio and Alleghanies was made by the British Crown to a party of Londoners and Virginian-Engineers were sent out by the owners, who were called the "Ohio Company," to survey the ground.

3. These the French drove away as intruders, for they both claimed and occupied the soil. Besides, they had already erected forts within limits heretofore acknowledged as English. One of these was at Presque Isle, where the city of Erie now stands; another was called Fort Le Bœuf, on the site of the present town of Waterford; and a third, Fort Venango, twelve miles south, was on what is still named French Creek.

4. Dinwiddie, the lieutenant-governor of Virginia, as soon as he learned of these encroachments, sent a messenger to the French commander at these posts "to know his reasons for invading the British dominions." The person entrusted with this message was George Washington, a young Virginian, who, at the early age of twenty-one, thus entered the public service, in which he was destined to play so conspicuous a part.

5. Washington received his credentials on the 30th of October, 1753, and on the same day started upon his perilous journey. Leaving Williamsburg, then the capital of Virginia, he pushed through the wilderness, and reached Fort Venango on the 4th of December. At Fort Le Bœuf he found the French commandant, St. Pierre, who received his letter and treated him with marked respect, but refused to discuss the matter. He said he was there by orders from his king, and that he would stay until removed by the same authority. Furthermore, he threatened to seize every English trader within the valley.

6. Washington's return through the wilderness was full of peril; his horses gave out at the very beginning of the journey, and on foot, with one companion, across swollen streams and amid falling snow, shot at on one occasion by an Indian only fifteen paces off, the future hero of America traversed the long

distance of four hundred miles to Williamsburg. He reached home early in January, 1754, and delivered St. Pierre's letter, which was a polite but firm refusal to accede to the governor's demands.



WASHINGTON IN THE WILDERNESS.

7. Early in the following spring Virginia sent out a body of troops to protect the Ohio Company in erecting a fort at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela Rivers. Of the regiment thus raised Washington was second in command when it started from home, but, owing to the death of Colonel Frye, he soon became its leader. Before reaching their destination, the Virginians learned that the French had driven off those who had been engaged in erecting the fort, and had completed it themselves, naming it Fort Du Quesne.

8. Washington was sent forward to reconnoitre, and fell in with a body of the French at a place called Great Meadows, forty-five miles from Du Quesne. He surprised them on the night of the 28th of May, and their leader, Jumonville, with nine of his men, was slain. This may be said to have been the first contest of the war.

9. At Great Meadows, Washington erected a stockade, which he called Fort Necessity. Here he was attacked by a large French and Indian force, said to have numbered fifteen hundred men, and after a severe conflict was compelled to capitulate

on condition that he and his whole command, numbering four hundred, should be permitted to return to Virginia unharmed. This event took place on the 4th of July, 1754.

10. Thus commenced the great struggle for the possession of American soil. The previous inter-colonial wars were European in their origin and results, but this was wholly American in its character.

11. Meantime, the British ministry, perceiving that war was inevitable, urged the colonies to unite upon some plan of defence and to endeavor to secure the friendship of the Six Nations. Accordingly, a convention of the New England colonies and New York, Pennsylvania and Maryland met at Albany on the very day of the surrender of Fort Necessity.

12. This convention adopted a plan of union, drawn up by Benjamin Franklin, a delegate from Pennsylvania. But the plan pleased neither the king nor the colonies; by the former it was rejected because it gave too much power to the people, and by the latter because it gave too much power to the Crown.

13. The general features of the plan were that a grand council should be formed of members chosen by the several colonial assemblies, and that this council, with a governor-general appointed by the Crown and having the veto power, should be empowered to make general laws, raise money in the colonies for their defence, call out troops, regulate trade and lay duties.

14. This plan of union proving unavailing, the English government determined to carry on the war with such assistance as it could get from the colonies. Early in the spring of 1755 General Braddock was sent out as commander-in-chief, with two regiments of British troops. He consulted several of the colonial governors, and with them decided upon the plan of the campaign.

15. Braddock in person was to go against Fort Du Quesne, Governor Shirley of Massachusetts was to lead an expedition against Fort Niagara, and General William Johnson was to attempt, with the assistance of the Indians, over whom he had great influence, the capture of Crown Point. Besides these three expeditions, a fourth was planned by the colonists. This was against the French settlements in Nova Scotia.

16. Fort Du Quesne was the key to the region west of the Alleghanies, and as long as the French held it both Pennsylvania and Virginia would be exposed to Indian attacks. Niagara lay between Lakes Erie and Ontario, and thus protected the great fur-trade of the upper lakes and the west.

17. Crown Point and Ticonderoga controlled the route to Canada by the way of Lake George and Lake Champlain, and offered an advantageous starting-place for French expeditions against New England and New York. The possession of Louisburg and Acadia, in Nova Scotia, by the French, threatened England, at the same time that it gave control over the New England fisheries.

18. There was still another place against which a powerful effort was urged by all who were familiar with the geography of the country. This was Quebec. Lying directly on the river and being strongly fortified, it controlled the St. Lawrence and decided the possession of Canada.

19. These, therefore, may be called the five objective points in the war, and from what has just been said it is easy to understand why the English, on the one hand, were so persistent in their attacks upon them, and the French, on the other, so obstinate in their resistance.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What of the French possessions at the beginning of the French and Indian War?

2. The cause of the first dispute between the French and English? What was the Ohio Company?

3. What forts had the French erected?

4. Who was governor of Virginia then? What messenger was sent to the French by him, and for what purpose?

5. When did Washington start on his journey? Who was the French commander, and how did he receive him?

6. What of the difficulties of returning? What was St. Pierre's reply?

7. Why was a body of troops sent out in the spring? Who was their commander? What had been done by the French in the mean time?

8. When and where was the first contest of this war?

9. Where was Fort Necessity? Describe the attack upon it.

10 How did the previous colonial wars differ from the French and Indian War?

11. What advice did the British ministry give the colonists? What of a convention?
12. What plan did the convention adopt?
13. Why did this plan meet with opposition?
14. What did the English government then determine upon? What commander and what forces did they send to America in 1755?
15. What four attacks were planned?
16. Why was the capture of Fort Du Quesne desirable? What made Niagara important?
17. Crown Point and Ticonderoga? What French possessions gave control over the New England fisheries?
18. Why were the English anxious to capture Quebec?
19. What were the five objective points?

PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

DU QUESNE (Doo Kāne').	MONONGAHELA (Mo-non-gă-hē'-lă).
PRESQUE ISLE (Press' Keel).	FRYE (Fri).
LE BEUF (Lăh-bŭrf).	JUMONVILLE (Zhoo-mong-veel').
ST. PIERRE (Sang Pĭ-āre').	LAWRENCE (Lŏr'-rance).

CHAPTER XI.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.—CONTINUED.

1. IN June, 1755, the expedition against Nova Scotia reached the Bay of Fundy. The French forts in that province were speedily reduced, and the whole region east of the Penobscot fell under British authority. But a disgraceful act sullied the laurels that might otherwise have been claimed.

2. The Acadians were a simple-hearted people, naturally attached to France by language and religion, yet not, on this account, troublesome to the English. They numbered perhaps twelve or thirteen thousand in all. These, under various false pretences, were lured to designated points, and, to the number of seven thousand, were thrust on board English vessels and scattered throughout the English colonies.

3. Thus wives were separated from their husbands and children from their parents, and this on the pretext that they would,



if allowed to stay, aid the French in Canada. Whether this wanton barbarism was attributable to the English colonel Monckton or to the American colonel Winslow it is difficult now to say, but it is certain that it was an iniquitous deed.

4. We have seen that the expedition against the French on the Ohio River was to be conducted by Braddock himself. He made his headquarters at Alexandria, and at that place, by the middle of May, had assembled Virginians enough to swell his force to two thousand five hundred men. With these he began his march from Virginia to Fort Du Quesne in the month of June, having Colonel Washington for one of his aids.

5. Ignorant of Indian warfare, and holding both provincial troops and savages in contempt, Braddock marched his forces into an ambuscade within seven miles of the fort, where he was surprised by a small party of French and Indians, suffering a terrible defeat, and being himself mortally wounded.

6. Washington would have saved Braddock, but that arrogant officer refused to listen to the advice of one whom he considered a mere boy, and he only a provincial. The Virginia troops, under Washington, rallied, and were led safely from the field. Of the twelve hundred engaged in this unfortunate encounter, eight hundred were killed or wounded, sixty-two being officers.

7. The remaining forces, who, under the command of Dunbar, were following slowly with the baggage, becoming panic-stricken at the news of the defeat of their comrades, burned their wagons and fled, and with a small remnant of what was, a few days before, an imposing force, the unfortunate general found his way to Philadelphia.

8. General Johnson commanded the expedition against Crown Point, and woefully mismanaged it. In July, 1755, General Lyman, with six thousand provincials assembled near the headwaters of the Hudson, awaited Johnson's arrival. While doing so, he built Fort Edward. In August the commander joined him with stores and artillery. Together they advanced to Lake George, fifteen miles off. Here they met a force of French and Indians, numbering two thousand, under Baron Dieskau, governor of Canada, and after a sharp conflict defeated it, Dieskau being wounded and captured.



9. Johnson lost all his advantage by not proceeding at once to Crown Point, whither the enemy had fled. Instead of this, he contented himself with building Fort William Henry, near the battle-field. Here and at Fort Edward he left garrisons in the fall, and returned with the rest of his troops to Albany, where he disbanded them.

10. Shirley, governor of Massachusetts, led the expedition against Niagara. He advanced as far as Lake Ontario, but the news of Braddock's defeat, together with sickness in his army, want of provisions, the desertion of his Indian allies and the lateness of the season, caused the enterprise to be abandoned. Therefore, having built two forts at Oswego, and leaving seven hundred men to garrison them, he returned to Albany. By Braddock's death Shirley became commander-in-chief of all the forces in America.

11. Such was the result of the first year's struggle. The expedition to Nova Scotia was a disgraceful success, while those against Du Quesne, Crown Point and Niagara were discreditable failures. We shall find that the efforts made in 1756 were little more successful.

12. Thus far hostilities had been carried on without any formal declaration of war, but in May, 1756, war was declared. In the December preceding, Shirley had met the colonial governors at New York, and decided upon three expeditions for 1756. These were against Niagara, Fort Du Quesne and Crown Point.

13. In June, General Abercrombie came from England with troops, and relieved Shirley. Deeming, however, the force under his command inadequate, he awaited the arrival of Lord Loudon, who had been appointed commander-in-chief for the colonies.

14. Loudon did not reach America until July, and when he did come attempted nothing of consequence. While he was wasting his time at Albany in useless parades, the French commander, the energetic and heroic Montcalm, successor of Dieskau, crossed Lake Ontario at the head of five thousand Canadians and Indians, and attacked the forts at Oswego. One of these was abandoned by the garrison, and the other, after a brief bombardment, surrendered on the 14th of August.

15. Colonel Mercer, the English commander was killed, and

fourteen hundred prisoners and a large amount of stores fell into the hands of the victors. Montcalm demolished the forts to please the Indians, and, leaving the place a solitude, returned to Canada.

16. By this capture the French obtained control of Lakes Ontario and Erie and of all the country of the Six Nations. Loudon, with his usual tardiness, had despatched Colonel Webb to Oswego with some troops, but they came only in time to learn of the terrible disaster, and then hastily returned to Albany.

17. Equally futile were the expeditions against the three objective points of the campaign, Fort Du Quesne, Niagara and Crown Point. Indeed, the only success of the colonial forces this year was the punishment of the Indians at Kittanning, their chief village on the Alleghany.

18. Ever since Braddock's defeat the frontier settlements of Pennsylvania had been left unprotected, and the natives, incited by French emissaries, committed great havoc, killing or carrying into captivity about one thousand of the inhabitants. At length Colonel Armstrong, with a force of some three hundred men, proceeded against them, and after a perilous march through the forest, met and severely defeated them, killing about forty of their braves and leaving their village a smoking ruin.

19. The British Parliament had made great preparation to prosecute the war vigorously in 1757, but were foiled by the energy and ability of Montcalm, and the principal object of the campaign—the reduction of Louisburg—had to be abandoned. Loudon sailed from New York with six thousand regulars, and was joined at Halifax by a fleet of eleven men-of-war and six thousand additional troops. With these he proceeded against the fortress, but so hesitatingly that the French had time to reinforce it largely, and all the attempts of the besiegers had for the time, as has been said, to be given up.

20. Meantime, the French commander, finding the troops withdrawn for the reduction of Louisburg, availed himself of the opportunity, and, suddenly moving up Lake George from Ticonderoga, made a descent upon Fort William Henry, then garrisoned by about two thousand men under Colonel Monroe. Fifteen miles south was Fort Edward, defended by four thousand troops under General Webb.

**21.** Webb failed to send aid to Monroe, and after an heroic defence, which lasted six days, Fort William Henry was surrendered. Its brave commander, Monroe, and his troops were allowed honorable capitulation and safe conduct to Fort Edward; but Montcalm's savage allies, despite his efforts, plundered a part of their baggage and murdered many of them in cold blood.

**22.** Thus the close of the year 1757 found the French in possession of all the territory they held before the war, with the exception of the settlements on the Bay of Fundy. The dissatisfaction of the people of England with the conduct of the war was now so great, and so strong a feeling was raised against the government, that it was found necessary to form a new administration.

**23.** The chief of the new British ministry was William Pitt, afterwards Lord Chatham, whose energy and spirit soon brought about a new condition of affairs, and led to a more prosperous campaign in 1758.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Describe the expedition against Nova Scotia in 1755.
- 2, 3. What act of the English sullied this victory?
4. Where were Braddock's headquarters? What of his force? Who was one of his aids?
- 5, 6. Why was the attack a disgraceful failure? How did Braddock receive Washington's advice? The loss of the English?
7. Who commanded the remaining forces, and what did he do?
8. What of the expedition against Crown Point? Who was governor of Canada then, and what happened to him?
9. How did Johnston lose the advantage he had gained?
10. Why was Shirley's expedition against Niagara abandoned? Who was now made commander-in-chief?
11. What was the result of the first year's struggle?
12. How had hostilities thus far been carried on? When was war formally declared? What expeditions had been planned by Shirley for 1756?
13. Why was nothing accomplished by Abercrombie? Who, in the mean time, was appointed commander-in-chief?
14. When did Loudon reach America, and what was done by him? Who was commander of the French forces at this time? What fort was captured by him?

15. What was the fate of the fort and its commander?
16. What made this conquest of great importance to the French? What had Loudon done for the defence of Oswego?
17. Was the second attack upon Fort Du Quesne, Niagara and Crown Point successful? What was the only thing accomplished this year?
18. What was accomplished by Colonel Armstrong in Pennsylvania?
19. What preparation had the British Parliament made for 1757? What preparation had Loudon made for the attack on Louisburg? Why was it abandoned?
20. What forces were stationed at Forts William Henry and Edward? Who commanded them?
21. Upon what terms did Monroe capitulate? What of the massacre that followed?
22. What of the colonies at the end of the year 1757? The feeling in England?
23. Who was the head of the new British ministry?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

DIESKAU (De-es'-kō).	LOUDON (Lō'-don).
SHIRLEY (Shir'-le).	KITTANING (Kit-tan'-ing).
ABERCROMBIE (Ab'-er-crōm-be).	CHATHAM (Chat'-am).

---

## CHAPTER XII.

### THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.—CONCLUDED.

1. PITT began his work by persuading the colonies to raise twenty-eight thousand men, while he added twenty-two thousand regulars, making in all fifty thousand troops. He recalled Loudon and appointed Abercrombie commander-in-chief. The plan of the campaign was threefold—first, the reduction of Louisburg; second, an expedition against Ticonderoga; and third, the capture of Fort Du Quesne.

2. An army of twelve thousand men, under General Amherst, and a fleet of thirty-seven vessels, under Admiral Boscawen, appeared before Louisburg on the 8th of June. After a vigorous resistance and a severe bombardment, which lasted until July 27th, the fortress surrendered, with nearly six thousand prisoners and a large supply of munitions of war. With Louis-

burg the whole of the islands of Cape Breton and St. John fell into the hands of the English.

3. During this memorable struggle two young soldiers particularly distinguished themselves, namely, General Wolfe and Richard Montgomery. Wolfe, the real hero of the siege, was killed the following year at Quebec, fighting for his king. Montgomery fell at the same place some years after, fighting for the independence of the colonies.

4. The expedition against Ticonderoga was undertaken by the commander-in-chief, Abercrombie. With fifteen thousand men he passed down Lake George, and, landing at its lower end, marched against the fortress, which was defended by a powerful garrison commanded by the brave Montcalm. Near the fort the British advanced guard, under Lord Howe, fell in with the French, and, in the engagement which followed, young Howe, who was greatly beloved, was slain. His death was a serious loss to the army, and retarded its movements.

5. On the 8th of July, Abercrombie, without waiting for his artillery, ordered an advance in full force, and after a bloody struggle was repulsed with a loss of two thousand men. He now retired to the head of the lake and built Fort George, near the ruins of Fort William Henry.

6. The disgrace of this defeat was in some measure atoned for by the capture of the French Fort Frontenac, situated where Kingston now stands. This, Colonel Bradstreet, with three thousand men from Abercrombie's force, easily effected. Nine vessels were captured, and the fort, with a large stock of provisions, was destroyed. This was a severe blow to the enemy; for, besides the commanding position of the place, it contained a quantity of military stores intended for Fort Du Quesne.

7. The capture of Fort Du Quesne was successfully accomplished by General Forbes, as we shall now narrate. His army consisted of seven thousand men, of whom more than three-fourths were Virginians and Pennsylvanians. Washington, who commanded the Virginians, advised Forbes to take the old road, but the latter preferred to build a new one, and thus wasted valuable time.

8. So late in the year had it now become (for it was the be-



ginning of November) that it had actually been decided by a council of war to abandon the enterprise, when some prisoners who were brought in revealed the weak state of the garrison and the depression under which the French were laboring, owing to the capture of Fort Frontenac.

9. This determined the issue. The troops, Washington and his Virginians in advance, took up their line of march for the fort, and before they reached it the garrison fled, and on the 25th of November Washington entered and planted the British flag on the ramparts of Fort Du Quesne, which was then named Fort Pitt, in honor of the illustrious man whose genius had planned the first successful campaign of the war.

10. The tide had turned in favor of the English, and Pitt was not the man to lose any advantages by hesitation or delay. His great object now was the reduction of Canada and the entire expulsion of the French from the American continent.

11. For this purpose he planned three expeditions for the year 1759—one against Quebec, another against Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and a third against Niagara. The first was entrusted to General Wolfe; the second to Amherst, now commander-in-chief in place of Abercrombie; General Prideaux had charge of the third. Amherst and Prideaux, after performing their parts, were to unite with Wolfe in front of Quebec.

12. Prideaux was accidentally killed at Niagara a few days before its surrender, and Sir William Johnson was left to carry out his plans against that place. The fort surrendered on the 23d of July; but Johnson, being encumbered with prisoners and in want of provisions, was unable to move to the assistance of Wolfe, as had been agreed upon.

13. Amherst was also successful in his undertaking. When his army reached Ticonderoga, he found that the enemy had deserted it; and the same thing was true with regard to Crown Point. But, strange to say, he too was unable to co-operate with Wolfe, as no vessels had been provided to carry his troops down Lake Champlain.

14. Thus, either by the neglect and mismanagement of those who were to support him, or by accident, was the young commander who had charge of the most important of the three



expeditions left to encounter, single-handed, the formidable difficulties it presented. But the gallant young leader was fully equal to the emergency; and the story of Wolfe and Quebec is one of those historic tales which seem never to grow old by repetition.

15. On the 26th of June, General Wolfe arrived in the St. Lawrence, opposite the Isle of Orleans. He had eight thousand men and the powerful fleet which had served at Louisburg. His vessels commanded the river, so that without molestation he erected batteries on Point Levi, opposite the fortress. Quebec was divided into two parts, the upper and the lower town. The lower part was comparatively defenceless, and Wolfe's guns could easily destroy the houses on the river; but along the St. Lawrence, above the city, the rocks rise precipitously from the water's edge to a great elevation, terminating in a somewhat broad plateau called the Heights of Abraham.

16. Montcalm believed it impossible for the English to scale the rocks, so he left this part defenceless; and to any other commander than Wolfe they would doubtless have been an impregnable barrier, but to his daring soul the incentive was only the stronger for the difficulty.

17. Besides, the British commander had scarcely a choice in the matter. He had attacked the place in every other way, and had been repulsed. His army was diminishing from various causes, his own health was not good, and he was, besides, disheartened at not receiving the promised succor from Amherst and Prideaux. His resolve was, therefore, to scale the almost perpendicular cliffs and put his army in array upon the plains above the city—an attempt of which even the fearless Montcalm did not dream.

18. Leading to the plateau we have mentioned there is a narrow path, up the face of the rock, scarcely wide enough for two men to walk abreast. This commences at a small estuary in the river, which ever since has been named "Wolfe's Cove." Up this winding way the bold general determined to lead his army.

19. On the 12th of September, in order to deceive the enemy, he took his forces several miles up the river. But when mid-



SCALING THE HEIGHTS OF ABRAHAM.



WOLFE'S ATTACK.

night came, silently gliding down with the current, he relanded his troops at the little bay, and began the perilous ascent. Slowly the hardy soldiers climbed up the difficult path, but at length the heights were gained; and when the morning dawned, the French general, surprised perhaps for the first time in his life, found his enemy drawn up in battle array before him.

20. There was nothing left to Montcalm but to fight. He accordingly abandoned his entrenchments and led his troops against the enemy. A long and bloody battle ensued, which resulted in the defeat of the French, both leaders being mortally wounded in the struggle. Five days after, September 18th, Quebec was surrendered to the English commander, General Townsend.

21. The French did not give up Quebec without an effort to regain it. De Levi, Montcalm's successor, attempted to recover it, but, although he gained some advantage in battle against the British, was eventually foiled, and retreated to Montreal. This place, with all the rest of Canada, fell into the hands of the English in September, 1760.

22. No further hostilities occurred between the French and

English in America, although the war in Europe did not terminate until 1763, when a treaty of peace between the two nations was signed at Paris on the 10th of February. By the terms of this treaty France ceded all her American possessions east of the Mississippi and north of the Iberville River, in Louisiana, to Great Britain. At the same time Spain exchanged her possessions in Florida for Havana, which had been captured by the English and colonial troops in 1761.

23. Thus the whole of the North American continent was now practically divided between Great Britain and Spain, and it only remained for the English to bring under subjection the Indians inhabiting their portion. The Cherokees, who had been their firm friends in the war, were treated with ingratitude at its close, and in revenge invaded the Carolinas. The struggle with them lasted two years. They were finally defeated by Colonel Grant, and compelled to sue for peace.

24. After the capture of Montreal, when the English proceeded to take possession of the French posts in Canada, the tribes who had been the friends and allies of the French were unwilling to submit to the rule of the hated Yengese, as they called all Englishmen, and under Pontiac, the chief of the Ottawas, organized a formidable league against them.

25. In the summer of 1763, within the space of two weeks, most of the English posts west of Niagara fell into the hands of the savages. The garrisons were nearly all destroyed, and hundreds of families were butchered or driven from their homes. Fort Pitt was only saved by timely assistance, and Detroit, after a siege of six months conducted by Pontiac in person, barely escaped capture.

26. At length, after a contest of more than a year, the Indians became intimidated by the active preparations to subdue them, and the tribes began to fall away and make peace with the English. But Pontiac refused to submit, and wandered towards the Mississippi, endeavoring to stir up the western tribes against the foe he had sworn never to forgive. In 1764 he was assassinated by one of his own people, and with him ended the contest known as Pontiac's War.

27. Thus terminated the French and Indian War, which

settled the question of the ownership of the most valuable portion of the North American continent. All the territory east of the Mississippi, with the exception of the island and city of New Orleans, had come under the power of England, and after a desperate struggle of nine years France had disappeared from among the claimants of American soil. English laws, English language and English customs were henceforward to control the magnificent area now occupied by the United States.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What was done by the colonies at Pitt's suggestion? Whom did he appoint commander-in-chief? What was the plan of campaign?
2. Describe the siege and capture of Louisburg. The effect?
3. What two generals distinguished themselves? Their fate?
4. Who went against Ticonderoga? By whom was it defended? What of Lord Howe?
5. What was the result of the attack?
6. How was this defeat atoned for?
7. Who commanded the attack on Fort Du Quesne? Who accompanied him?
8. Why did they think of waiting? What gave them courage?
9. What was the result of the expedition?
10. What was now Pitt's object?
11. What three expeditions were planned for this campaign?
12. What happened to Prideaux at Niagara? Why could not Johnson carry out the plan agreed upon?
13. What of Amherst at Ticonderoga? Why could he not assist Wolfe?
14. Who commanded the attack upon Quebec? How was he fitted for this great task?
15. When did he arrive at Quebec, and with how large a force? How was Quebec situated?
16. Who defended it? What part was left unprotected, and why?
17. What circumstances made an attack necessary?
- 18, 19. Describe the march to the heights. What was Montcalm compelled to do?
20. When did Quebec surrender?
21. Describe the attempt to regain the city. What of Montreal? What possessions were gained by this victory?
22. When did hostilities cease in America? In Europe? What of the treaty of peace and its conditions? What possessions did Spain cede to England?

23. What European powers now had possession of the American continent? What of trouble with Indian tribes? What caused this war? How did it end?

24, 25. What trouble did the colonists have in Canada with the Indians? Who was the Indian leader?

26. How long did this war continue? What of Pontiac after the war? By what name is this struggle known?

27. What question was settled by the French and Indian War? What was now the extent of the English possessions? Of the French? The consequence?

---

PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

BOSCAWEN (Bös-kaw'-en).

FRONTENAC (Fron'-tē-nak).

PRIDEAUX (Pree'-do).

PONTIAC (Pon'-te-ak).

PENOBSCOT (Pe-nob'-scot).

MONCKTON (Munk'-tōn).

DUNBAR (Dun-bar').

OSWEGO (Os-wē'-go).

---

CHAPTER XIII.

CONSOLIDATION OF THE COLONIES.

1. PRIOR to the French and Indian War the thirteen colonies were thirteen distinct communities, having differing forms of government, diverse interests and conflicting opinions as to religion and popular rights. Of the existing forms of government there were three prevailing in the colonies—the charter, the proprietary and the royal.

2. In the charter colonies, which were Connecticut, Rhode Island and Massachusetts (until 1692), the citizens, within the charter limits, formed their own government and regulated their own affairs; in the proprietary colonies—that is to say, Maryland, Pennsylvania, Delaware, New Jersey, and at first New York and the Carolinas—the proprietors, under certain restrictions, were allowed to regulate the government for themselves; and in the royal colonies of New Hampshire, Virginia, Georgia, and afterwards Massachusetts, New York, New Jersey and the Carolinas, the officers were appointed by the Crown and the laws had to receive the royal approbation.

3. Of course, in communities thus constituted there would necessarily be wide differences of feeling and interests. The



Plymouth Puritan was not likely to be in strong sympathy with the Virginian cavalier, and the sedate Quaker would not often be found occupying the same ground with the zealous Catholic, either in politics or in religion.

4. Strong distinctions were, therefore, manifest in the several colonies up to the period of the inter-colonial wars. Then there came an urgent necessity for union and co-operation, and this mutual need of aid was the one thing required to give effect to the rapidly growing strength of the country.

5. The colonies now numbered an aggregate population of nearly two millions, and many of the cities and towns were beginning to rival in commercial importance places in the mother country of much older date. A large inter-colonial trade had grown up, and a gradual assimilation of character and manners was thus brought about.

6. When, therefore, the great conflict with the French came, and Pitt urged the colonies to a closer union and advised the raising of large bodies of troops, he was unconsciously leading up to that very consolidation of the colonial strength which was soon to enable them to resist the tyranny of the mother country itself.

7. In the many unfortunate encounters which took place during the first years of the French and Indian wars, it was natural for the provincials to draw contrasts between themselves and the British regulars; and when the comparison was in their favor, as it very frequently was, a feeling of pride in one another sprang up, which was well calculated to cement together these hitherto loosely connected communities.

8. The religious intolerance of former days was greatly abated; persecution had entirely ceased, and freedom of opinion was generally recognized. Thus common interests, common dangers and brotherly pride all combined at this juncture to unite the colonies.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What of the thirteen colonies before the French and Indian War?
2. Name the three forms of government. Which belonged to the charter colonies, and how were their affairs regulated? Which to the proprietary? Which to the royal?
3. What difference in feeling was there?



4. Why was it found necessary to form a union of the colonies?
5. What was now the population of the colonies? What of some of the towns?
6. What of Pitt's advice?
7. What contrasts were drawn? What cause for pride had the colonists?
8. What barrier to their union was now removed?

---

## CHAPTER XIV.

### *BREAKING AWAY FROM THE MOTHER COUNTRY.*

1. FREED from the hostile attacks of the French and Indians, settlements everywhere sprang up, immigration received a new impetus, and a glorious future seemed in store for the thirteen colonies. Their population was not far from three millions, wealth had begun to flow in abundantly, and the tastes, fashions and luxuries of the Old World had been introduced.

2. The mother country, too, had grown wonderfully. At the close of the war with France, England found herself in possession of an immense empire. Most of the West India Islands, all of North America east of the Mississippi, and a large part of India, were hers. Still, though rich in territory and glory, she was poor in money. Her wars, especially the last, had enormously swelled her national debt, and to meet the demands upon her government, greatly-increased taxation became necessary.

3. The expenses of the French and Indian War alone had amounted to three hundred millions of dollars, and the British ministry declared that the colonies ought to pay their share. True, they had spent eleven millions of dollars of their own, had lost thirty thousand of the flower of their youth, and had suffered untold hardships on their widely-extended frontiers; but this, in the judgment of British statesmen, was a small proportion of the cost of the war.

4. "Besides," argued Grenville, the head of the ministry, "the colonies had reaped vast advantages. The great outlays had been mostly expended in their country, and the population had thereby been individually enriched, their territorial area had been immensely extended, and they had been rendered

secure from every foe. Ought they not, therefore, to pay their full share of the reimbursement? Furthermore, Parliament had a right to tax its own people in whatever way and to whatever extent it pleased."

5. To this the provincials replied that they had already paid their full quota in men and money, that they had been allowed no voice in the expenditure of the money, that the war had been badly and extravagantly conducted, and that in the distribution of offices the chief commands had been given to unfit men, while their own gallant soldiers had been either neglected or thrust aside. And, in addition, they declared that taxes could be levied only with the consent of those taxed.

6. Respect is closely akin to love, and the loss of it soon destroys affection. The provincials had lost all confidence in the ability of most of the British leaders, and now began to ask themselves why, when they had enough good men at home to take command of the troops, they should be compelled to follow arrogant lordlings from abroad who led them only to defeat.

7. This kind of reasoning, doubtless, led to another very natural question. "Why," these men might well ask, "shall we, in our business, our pleasures, our daily life, be compelled to depend upon the will and pleasure of a government and people separated from us by a wide intervening ocean—a government whose interests are not ours, and whose only object seems to be to make the most out of us they can?"

8. In short, the colonies had become entirely too large and important a part of Christendom to be held any longer under other control than such as they should elect for themselves. When, therefore, we are told that the Revolution was caused by taxing the colonies without allowing them a voice in the making of the laws by which the tax was imposed, we are told only the apparent and not the actual reason. The true motive for separation was this: The interests and common weal of the thirteen colonies had become too grand and overshadowing to be managed by any others than themselves.

9. Fortunately for the speedy accomplishment of what was, sooner or later, inevitable, the government of Great Britain had then at its head an obstinate and weak-minded king and a min-

ister as stubborn as himself, and as foolishly puffed up with notions of royal prerogative. By their folly they speedily brought to pass what a prudent statesman like Pitt might have warded off for another quarter of a century.

10. However this may be, England determined to raise a revenue from the colonies, which the latter refused to furnish, and the result was dissatisfaction, complaint, resistance and war, as we shall now proceed to show.

11. A more inopportune time for levying taxes upon a free people, unused to such burdens, could not well have been chosen. The colonies were suffering from their own losses in the war, to which, in their judgment, they had already contributed more than their share both of men and of means. Therefore they felt particularly indisposed to submit to new exactions.

12. Besides this, there was the "Navigation Act" of 1660. The effect of this was to keep the colonies dependent upon the mother country by making England the only place where their products could be sent for a market, and whence they could obtain their foreign supplies. They were thus constantly reminded of England's selfishness, and of her determination to discourage all colonial manufactures that might in any way interfere with her own.

13. Naturally energetic and thrifty, the Americans had started many industries of their own, and a brisk inter-colonial trade had sprung up at an early date. Hats, paper, shoes, household furniture, farming utensils and the coarser articles of cutlery were commonly made. Iron manufactures existed to some extent in New England, and on a large scale in Pennsylvania.

14. One might suppose that England would have fostered all efforts of the settlers to better their condition. On the contrary, she treated them as an inferior people, framed all her commercial laws so as to favor her own merchants and manufacturers, and sought in every possible way to make the colonists wholly dependent upon her.

15. To this end the Navigation Act, already mentioned, was passed in 1660. The prohibition of the transportation of woollen goods between the colonies, in 1732, was a blow severely felt; for the manufacture of hats (which were included in the restric-

tion) had become a very thriving business. In 1733 a bill called the "Molasses Act" was passed, imposing a duty on rum, molasses and sugar imported from foreign countries. Other prohibitory measures equally unwise and selfish were added.

16. To guard the British revenues and enforce these unjust and suicidal acts an army of custom-house officers had to be employed. These, finding their duties neither popular nor easy among an unwilling people, applied to the courts in 1761 for "Writs of Assistance." These were warrants to search when and whom they pleased for smuggled goods, and to call in others to help them.

17. The granting of these writs was felt to be an invasion of personal rights, and roused such a storm of indignant opposition that they were very seldom used. But, regardless of the growing spirit of discontent among the colonists, the home government determined to impose still another tax.

18. Accordingly, in March, 1764, the House of Commons resolved "that Parliament had a right to tax America;" and following up this resolution, an act was passed in April laying duties on certain articles imported into the colonies. At the same time, iron and lumber were classed among a list of articles which could only be exported to England. This was an attempt to destroy American manufactures and make the colonists dependent on the mother country for everything.

19. We may form some idea of the feeling which animated the British people and ministry, when we learn that a man of such enlarged views as Lord Chatham declared "that the British colonists of North America had no right to manufacture even a nail for a horseshoe."

20. The conduct of the ministry and Parliament tended to alienate the feelings of those who still had a deep veneration for "home," as England was yet fondly called. The colonists protested against the invasion of their liberties, declaring that they had contributed more than their share in the late wars, that they were now able to protect themselves, and that "taxation without representation was tyranny."

QUESTIONS.

1. In what condition did the colonists now find themselves?
2. What of England at this time? How had the late war affected her?
3. What had England spent in this war? How had the colonists suffered?
4. What arguments for taxation were used by Grenville?
5. What reasons against it were given by the colonists?
6. What questions did the colonists now ask themselves?
7. What effect had this kind of reasoning upon them?
8. Was taxation without representation the real cause of the Revolution? What was the actual motive?
9. What hastened the separation?
10. What of England's determination? The result?
11. Why was this an improper time to levy taxes?
12. What of the Navigation Act?
13. How had the Americans shown their industry?
14. What was England's motive in these acts?
15. What acts were passed in 1660, 1730, 1732? The consequence?
16. What were the Writs of Assistance? Why were they issued?
17. How were they received by the colonists?
18. What step did England now take?
19. What of Lord Chatham?
20. What feelings did the colonists now have for the mother country?

CHAPTER XV.

*BREAKING AWAY FROM THE MOTHER COUNTRY.—CONCLUDED.*

1. BOSTON was the first place to move in opposition to this system of taxation, and instructed her delegates in the colonial House of Representatives to protest against it, and a resolution was passed declaring it "irreconcilable with popular rights."

2. A remonstrance was at the same time sent to England, in which occurred the remarkable words, "If we are not represented, we are slaves." Connecticut, New York, Rhode Island and Virginia sent similar protests; and that of New York was so strongly worded that no member of Parliament could be found to present it.

3. These proceedings only irritated England, and in March,



1765, the odious Stamp Act passed the House of Commons by a large majority; in the House of Lords it met with no opposition. This act imposed a duty on all writing-paper, and made legal documents on unstamped materials null and void.

4. This measure thoroughly aroused the colonists. Mobs attacked the houses of British officials; noted loyalists were insulted and hung in effigy; the stamps were seized, and the stamp agents were forced to resign. The people agreed among themselves to use no article of British manufacture, and associations called the "Sons of Liberty" were formed, whose avowed purpose was to resist the law.

5. Delegates from nine of the colonies met at New York on the 7th of October, 1765, agreed upon a "Declaration of Rights," and framed a petition to the king and Parliament. This convention is known as the first colonial Congress; it sat for three weeks, and had for its president Timothy Ruggles, a noted patriot of Massachusetts.

6. When the 1st of November, the day appointed by law for the Stamp Act to go into effect, came, not a stamp was to be seen, and no distributing officer could be found. The day was generally observed by the colonists as one of mourning; bells were tolled, flags were displayed at half mast and business was suspended.

7. Alarmed by these demonstrations, the English government repealed the Stamp Act on the 18th of March, 1766. At the same time, however, it reasserted its right to impose whatever taxation it chose. Thus the effect which the repeal might have produced was nullified.



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

8. Pending the repeal, Benjamin Franklin, of Pennsylvania, who was in England as agent for some of the colonies, was summoned before the House of Commons, and questioned as to the temper of his countrymen. He told them plainly how matters stood, and no doubt exerted a powerful influence in bringing about a repeal of the obnoxious act.



9. The rulers of England soon showed that they had yielded nothing; for on the 29th of June, 1767, a new tax bill was enacted. By this, tea, paints, paper, glass and lead were subjected to duty, and a board of revenue commissioners established in Boston. When the news reached America, the excitement was revived. The almost forgotten agreement not to use imported articles was renewed, and the Massachusetts court sent, in February, 1768, a circular letter to the other colonial assemblies, urging consultation and co-operation.

10. The British ministry, anticipating opposition to the new tax bill, had passed what is sometimes called the "Mutiny Act," but more commonly the "Quartering Act." This, which required the people wherever troops were stationed to provide them with quarters and food, was, in the opinion of the colonies, the crowning point of this long series of indignities. To be taxed iniquitously was galling, but to be compelled to shelter and support their oppressors was intolerable.

11. In order to enforce the "Quartering Act" the British ministry sent out four regiments of troops to Boston. These arrived on the 1st of October, 1768. But the authorities of the city refused to provide for them, and General Gage was compelled to encamp them on the Common, Faneuil Hall being used as a barrack.

12. The aspect of affairs was now threatening indeed; the words of a wise and righteous ruler were needed to prevent disturbance and restore harmony, but no such words were heard. Boston was garrisoned by four regiments, cannon were planted, sentries posted and passing citizens challenged.

13. This state of things evidently could not last. On March 5, 1770, a crowd of men and boys insulted a picket guard of soldiers, who, provoked by their taunts, fired upon them and killed three persons. Terrible confusion ensued. Faneuil Hall was crowded the next day with men whose indignation knew no bounds. The country people rushed in to the help of the citizens, and the removal of the regiments alone appeased their wrath. This event is called the Boston Massacre.

14. On the 16th of May, 1771, some citizens of North Carolina, finding the extortions and exactions of the royal governor.



THE BOSTON MASSACRE.

Tryon, intolerable, took up arms in self-defence, and fought, on the Alamance River, what may be called the first battle of the Revolution. They lost thirty-six men, the governor's troops losing nearly sixty.

15. The determination of the colonies not to purchase British goods had a marked effect in England. Commercial depression followed, and public opinion soon demanded some concession to the Americans. The ministry accordingly repealed all the taxes except that upon tea—a paltry matter of threepence per pound—which was left to maintain the principle of England's right to tax her colonies.

16. The Americans were determined that this right should be abandoned; the great principle for which they contended must be acknowledged in its widest sense. So, though tea was offered to the people of Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore and Charleston at a price lower than that at which it could be purchased in England, still those cities would have none of it.

17. Near Annapolis, on the 19th of October, 1774, a vessel named the "Peggy Stewart," bringing seventeen packages of tea from London, was run aground and burned by her owner, to appease the general indignation against him. At Charleston the tea was stored in damp cellars, where it spoiled. Cargoes arriving at New York and Philadelphia were sent back to England;

and when the Boston authorities interfered to prevent this being done there, it was resolved, at a meeting held at Faneuil Hall, to prevent by force the landing of the tea.

18. To prevent the discharging of the cargo, therefore, a number of men disguised as Indians went on board the ship at night and emptied the tea into the water. This occurred December 16, 1773, and is known in history as the "Boston Tea-Party"—a pleasant name for a very serious affair.

19. Matters had now come to a crisis. When the news of the destruction of the tea reached England, there was great indignation, and measures of retaliation were determined upon. On the 31st of March, 1774, the Boston Port Bill, shutting up the harbor of that city, was passed as the first of them. But sympathy was everywhere manifested in America, and Virginia was the first to forward a written expression of her feeling. At her instigation, a new convention of the colonies was called to meet in September to consider the "grievances of the people."

20. The second colonial or First Continental Congress met at Philadelphia on the 5th of September, 1774. Every colony was represented except Georgia, whose governor would not permit it. The delegates, who were men of influence, but who had not at the time formed any very definite ideas of independence, passed a declaration of rights, framed addresses to the king and people of England, and recommended the suspension of all commercial relations with the mother country. They then adjourned to meet on the 10th of May, 1775.

21. Mr. Pitt, the British minister, thus wrote, at the time, of the proceedings of this Congress: "For solidity of reasoning, force of sagacity, and wisdom of conclusion, no nation or body of men can stand in preference to the General Congress of Philadelphia."

22. Everything now said or done tended to revolution. General Gage fortified Boston Neck, the only approach to the town by land, and seized the powder and stores of the people at Charlestown and other places. On the other hand, the Massachusetts assembly, which had been dissolved by Gage, met in October, 1774, as a provincial Congress, called out the militia and

ordered them to drill, or "train," as it was called, and be ready at a moment's notice. Hence they were called minute-men. They voted twenty thousand pounds for expenses, and prepared for the conflict. Thus English statesmen fanned into a flame the newly-kindled spirit of liberty.

23. Of those who, when it became manifest that a breaking away from the mother country must take place, stepped boldly to the front, and did not hesitate to speak and act fearlessly and independently, we find Samuel Adams of Massachusetts and Patrick Henry of Virginia among the foremost.



PATRICK HENRY.

24. Adams was, perhaps, the first man in the colonies to oppose the British system of taxation, and Henry's thrilling speeches in the Virginia assembly gave an impetus to popular indignation which it might not otherwise have received. His speech denouncing the Stamp Act is famous to this day, and every schoolboy is familiar with its concluding words: "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles I. his Cromwell, and George III.—may profit by their example!"

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Which of the colonies first showed its opposition, and how?
2. What others followed its example?
3. What important act was passed in 1765? Describe it.
4. What effect had this upon the colonists? What societies were formed?
5. When and where was the first colonial congress convened? Who was president of it?
6. How was the 1st of November kept?
7. What effect had these demonstrations?
8. What noted American was called before Parliament?
9. What new act was passed in 1767? How was it received in America?
10. What measures were taken to enforce it?
11. When did the first troops arrive, and how were they received?
12. How might harmony have been restored?
13. What caused the Boston Massacre? When did it occur?

14. What of a battle in North Carolina?
15. What caused commercial depression in England? Why were not all taxes repealed?
16. How was the tax upon tea avoided?
17. What was done at Annapolis and other places?
18. Describe the Boston Tea-Party.
19. How did England punish the colonists? What did Virginia advise?
20. By what other name is the second colonial Congress known? When and where did it meet? What of the delegates and their actions? When were they to meet again?
21. What did Mr. Pitt say of this Congress?
22. What preparations did General Gage make? What was done in October, 1774? Who were the minute-men?
23. What persons now boldly spoke their views?
24. Who was the first to oppose taxation? What is said of a speech against the Stamp Act?



PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

PARLIAMENT (Par'-li-ment).

FANEUIL (Fan'-nil).

MASSACRE (Mas'-sä-ker).

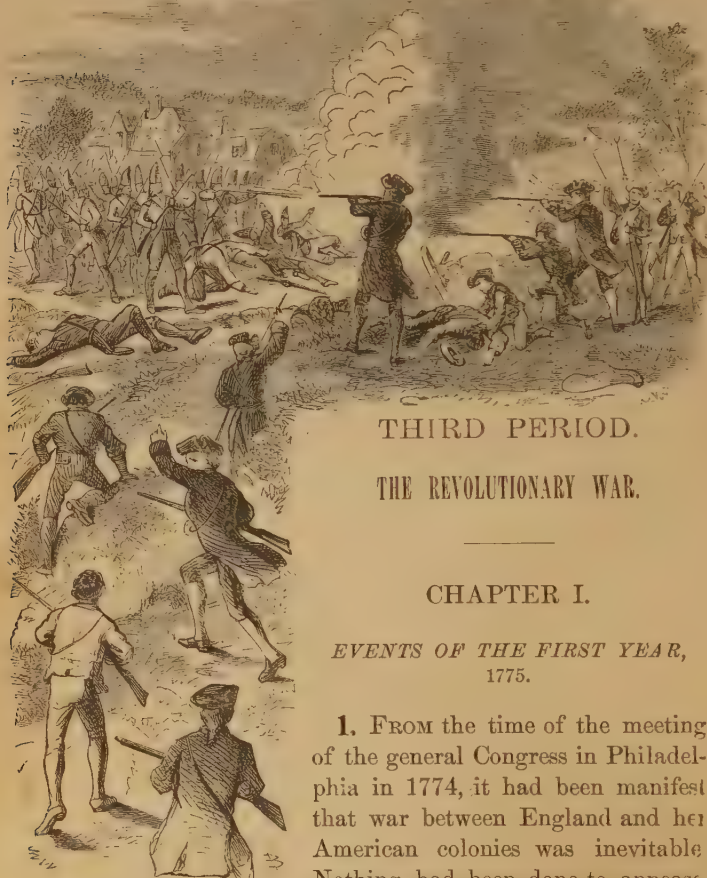
ALAMANCE (Al'-ä-mance).

CROMWELL (Crüm'-well).

CÆSAR (Së'-zar).







BATTLE OF LEXINGTON.

## THIRD PERIOD.

## THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR.

## CHAPTER I.

*EVENTS OF THE FIRST YEAR,  
1775.*

1. FROM the time of the meeting of the general Congress in Philadelphia in 1774, it had been manifest that war between England and her American colonies was inevitable. Nothing had been done to appease but much to exasperate, the provincials. Indeed, the agitation had now become so intense that the most prudent measures would have been powerless to effect a reconciliation.

2. England had oppressed her colonies. Her sole object from their first establishment seems to have been to get as much out of them as possible, and to keep them wholly dependent upon her. She did not wish them either to buy from other nations



or to sell to other nations. Nay, she did not wish them to trade even among themselves. What they needed she wished to sell them, without competition, at the highest prices. What they had to sell she wished to buy at the lowest figures, and would suffer no one to offer more.

3. Still worse, she was jealous if Massachusetts made purchases of her neighbor New York ; if Pennsylvania attempted to utilize her rich beds of iron, and to manufacture pocket-knives for herself and her sister colonies, her industry was denounced as a common nuisance, and she was told, as we have seen, by men like William Pitt, that she had no right to make even a nail.

4. These were acts of gross and wanton selfishness, sufficient in themselves to stir up rebellion ; but when vexatious taxation was added to these grievances, every manly feeling urged the colonists to resistance.

5. Had England, when she saw the first evidence of dissatisfaction, frankly admitted her error and retraced her steps, her Western colonies might have been preserved to her for a time ; but, blinded by her infatuation, she greatly hastened an event which sooner or later must have taken place.

6. By the beginning of April, 1775, the royal forces in Boston had been augmented to over three thousand men. The Americans—for so we shall hereafter designate the colonists—apprehending some aggressive movement from this increase, had been quietly collecting, in the neighboring towns, ammunition and public stores. Concord, sixteen miles from Boston, was one of these places of deposit, and General Gage determined to attack it. For this purpose he secretly despatched a body of eight hundred men under Colonel Smith on the night of the 18th of April.

7. The Americans had long been expecting such a movement, and, therefore, were not surprised. The alarm was given by preconcerted signals, and the country was on the alert ; so when, on the morning of the 19th, before sunrise, the troops reached Lexington, six miles from Concord, they found the people prepared for resistance.

8. About seventy "minute-men" were assembled on the green in front of the meeting-house, under the command of Captain John Parker. Major Pitcairn rode up to them and told them

to disperse, and, not being instantly obeyed, ordered his men to fire, at the same time discharging his own pistol. Seven of the minute-men were killed and several wounded.

9. The British then proceeded to Concord and commenced to destroy the stores, but were attacked by the minute-men and compelled to retreat hastily to Boston. They were pursued by the Americans, who, from behind trees, fences and houses, kept up such a galling fire that, had they not met at Lexington a reinforcement of nine hundred men, it is doubtful if any of them would have escaped. As it was, they lost nearly three hundred men, the Americans losing eighty-eight.

10. The news of the battle sped like fire, and aroused the people to instant action. Everywhere the patriots prepared themselves for the worst, and came pouring into Boston by thousands. Putnam left his plough standing in the field, and, mounting his swiftest horse, hurried to the city. There was no longer doubt or hesitation; war had begun, and no one dreamed of retracing his steps.

11. General Gage soon found himself shut up in the town by an army of twenty thousand Americans, who speedily threw up a line of entrenchments from Roxbury to the Mystic River, a distance of nearly twenty miles. These forces were commanded by General Ward, and besides Israel Putnam, just mentioned, had among them the veteran John Stark, and Nathaniel Greene of Rhode Island. For a month no fighting took place, but all were busy in preparation.



ISRAEL PUTNAM.

12. In May, General Gage was largely reinforced from England, so that his army amounted to ten thousand men. The noted generals Howe, Burgoyne and Clinton were also sent to his assistance. He now found himself in a condition to act with vigor. He first issued a proclamation, offering pardon to all who would lay down their arms, excepting John Hancock and Samuel Adams, whose crimes were too great to be forgiven.

13. On the night of June 16th the American commander

Ward, in order to hem in the British more completely, sent Colonel Prescott, with one thousand men, to fortify Bunker Hill, which commanded the main road out of Boston, across the peninsula of Charlestown. By mistake, or, as some say, upon consultation with his officers, Prescott went on to Breed's Hill, which lay nearer to the town, and there threw up entrenchments.

14. So quietly was this done that the morning dawned before the British were aware of his proceedings. Fire was immediately opened from Copp's Hill and from the ships of war in the harbor upon the American redoubt, but without effect.

15. Gage then determined to carry the place by storm. Accordingly, about three o'clock in the afternoon, three thousand picked soldiers, under Generals Howe and Pigot, began slowly to ascend the hill, while the ships rained balls upon the American works. The Americans reserved their fire until the enemy was within ten rods, when Prescott shouted, "Fire!" and whole ranks of the assailants fell beneath the murderous discharge.

16. The English fled in disorder, but were rallied by their officers, and again advanced to the attack. Another terrific volley, and a second time they were compelled to retreat with heavy loss. With some difficulty they were induced to make a third attack; and having received a reinforcement of one thousand men under General Clinton, and being concealed by the smoke from the burning houses of Charlestown—Gage having ordered them to be fired—they were again led up the hill. This time they were successful, the powder of the Americans having given out, and the redoubt was taken after a fierce struggle. The loss on both sides was very severe, the British having more than one thousand men killed and wounded and the Americans four hundred and fifty.

17. Among the Americans killed was the gallant young patriot General Joseph Warren, whose loss was deeply deplored. The effect of this first actual battle of the war was highly satisfactory, for trained British soldiers had been put to flight by undisciplined farmers, who felt greatly encouraged to find that their foe was not invincible.

18. While these events were taking place at Boston, a small body of volunteers under Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold surprised and captured, on the 10th of May, the fortress of Ticon-

deroga, and obtained there a large quantity of much-needed military stores. Two days after, Crown Point was taken by Colonel Warner, and thus a way was opened for the invasion of Canada.

19. Likewise, on the 10th of May, the day to which it had adjourned, the Continental Congress reassembled at Philadelphia and chose John Hancock, the outlawed patriot, for its president.



JOHN HANCOCK.

Here was framed the last petition to the king, which he refused to receive. The Congress also opened a secret correspondence with European nations, voted to raise an army of twenty thousand men, assumed authority over the colonies, which were named the United Colonies of America, adopted the volunteers before Boston as the "Continental

Army," and on the 16th of June appointed George Washington commander-in-chief of "all the forces raised or to be raised in defence of American liberty." It also appointed four major-generals and eight brigadiers.

20. Washington, in a modest speech, accepted his appointment, and in a short time set out for the headquarters of the army, at Cambridge, near Boston, where he arrived on the 2d of July, and was received with great demonstrations of joy. During the remainder of the year his attention was personally given to organizing his forces, which he found to consist of fourteen thousand undisciplined recruits.

21. To bring this mass of men to the condition of an effective army required great tact and care. All were undrilled, many unfit for service, and some who had left their farms hastily and from a patriotic impulse were tired of the hardships of the camp and longed for their homes. Besides, they were poorly armed and clad, and had but a limited supply of ammunition. During the autumn and winter months Washington successfully exerted himself to better their condition, while he managed at the same time to keep Gage shut up in Boston.

22. We have just mentioned the capture of Ticonderoga and

Crown Point by the Americans. The road to Canada was thus opened, and it was determined to attack England in this quarter. Accordingly, towards the end of summer two expeditions were sent out—one, under Generals Schuyler and Montgomery, to go by the way of Lake Champlain, and the other, under Colonel Arnold, by the way of the Kennebec River. The objective point was Quebec.

23. General Schuyler falling sick, the command of the first expedition devolved upon Montgomery, who, it will be remembered, distinguished himself with Wolfe at the siege of Louisburg. He captured St. John's, on the Sorel River, on the 3d of November, and entered Montreal ten days after without opposition. He then marched to Quebec, but with a force too much diminished to attempt anything alone.

24. Meantime, Arnold, after dreadful hardships incurred in crossing the northern wilderness of Maine, reached the St. Lawrence near Quebec, where he effected a junction with Montgomery. Under command of the latter, with a force of not quite one thousand men, the Americans laid siege to the fortress on the 3d of December. On the last day of the month, in the midst of a terrible snow-storm, Montgomery led his forces in an assault upon the city, and fell, fighting bravely.

25. Arnold, too, was wounded, and gave up the command to Captain Morgan, who pressed on the attack, but was eventually compelled to surrender. The remnant of the invading army retreated up the river, and there spent the winter. In the following spring they made their escape, in a deplorable condition, and thus ended the luckless expedition, leaving all Canada in the hands of the British.

26. While the Americans were thus meeting with mishaps in the North, they were making progress in the South. In the month of April the governor of Virginia, Lord Dunmore, seized a quantity of powder, and conveyed it on board an English vessel in the York River. Patrick Henry, at the head of a body of citizens, demanded and received pay for it. In June, Dunmore was driven away, and forced on board a British man-of-war. Out of revenge, he collected a body of regulars, royalists and slaves in the month of December, and attacked the Virginians,



and on the 1st of June, 1776, burned Norfolk, the largest place in the State, containing seven thousand inhabitants.

27. In May, 1775, North Carolina threw off the yoke of the mother country and organized a new government, and soon after the people of South Carolina and Georgia rose against the authority of their royal governors and united their destiny with that of the other colonies.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What opinion now prevailed?
2. How had England retarded the progress of the colonists?
3. What of manufactures?
- 4, 5. How might England have delayed the loss of her colonies?
6. What act of the British in 1775 made an attack seem likely?
7. Describe the events that led to the first attack.
8. Who were the opposing generals? Describe the battle of Lexington.
9. What occurred at Concord? The losses on both sides?
10. What feeling now prevailed throughout the colonies?
11. Where was General Gage stationed? What patriots were in the American army?
12. What gave General Gage renewed hope? What proclamation did he issue?
13. What orders were given to Col. Prescott by Gen. Ward? What mistake was made?
- 14, 15, 16. Describe the battle of Bunker Hill, as it is called. What was the loss on both sides?
17. What noted American fell here? What effect had this battle upon the colonists?
18. What of events in the North? What opening was thus made?
19. When and where did the Continental Congress now meet? What measures were adopted? What were the colonies now called? Who was made commander-in-chief?
20. When and where did he join the army?
21. In what condition did he find it? How did he occupy his time during the winter?
22. What expeditions were now sent to Canada?
23. When and by whom was Montreal taken?
24. Describe the expedition to Quebec.
25. What was the result of the expedition?
26. What was done by Lord Dunmore? What led to the destruction of Norfolk?
27. What States threw off the yoke in 1775?



## PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

CONCORD (Kong'-kord).  
 LEXINGTON (Lex'-ing-tŏn).  
 PITCAIRN (Pit'-kärn).  
 ROXBURY (Rox'-ber-re).  
 BURGOYNE (Bur-goin').

WARREN (Wör'-rĕn).  
 PIGOT (Pig'-ŏt).  
 SCHUYLER (Ski'-ler).  
 SOREL (So-rell').  
 DUNMORE (Dun'-mōre).

## CHAPTER II.

*EVENTS OF THE SECOND YEAR OF THE REVOLUTION, 1776.*

1. IN January, 1776, a secret expedition had been sent by the British from Boston under the command of Sir Henry Clinton. Washington, surmising that it was intended to operate against New York, sent General Charles Lee to collect volunteers in Connecticut and march to the protection of that city.

2. So rapid was Lee in his movements that he reached New York February 4th, the very day that Clinton arrived in the harbor. Thus foiled in his design, Clinton sailed southward, but, finding the patriots everywhere prepared for him, anchored off Cape Fear, and there awaited the arrival of a British fleet.

3. Washington's army in front of Boston did not, in the month of January, number more than ten thousand men, but he was urged by many considerations to try and dislodge the enemy. So on the night of the 4th of March he sent a party to fortify Dorchester Heights. By morning the force had thrown up entrenchments that completely commanded the town and harbor of Boston.

4. General Howe, who, since the Bunker Hill affair, had superseded Gage, finding what the Americans were doing, resolved to drive them away, but a severe storm delayed him; and when it abated, he found his enemy so securely fortified that it was useless to make the attempt. So no course was left him but to prepare for evacuation.

5. He was permitted to retire unmolested, on condition that he would not fire the town, and on the 17th of March he em-

barked his troops on board the fleet, and, taking with him some fifteen hundred royalists, sailed for Halifax. A detachment of Americans took immediate possession, and the next day Washington entered amid the acclamations of the people.

6. Being anxious about the safety of New York, Washington sent the bulk of his army to that place, putting them under the command of General Putnam. He soon followed with the rest of his army, and fortified Manhattan Island and Long Island at several places. His whole force at this time numbered seven teen thousand men.

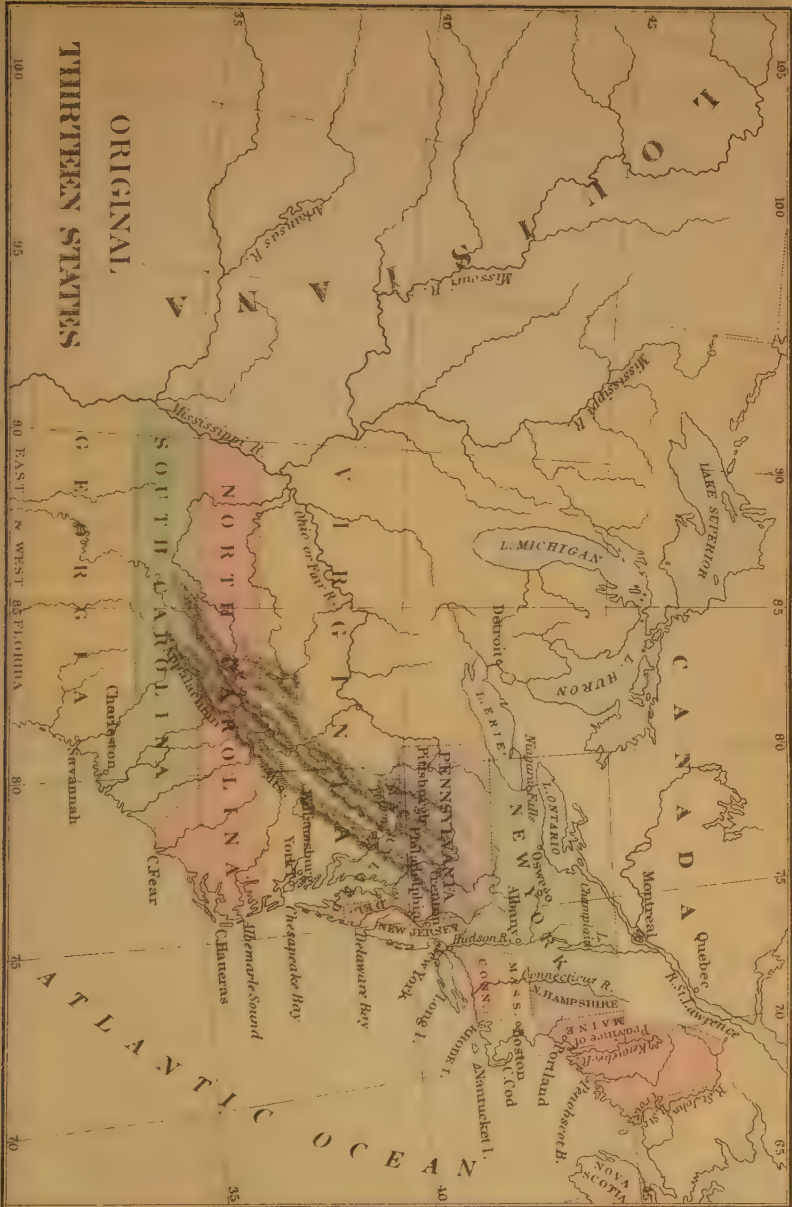
7. Meantime, Clinton, who, as we have seen, had sailed south as far as Cape Fear, waited there until a fleet, commanded by Sir Peter Parker, joined him. The united forces then proceeded to Charleston, South Carolina, reaching the harbor on the 4th of June. This was guarded by a small fort on Sullivan's Island, with a garrison numbering four hundred men, under Colonel Moultrie.

8. The British attacked this fort by sea and land on the 28th of June; but becoming entangled in the shoals, and being met by a furious fire from the defenders, they were compelled to retire, with the loss of one of their vessels. Thus baffled in their purpose, the enemy sailed for New York, and the Southern colonies gained a respite from the calamities of war for two years and a half.

9. On the same day that Fort Moultrie was attacked, Général Howe landed on Staten Island, near New York, with the Boston army, now heavily reinforced. Shortly after, Admiral Lord Howe, the general's brother, arrived with additional troops, making a total force of thirty thousand men. A large portion of these had been hired from the duke of Hesse-Cassel, in Germany, and will be designated in this narrative as Hessians.

10. We interrupt here our account of current events to state what was being done by Congress. In the beginning of the year (1776) the war may be said to have been only for redress, but now its character had changed. The reply to the petition to the king had been the despatch of an additional armed force to America and continued measures of oppression. The people, till lately loyal, now yearned for independence. A few still

## ORIGINAL.





adhered to the king, but these "Tories," as they were called, were held in general contempt.

11. Obeying the wishes of their constituents, the delegates to the Congress, then in session in Philadelphia, began to consider, early in June, those measures which culminated in separation from the mother country.

12. From Virginia came the first positive expression on the subject. In her assembly, on the 15th of May, instructions had been given to her delegates in Congress to offer resolutions in favor of separation. On the 30th of May the delegates of Massachusetts were similarly instructed. In obedience to the popular will, Richard Henry Lee of Virginia, seconded by John Adams of Massachusetts, offered a resolution, "That the United Colonies are and ought to be free and independent States, and that their political connection with Great Britain is and ought to be dissolved."

13. This resolution, after earnest debate, was passed by a majority of one colony, and in accordance with its terms a committee was appointed to draw up a "Declaration of Independence." The members of the committee were Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman and Robert R. Livingston. On the 28th of June they presented their report, drawn up by Jefferson, their chairman, and on the 4th of July it was adopted. The thirteen united colonies now became the United States of America.

14. Everywhere throughout the country this action of Congress was greeted with the liveliest demonstrations of approbation, and the now famous declaration was read in every village, town and city in the land amid the wildest expressions of delight.

15. The two Howes were authorized to treat with the insurgents, and on the 12th of July, eight days after the adoption of the "Declaration," issued a proclamation to the colonies, offering pardon to those who would submit and threatening those who should still resist. An attempt was also made to enter into communication with Washington, but he refused to receive the message, because it was addressed to him as a civilian, and not as commander of the American forces.

16. Both sides, therefore, prepared for the encounter, as neither was inclined to yield. Washington had fortified the exposed points in the neighborhood of New York, and had an entrenched camp on a range of hills on Long Island, not far from Brooklyn, which was at first under the command of General Greene, but afterwards under that of General Putnam. The entire American force near New York was twenty-five thousand, but about one-fourth were unfit for duty on account of sickness.

17. On the morning of the 27th of August two divisions of the British army crossed the Narrows from Staten Island to Long Island, and engaged the attention of the Americans, while Clinton, with the remaining third, landed at a more distant point, and by a circuitous route took them in the rear. For a time the Americans fought well, but at last, finding themselves almost surrounded, fell into confusion, and retreated to the Brooklyn entrenchments with great loss.

18. Washington was an eye-witness of this disaster, and beheld with agony the havoc made among his men. The loss was unprecedented, more than two thousand out of the five thousand engaged being either killed, wounded or captured. Had Howe followed up his advantage and attacked their entrenchments, the entire American force must have been destroyed.

19. He waited, however, till the next day, which, fortunately for the Americans, was one of drenching rain, when nothing could be done. On the 29th a dense fog prevailed, taking advantage of which Washington moved his whole force over to New York, and thus prevented Howe from cutting off his retreat.

20. This retreat was one of the most brilliant movements of the war, and was a bitter disappointment to Howe, who had expected to capture the entire force. Balked thus by Washington's strategy, Howe began secret preparations to hem in, with the help of his ships, the army defending New York. But here again he was foiled. In a council of war held September 12th the Americans decided to evacuate the lower part of the city, and on the 14th the army withdrew to Harlem Heights, at the northern extremity of Manhattan Island, and fortified Fort Washington.



**21.** At this time an incident occurred which must be mentioned, as it is connected with another that caused in its day much comment and feeling. Nathan Hale, a young Connecticut officer, was sent by Washington to learn what the British were doing. He succeeded in getting the necessary information, but on his way back was arrested, and without trial shot as a spy on the 22d day of September.

**22.** The British took possession of New York on the 15th of September, and made it the base of their operations. One of Howe's objects was to get in Washington's rear, and for this purpose, after leaving a sufficient force in front, he landed a large body of his troops on the east side, while the fleet sailed up the North River on the west side.

**23.** Washington, who at once guessed his purpose, having left three hundred men to guard the heights, retreated to White Plains, from which, when attacked on the 28th of October, he fell back to the heights of North Castle. The futile chase did not suit Howe, so he returned to Dobb's Ferry, on the Hudson.

**24.** Washington, finding himself no longer followed, left Lee at North Castle and crossed into New Jersey, uniting his forces with those of General Greene at Fort Lee, on the 13th of November. At this juncture, General Knyphausen, with five thousand Hessians, attacked Fort Washington, defended by about three thousand Americans, under Colonel Magaw, and took it by storm on the 16th of November, losing one thousand men in the assault, and taking over two thousand prisoners.

**25.** On the 20th of November, Howe, still determined upon pursuing Washington, sent Cornwallis, with a force of six thousand men, into New Jersey for that purpose. Upon his approach Fort Lee was abandoned, with all its baggage and stores, and Washington hurried across New Jersey, so closely followed that the British van was often within cannon-shot of the American rear. On the 8th of December, with three thousand ill-clad, half-starved, worn-out men, Washington crossed the Delaware into Pennsylvania, and Cornwallis went into winter quarters on the other side of the river.

**26.** While retreating, Washington sent orders to North Castle for Lee to join him at once with all his forces. Lee failed to do

so, however, and was captured at a small tavern at some distance from his men. Sullivan took his place, and soon joined the main body. Thus reinforced, the American commander resolved to strike a blow before the term of a large part of his troops should have expired.

27. He had heard that there was a body of Hessians, fifteen hundred in all, under Colonel Rahl, at Trenton, and on these he determined to make an attack. On the night of the 25th of December, with twenty-five hundred of his best soldiers, he crossed the Delaware nine miles above the town, and the next morning, during a severe storm, fell upon the unsuspecting enemy. Rahl, the commander, was killed, and his whole force, except a few who escaped to Bordentown, was captured and carried into Pennsylvania.

28. This success produced the effect that Washington desired. It revived the drooping spirits of his men, and induced many of those whose time of service had now expired to remain for six weeks longer.

29. Indeed, at this time the whole country needed encouragement. Hope of final victory was at so low an ebb that many leading men in the country were making their peace with the enemy. Some signal success, therefore, was needed to reassure the wavering, and to nerve to bolder efforts those who were constant.

30. Congress had lately removed for safety to Baltimore, and among other measures endeavored to obtain assistance from Europe. To this end, Benjamin Franklin, Silas Deane and Arthur Lee were despatched on the 30th of December as commissioners to the court of France, and Washington was invested with almost dictatorial powers.

31. On the same day that the commissioners sailed, Washington, whose faith in his country's cause never for a moment failed, and who betrayed no symptoms of fear or hesitation, recrossed the Delaware and took up his station at Trenton. The British, alarmed at this daring act, concentrated their forces at Princeton, and Howe ordered Cornwallis, who was just about returning to England, to resume his command in Jersey. Thus matters stood at the close of the year 1776.

## QUESTIONS.

1. What of Clinton's expedition against New York?
2. How was he foiled by Washington?
3. How did Washington surprise the British at Boston?
4. Who succeeded Gage as British general-in-chief? Describe the capture of Boston by the Americans.
5. What of the departure of the British?
6. Where did Washington go after this?
7. What of Clinton and Sir Peter Parker?
8. Describe the attack on Fort Moultrie.
9. What assistance did Howe receive at this time?
10. How was the character of the war changed? What reply did the colonists receive to their last petition? Who were the Tories?
11. What question was now being debated in Congress?
12. What resolution was offered?
13. Name the committee that drew up the Declaration. Why is the 4th of July celebrated? By what name were the colonies now known?
14. How was the news received throughout the country?
15. What was now done by the Howes? Why would not Washington receive a letter?
16. What of fortifications and entrenchments? How large was the American army at this time?
17. What of the first battle fought after this?
18. What was the American loss? How might their whole army have been destroyed?
19. What of Washington's retreat?
20. How was Howe balked? How was he a second time foiled?
21. Relate the circumstance of Hale's death.
22. What was Howe's object at this time?
23. How did Washington evade him?
24. Describe the defeat of the Hessians under Gen. Knyphausen.
25. Describe Washington's retreat into Pennsylvania.
26. How did he seek to raise the courage of his men?
27. Was he successful?
28. What was the effect of this success?
29. Why was encouragement necessary?
30. What foreign assistance was now sought? Who were sent upon this mission?
31. What was the state of affairs at the close of 1776?

## PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

DORCHESTER (Dor'-ches-ter).  
 MOULTRIE (Môl'-tree).  
 HESSE-CASSEL (Hes'-se-Cas'-sel).  
 HESSIANS (Hesh'-yans).  
 JEFFERSON (Jef'-fer-son).

STATEN (Stât'-en).  
 KNYPHAUSEN (Nip-bôw'-zen).  
 MAGAW (Mă-gaw').  
 CORNWALLIS (Korn-wôl'-lis).  
 BORDENTOWN (Bor'-den-town).

## CHAPTER III.

*EVENTS OF THE THIRD YEAR OF THE REVOLUTION, 1777.*

1. WASHINGTON'S army at Trenton, after Generals Mifflin and Cadwallader joined him on the 1st of January, did not exceed five thousand men. Towards evening on the 2d, Cornwallis, with a large body of troops, came upon him, and made several attempts to cross the stream which runs through the town, but was each time repulsed with loss. He therefore concluded to give his men a night's repose, confidently anticipating the capture of Washington and his entire army on the morrow.

2. The condition of the little army of freedom was, indeed, most critical. In front were seven thousand disciplined foes, and behind ran the Delaware, rendered impassable by floating ice. The inspiration of genius saved it in this hour of gloom. Leaving his camp-fires burning, Washington marched rapidly, by a circuitous route, to Princeton.

3. On the morning of the 3d his army, under General Mercer, attacked a party of the British force which was just about starting to join Cornwallis, and after a sharp conflict, in which the commander-in-chief himself was the hero, routed it, killing one hundred and capturing four hundred, while the loss of the Americans did not exceed thirty, among whom, however, was the gallant Mercer.

4. Cornwallis heard the firing, but came up too late to take part in the battle, and Washington fell back to the heights of Morristown, destroying the bridges behind him. The British general did not follow, being too anxious about the safety of his stores at New Brunswick. The Americans consequently, win-

tered there, and so harassed the British that by the beginning of spring they had abandoned every post in New Jersey except New Brunswick and Perth Amboy.

5. These exploits gained for Washington the highest encomiums. At home he was called the saviour of his country, and even abroad Frederick the Great of Prussia is said to have declared that his achievements at the time, with his little band, were the most brilliant on the records of history.

6. Towards the end of April the British general Tryon, late governor of New York, made an expedition to Danbury, Connecticut, and, after destroying the stores there, set fire to the town. He then retreated to his shipping on the sound, but was greatly harassed by the American militia under Generals Wooster and Sullivan, Benedict Arnold acting as a volunteer. In this affair the British lost three hundred men, and the Americans their brave leader, Wooster.

7. This piece of vandalism—the burning of Danbury—had its merited reward within a month, for, on the 23d of May, Colonel Meigs, with one hundred and thirty men, crossed Long Island Sound in boats and destroyed the British stores and shipping at Sag Harbor, and took ninety prisoners, returning to Connecticut without the loss of a man. Also, in July, Colonel Barton, with a party of resolute men, crossed Narragansett Bay and surprised General Prescott, the commander of the British forces in Rhode Island, in bed, and carried him off as an equivalent for General Lee, whose capture has been already mentioned.

8. In the spring of this year the marquis de Lafayette, a French nobleman not quite twenty years old, came over to help the Americans in their struggle for freedom. He asked to be allowed to serve as a volunteer and at his own cost, but Congress made him a major-general.

With him came Baron de Kalb, a trained German soldier.

9. Not long after, Kosciusko and Pulaski, two young Polish



LAFAYETTE.



officers, both of whom afterwards distinguished themselves, joined the patriot army, and were assigned posts of honor by Congress. At a later day, Baron Steuben, a Prussian, who had served under Frederick the Great, did good service to the American cause.

10. During the summer General Howe manœuvred in every possible way to draw Washington into a general engagement, but without success. Wearied at length with his efforts, Howe embarked his forces, eighteen thousand in number, on his brother's fleet, and sailed southward. He left, however, a large detachment at New York, under Clinton, to retain possession of that city.

11. Washington watched the British general's movements with deep anxiety, and discovered that his intention was to capture Philadelphia. Proceeding by forced marches, he reached the Brandywine before Howe, who, fearing to sail directly up the Delaware, had entered Chesapeake Bay and landed his forces at the Elk River, in Maryland, sixty miles from Philadelphia.

12. Washington took up his position at Chadd's Ford, and there prepared to resist the British advancing from the Elk. On the 11th of September, General Knyphausen with his Hessians made a feint at the ford, while Cornwallis crossed the river higher up and took the Americans in the rear, compelling them to retreat with a loss of twelve hundred men. To add to this disaster, General Wayne, while watching for the enemy, was himself surprised at Paoli Tavern, and lost three hundred men.

13. The enemy pressing him hard, Washington was compelled to abandon Philadelphia to its fate and retire to Pottsgrove, on the Schuylkill River. Congress, too, had left the city, and assembled, first at Lancaster, and then at York, Pennsylvania. Howe took possession of Philadelphia on the 26th of September, and stationed his troops at Germantown, a village ten miles distant. On October 4th, having received reinforcements, the Americans made an attempt to dislodge Howe, and had almost succeeded, Washington having surprised the enemy, but in a dense fog that came up his troops fell into confusion, and he was himself driven back, with the loss of one thousand men.



14. But though Howe held Philadelphia, his position was by no means comfortable, for the Americans occupied Fort Mifflin, on Mud Island, and Fort Mercer, at Red Bank, and thus controlled the Delaware and prevented British vessels from furnishing Howe with supplies. It therefore became necessary to reduce these strongholds.

15. With this in view, Count Donop attacked Colonel Green at Red Bank on the 22d of October with a body of Hessians, while Howe's fleet opened fire on Fort Mifflin. Both attacks were repulsed with some loss, Donop himself being killed.

16. The British now erected batteries on a small island in the river, and after a bombardment of five days captured Fort Mifflin. The evacuation of Red Bank followed two days after, and the Delaware was opened to Philadelphia. Washington went into winter quarters at Valley Forge, twenty miles from the city, and Howe entrenched himself between the Delaware and the Schuylkill.

17. While matters were in this condition in Washington's command, great activity was displayed on both sides in the North. To gain control of the Hudson River and cut off New England from the other States, Burgoyne, with a well-equipped army of eight thousand men from Canada, attacked Ticonderoga by way of Lake Champlain on the 2d of July, and after three days compelled the garrison to evacuate the fort.

18. General Schuyler, commanding the army of the North, was at this time at Fort Edward, with about five thousand ill-appointed troops. When the remnant of the forces from Ticonderoga joined him, not finding himself in a condition to do more, he so obstructed the road between himself and Burgoyne, a distance of twenty-four miles, by felling trees and destroying bridges, that it took the enemy two weeks to reach the Hudson. When he did get there, he found Fort Edward evacuated and Schuyler on the retreat to Stillwater.

19. During the march to Fort Edward a dreadful murder took place. Miss Jane McCrea, who was betrothed to an officer in Burgoyne's army, was staying with a friend near the fort. A marauding party of Indians sacked the house where she was, carried her off, and in a quarrel among themselves killed and

scalped her. Her death caused great excitement among the inhabitants, and caused many of them to join the American army.



MURDER OF MISS M'CREA.

20. Burgoyne, finding himself short of provisions, despatched Colonel Baum with a strong force to Bennington, in Vermont, to seize the stores there; but on the 16th of August he was met near that place by Colonel Stark and a body of New Hampshire militia and totally defeated, Colonel Baum himself being mortally wounded.

21. At this moment a fresh body of British troops came up, under Colonel

Breyman; and the Americans being likewise reinforced by Colonel Warner, a second battle was fought, which resulted, like the first, in the defeat of the British, who lost, in killed, wounded and captured, eight hundred men. About the same time the British colonel St. Leger was defeated in an attempt to capture Fort Schuyler, and with his command was compelled to make his way back to Canada.

22. Burgoyne was greatly disheartened by these disasters, but he was in no condition to retreat, for the patriots were in force in his rear. He resolved, therefore, to try and reach Albany. With this purpose he crossed the Hudson, but on the 19th of September he was met by the Americans at Bemis' Heights, near Saratoga, and there an obstinate though indecisive battle was fought.

23. Night put an end to the doubtful contest. But though the British held possession of the field, Burgoyne felt no disposition to renew the battle on the morrow. Indeed, for two weeks nothing further was attempted; and in the interval the local militia had assembled and completely cut off all supplies and communication with Lake Champlain, so that on the 7th

of October the British general was forced to hazard another battle, in which he was badly worsted and compelled to withdraw to some heights in the rear.

24. Two days after, he fell back to Saratoga, and after vainly waiting assistance from Clinton, who was advancing from New York, his men being now completely worn out and destitute of provisions, he was forced to surrender with his whole army on the 17th of October. Nearly six thousand prisoners, five thousand muskets, many cannon and a great quantity of ammunition fell into the hands of the victors.

25. The honor of this victory has been assigned to General Gates, who had been placed in command of the army of the North shortly after the surrender of Ticonderoga, Congress being displeased with Schuyler for the loss of that fort. But it is almost certain that the credit belongs to the latter general, and that it was only by carrying out Schuyler's plans, generously made known to his successor, that Gates obtained the credit of the victory.

26. On hearing of Burgoyne's surrender, Clinton, who was on his way to join him and had already captured Forts Clinton and Montgomery, collected his force, dismantled the forts and carried all cannon and stores to New York, whither he returned, as much chagrined as the Americans were elated with the events of 1777.

27. It only remains to add that the success of the army of the North and the reverses of Washington during this year led to what is known as the "Conway Cabal," whose object was to remove the commander-in-chief from his exalted position. Fortunately for the country, the scheme failed, and its instigators met with deserved contempt. We must say, too, that Congress, on the 17th of November, adopted articles of confederation. These, however, were not ratified by all the States until 1781, and so did not go into effect before that year.

28. In 1777, the American flag, almost identical with the one now so familiar, was adopted by Congress. It first floated from the mast-head of the vessel of Captain Wickes, who had made a privateering cruise and captured many British merchantmen.

## QUESTIONS.

1. What did Washington's force now number? What efforts of Cornwallis did he defeat?
2. What was the condition of Washington's army?
3. Describe the victory at Princeton.
4. Where did he go after the battle? Why did not Cornwallis follow him? Why did he abandon New Jersey?
5. How were Washington's exploits regarded?
6. Describe the destruction of Danbury.
7. How did the Americans avenge themselves?
- 8, 9. What foreign assistance did they receive?
10. What plan of Howe's was defeated by Washington? What were Gen. Howe's forces at this time?
11. What was his intention? Did Washington discover it?
12. What two disasters happened to the Americans?
13. Where did Washington retreat after the capture of Philadelphia? Where did Congress hold its sessions? Describe the attempt made to dislodge the British.
14. Why was Howe's position uncomfortable?
- 15, 16. Describe the capture of the two forts. Where did Washington winter?
17. When and how did the British capture Ticonderoga?
18. How did Gen. Schuyler impede Burgoyne's progress?
19. Describe the murder of Miss McCrea.
- 20, 21. Describe the two battles at Bennington. What other defeat did the British suffer?
22. In what condition was Burgoyne's army? Where did he encounter the Americans, and what was the result?
23. What occurred on the 7th of October?
24. What great victory followed this event?
25. To whom should the honor of this victory be given? Why?
26. What was done by Clinton in the mean time?
27. What attempt was made to deprive Washington of his command? What of articles of confederation?
28. What is said of the American flag?

## PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

MIFFLIN (Mif'-lin).  
 CADWALLADER (Cad-wöl'ä-der).  
 PRUSSIA (Prüş'-yă).  
 DANBURY (Dan'-bër-re).  
 WOOSTER (Wöös'-ter).  
 MEIGS (Megs).  
 LAFAYETTE (Lä-fä-ett').  
 DE KALB (De Kälb).  
 KOSCIUSKO (Kös-se-us'-ko).

PULASKI (Pew-läs'-ke).  
 STEUBEN (Stoy'-ben).  
 PAOLI (Pä-o'-le).  
 SCHUYLKILL (Skool'-kil)  
 DONOP (Dön'-op).  
 MCCREA (Mac-ray').  
 BAUM (Bowm).  
 SARATOGA (Sär-ä-to'-gă).  
 ST. LEGER (Led'-jer).

## CHAPTER IV.

## EVENTS OF THE FOURTH YEAR OF THE REVOLUTION, 1778.



WASHINGTON'S ARMY AT VALLEY FORGE.

1. THE winter of 1777-78 at Valley Forge was a severe test of the endurance, both moral and physical, of the patriot soldiers. Half clad, half fed, half frozen, discouraged and almost despairing, Washington and his heroic men passed dismal months amid those snow-clad hills, whose white paths were often reddened by their bleeding feet



Congress was unable to better their condition, being entirely destitute of money.

2. The utmost it could do was to authorize the taking of whatever was necessary by the army, wherever it could be found, upon the government's promise to pay. This means of supply, so well calculated to make enemies of the surrounding population, could only be justified by the dire necessities of the times, for it was undoubtedly the gloomiest period of the war.

3. Washington's position at this juncture was peculiarly trying. Not only had he all a commander's natural anxiety about the condition of his men, but he had also to plan for the entire conduct of the war, and to devise means to baffle the Conway plotters, already alluded to.

4. With the spring of 1778, however, came a brighter state of affairs. Washington had the gratification to find that the malignity of a few enemies had but endeared him the more to the country. The successes in the North had encouraged France to furnish material aid, while the British Parliament was filled with astonishment and alarm, and felt that it was necessary to offer terms to the Americans. Congress and the people had become inspired with a confidence in their cause such as had never before existed. This had its effect upon the army, and a new spirit was infused into its ranks.

5. In the month of January two bills were passed in the British Parliament, one renouncing all intention to tax the colonies, and the other appointing five commissioners to treat with Congress for the restoration of English rule. In France, also, in the month of February, two treaties were entered into with the Americans, one of friendship and commerce, and the other of mutual defence. By the last it was agreed that no peace was to be made that should not include the acknowledgment by England of the independence of the States.

6. Fortunately for the American republic, the French frigate conveying copies of the treaties arrived two months before the English commissioners. When, therefore, the latter reached America in June, they found that Congress had ratified the alliance with France, and that no intercourse could be had with that body until the independence of the United States was



acknowledged and all the English fleets and armies were withdrawn.

7. On the 11th of May, Sir Henry Clinton took the place of General Howe as commander-in-chief of the British forces, and upon his arrival in Philadelphia, at once began to prepare for the removal of his troops and fleet, in obedience to orders from England. This was done because a large French armament was to be looked for at any moment. On the 18th of June, Clinton left Philadelphia with twelve thousand men, crossed the Delaware, and began his march through New Jersey to New York, where Admiral Howe, who had sailed out of the Delaware some days before, was to meet him.

8. No sooner had Clinton abandoned the city than Washington crossed the river in pursuit, General Charles Lee (who had been exchanged for Prescott) being second in command. Clinton was encumbered with baggage, and the heat of the weather so retarded his movements that Washington overtook him near Monmouth Court-house and offered battle on the 27th of June.

9. The next day an engagement took place, without any positive advantage to either side. A blunder made by Lee would probably have been fatal to the Americans had not Washington come up in time to save the battle. On this occasion hot words passed between the generals, and Lee afterwards wrote to his superior two haughty and offensive letters. For this as well as for unofficer-like conduct in the battle he was arrested and tried. He was suspended for a year, and never rejoined the army.

10. Washington had intended to renew the battle the next day, but Clinton stole away in the night, and the Americans were so worn out with marching, fighting and the intense heat that pursuit was impossible, and on the 1st of July Washington encamped at New Brunswick. Clinton made his way to Sandy Hook, after having lost, in killed, wounded and deserted, over two thousand men. Lord Howe's fleet was awaiting him at the Hook, and thus his force was conveyed to New York.

11. A French fleet under Count d'Estaing arrived in the Delaware too late to encounter Howe, who was now safely ensconced in Raritan Bay, whither the heavy French vessels could

not follow him. It was therefore arranged that General Sullivan should make an attack with his forces upon General Pigot, the British commander in Rhode Island, and that D'Estaing should support the movement with his fleet. The fleet arrived in Narragansett Bay on the 29th of July, but, as the land forces had not come up, did not enter the harbor until the 8th of August.

12. This delay ruined the expedition, as it gave Admiral Howe an opportunity to come to the assistance of Pigot, which he did upon the 9th. While the two fleets were preparing to encounter each other, a violent storm arose and shattered both, so that Howe had to put back to New York, while D'Estaing sailed for Boston to refit.

13. Sullivan, who had, meantime, come up to the British lines with ten thousand men, called upon D'Estaing to support him, but he declined, and the American general was compelled to retire northward, pursued by the British. A severe engagement was fought on the 29th of August at Quaker Hill, in which the Americans had the advantage; but, learning that the British were being reinforced by Clinton, Sullivan, on the night of the 30th, transported his forces to the mainland just in time to escape capture, for Clinton arrived the next day with four thousand troops.

14. Being thus too late to attack Sullivan, the British commander sent his force to ravage the coast of Massachusetts. Sir Charles Grey, an energetic but ruthless officer, commanded this expedition, and committed many wanton outrages on the inhabitants of New Bedford, Fairhaven and Martha's Vineyard.

15. Grey's cruelty recalls a still more shocking barbarity which took place at an earlier date in this year. On the 3d of July the infamous Colonel John Butler, at the head of more than one thousand Tories and Indians, made a descent into the secluded valley of Wyoming, in Pennsylvania, on the Susquehanna, and desolated the settlements with fire and sword, sparing neither age nor sex. In November, Cherry Valley, in New York, suffered a similar visitation.

16. During the summer, Kaskaskia, Vincennes and other settlements north of the Ohio fell into the hands of the Americans,

being captured by a party of Virginians. At the very close of the year General Clinton sent a large force, usually set down at thirty-five hundred men, under Colonel Campbell, to invade Georgia, the weakest of the Southern States. He landed near Savannah, and found to oppose him only a small body of twelve hundred men fortified in the town, commanded by General Robert Howe. After a severe encounter, Howe was defeated, and Savannah fell into the hands of the English on the 29th of December.

17. The end of the year 1778 found the contending parties in this position: the British held only New York and Newport in the North, and had gained a foothold in the South, but had lost Philadelphia, the whole of New Jersey and the settlements north of the Ohio. The Americans had put Clinton on the defensive, and, with the alliance of France, presented a formidable front. Moreover, they had become inured to war, and were now in a much better fighting condition than ever before.

18. But, though thus hopefully situated as to actual war, the country was laboring under great financial difficulty. Congress had little money, and had issued paper to such an extent that it had become almost worthless. At this critical juncture the patriotism of Robert Morris of Philadelphia shone forth conspicuously. He raised large sums of money on his own credit, and loaned them to the government, thus helping the country through a period of pressing need.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What is said of the winter at Valley Forge?
2. How were supplies obtained?
3. What is said of Washington's position at this time?
4. What took place early in 1778? What effect had American successes upon France? Upon England? What at home?
5. What two bills were passed in Parliament? What two treaties were made with France?
6. What did the English commissioners find on their arrival?
7. Who superseded General Howe? What were his first measures?
8. What did Washington now do?
9. What of the battle of Monmouth Court-house? What of Lee's conduct? His trial?
10. What prevented a renewal of the battle? What was Clinton's loss in this retreat?

11. What is said of Count d'Estaing's arrival? What expedition was undertaken by Sullivan and D'Estaing?

12. Why did it fail? What became of the two fleets?

13. What of the battle of Quaker Hill?

14. What of Sir Charles Grey's expedition?

15. What of the massacre at Wyoming? At Cherry Valley?

16. What places in the West were captured by the Americans? What expedition was sent to Georgia by Clinton? What of the siege of Savannah?

17. What was the position of the opposing armies at the close of the year?

18. What of financial difficulties? How did Robert Morris show his patriotism?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

D'ESTAING (Des-tang').

RARITAN (Răr'-ë-tan).

WYOMING (Wi-o'-ming.)

KASKASKIA (Kas-kas'-kĭ-ă).

VINCENNES (Vin-sĕnz').

CAMPBELL (Kă'm'-il).

---

### CHAPTER V.

#### *EVENTS OF THE FIFTH YEAR OF THE REVOLUTION, 1779*

1. THE year 1779 was not marked by any very decisive events. In the beginning of January, General Prevost reached Savannah with royal troops from Florida, and soon after assuming command sent Campbell to occupy Augusta. Tories were very numerous in the South, and about seven hundred of them marching to join the British were attacked by Colonel Pickens of South Carolina. A large number of them were taken prisoners, five of whom were hanged as traitors.

2. General Lincoln, the American commander in the South, made several unsuccessful efforts to recover the State, and in an encounter at Brier's Creek was badly beaten. This encouraged Prevost to attempt the capture of Charleston, but in this he was defeated, the weather, which was very hot, proving his most formidable foe. He thereupon retreated to Georgia.

3. In September, D'Estaing arrived off the Savannah River, and he and Lincoln attacked the town, but were unsuccessful,

owing to the Frenchman's impatience of the operations of a regular siege. To satisfy him, Lincoln ordered an assault on the 9th of October, and was repulsed, with a loss of one thousand lives, Count Pulaski being among the slain. D'Estaing refused to give further help, and sailed away, thus a second time leaving the Americans at a critical moment. Lincoln was compelled to retire, and nothing further was done in Georgia during the year.

4. In the North, Clinton did nothing but hold New York and send out predatory expeditions. In May he despatched General Mathews with twenty-five hundred men to the Chesapeake, to do all the damage he could. Mathews sailed up the Elizabeth and James Rivers, and destroyed property to the value of two millions of dollars.

5. Tryon made two more forays into Connecticut, destroying in the first some salt-works at Horse Neck and dispersing a body of troops under Putnam. The latter barely escaped capture by riding down a precipitous path where no one dared to follow him—an exploit which has made his name for ever famous. In the second, Tryon plundered New Haven and burned several towns.

6. Clinton himself captured Stony Point and Paulus Hook, both on the west bank of the Hudson. Washington was anxious to retake these places, as they were necessary for the safe transportation of his stores. He therefore planned with General Wayne a midnight attack on Stony Point, which was successfully made by the latter on the night of the 15th of July.

7. This was one of the most brilliant achievements of the war. By Washington's order the place was dismantled; and when the British took possession of it shortly after, they found it a ruined fortress. Four days after Wayne's exploit, Major Henry Lee captured the English post at Paulus Hook, now Jersey City.

8. These successes were followed by a reverse of a serious nature in August. A fleet of nineteen armed vessels and fifteen hundred men, under General Lowell, sailed from Boston to capture a British post at Castine, on the Penobscot, in Maine. Just as the Americans were about to attack the fort, five heavy English



men-of-war arrived, and either captured or destroyed the whole flotilla. Most of the men, however, escaped, after great suffering in the woods.

9. General Sullivan was sent in August, with five thousand men, to Western New York to chastise the Indians there, who were constantly harassing the settlements, and had been implicated in the Wyoming and Cherry Valley massacres, already mentioned. He penetrated as far as the Genesee, defeating the savages with great havoc and desolating their country.

10. In this year American and French cruisers inflicted severe loss upon English commerce. On September 23d one of the most fiercely-contested naval battles on record was fought within sight of the English coast by the intrepid John Paul Jones. With three ships Jones fell in, late in the evening, with two British frigates convoying a fleet of merchantmen.

11. A terrible battle ensued, in which both the frigates were captured. The encounter between Jones's own vessel, the *Bon Homme Richard*, of forty-two guns, and the *Serapis*, of forty-four guns, was particularly severe. The ships during the engagement happening to come in contact, Jones lashed them together, and a deadly struggle followed, lasting for more than two hours of the night, both vessels being several times on fire. At last the *Serapis* surrendered, and the victorious Jones transferred his men to her shortly before his own ship went down.

12. The Americans were greatly disappointed this year in the results of the French alliance. D'Estaing, as we have seen, accomplished nothing. The state of financial affairs was also peculiarly distressing. Congress had up to this time issued bills of credit, known as Continental money, to the amount of two hundred millions of dollars; and so little confidence was there in their final redemption that they had at the end of 1779 depreciated to sixty for one. With such a currency it was hardly possible to carry on war.

13. One circumstance somewhat revived the drooping spirits of the Americans at this critical moment. Spain, anxious to recover from England possessions which had been wrested from her, especially Gibraltar, joined France in hostility against her, and thus a new antagonist was added to those already in arms.



14. Clinton, fearing a combined attack, now concentrated his forces around New York, and abandoned Newport and the posts on the Hudson. Thinking he saw an opportunity in the South, however, owing to the failure of Lincoln at Savannah and the departure of D'Estaing to the West Indies, he left Baron Knyphausen, the Hessian commander, in charge of New York, and with seven thousand men and the fleet of Admiral Arbuthnot sailed for Charleston on the 25th of December.

### QUESTIONS.

1. What is said of the events of 1779? What of General Prevost and Colonel Pickens?
2. Who commanded the army in the South? What success had he?
3. Describe D'Estaing's attack upon Savannah.
4. What was done by Clinton in the North?
5. What of Tryon's forays? In what danger was Putnam, and how did he escape?
6. What posts was Washington anxious to recapture?
7. What is said of this attack? What place was captured by Major Henry Lee?
8. What reverses did the Americans meet with in Maine?
9. Describe General Sullivan's attack upon the Indians in New York.
10. What naval commander distinguished himself at this time?
11. Describe the contest.
12. Did the Americans derive much benefit from the French alliance this year? What is said of financial affairs?
13. What occurred at this time to raise the drooping spirits of the Americans?
14. Where did Clinton now concentrate his forces? What of an expedition to the South?

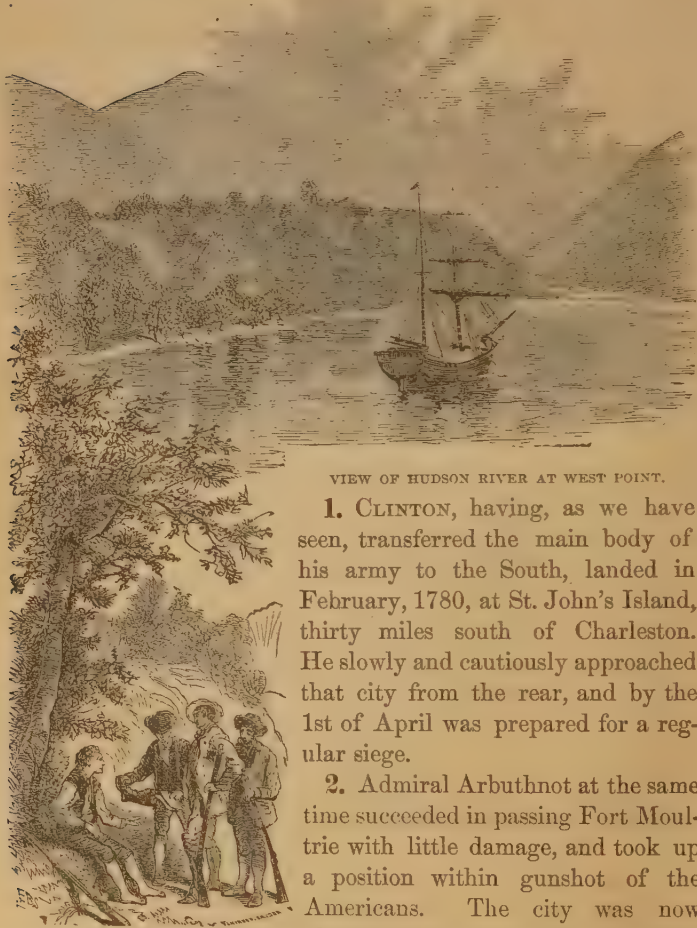
### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

PREVOST (Prév'-ost).  
 WAYNE (Wāne).  
 LOWELL (Lō'-el).  
 CASTINE (Cās-teen').  
 GENESEE (Gen-es-see').

BON HOMME RICHARD (Bonl-ll  
 Re-shar').  
 SERAPIS (Ser-a'-pis).  
 GIBRALTAR (Jib-rawl-tar).  
 ARBUTHNOT (Ar-buth-not').

## CHAPTER VI.

## EVENTS OF THE SIXTH YEAR OF THE REVOLUTION, 1780.



CAPTURE OF ANDRE.

VIEW OF HUDSON RIVER AT WEST POINT.

1. CLINTON, having, as we have seen, transferred the main body of his army to the South, landed in February, 1780, at St. John's Island, thirty miles south of Charleston. He slowly and cautiously approached that city from the rear, and by the 1st of April was prepared for a regular siege.

2. Admiral Arbuthnot at the same time succeeded in passing Fort Moultrie with little damage, and took up a position within gunshot of the Americans. The city was now almost hemmed in, communication with the interior being kept open only by bodies of militia posted here and there northward.

3. Two mounted regiments of Americans, numbering fourteen hundred men, were posted at Monk's Corner, thirty miles north of the city, under General Huger. On the 14th of April Colonel Tarleton, with a body of British cavalry, fell suddenly upon them and totally routed them. Charleston was now at the mercy of Clinton, and after a gallant defence surrendered, with its whole garrison, on the 12th of May. Six thousand prisoners fell into the hands of the enemy.

4. On the fall of Charleston, measures were immediately taken to restore South Carolina to British rule, and Clinton sent two expeditions into the interior to complete the conquest. One of these, under Tarleton, fell in with an American regiment at Waxhaw Creek in the latter part of May, and literally cut it to pieces. The other met with no resistance. So completely was South Carolina reduced by the early part of June that Clinton returned to New York, leaving Cornwallis in command.

5. Although Tories abounded in the Carolinas and had in large numbers joined the British, still there were active bands of American patriots who, under the lead of Marion, Sumter and Pickens, greatly annoyed the enemy. To encourage and assist these brave men, Washington had sent De Kalb with two regiments, but they did not advance farther south than Deep River, in North Carolina, until Gates was appointed by Congress to succeed Lincoln, when De Kalb joined that general.

6. General Gates, the vanquisher of Burgoyne, soon rallied an army about him, so that by the time he reached Sander's Creek, near Camden, in South Carolina, where the British were concentrated, his force was nearly three times as large as that of Cornwallis, but was composed mostly of militia. The two generals tried to surprise each other on the night of the 15th of August, and their vanguards unexpectedly met at Sander's Creek, where a skirmish took place.

7. The next morning a general engagement followed, with disastrous results to the Americans. The Continentals, under De Kalb, bravely stood their ground, although attacked in front and flank, but being deserted by the militia, who threw down their arms at the first onset, were at length compelled to yield, their gallant leader being mortally wounded.

8. After the fall of De Kalb the battle became a rout, the British pursuing their fleeing foe for more than thirty miles. The American army was completely dispersed; nine hundred men were killed, as many taken prisoners, and the rest irretrievably scattered. Gates himself did not halt till he was eighty miles from the battle-field, and by this disastrous overthrow lost all the reputation he had acquired at Saratoga.

9. This battle, though fought, as stated, at Sander's Creek, is historically known as the first battle of Camden. Two days after, Sumter's troop was almost annihilated by Tarleton's cavalry at Fishing Creek.

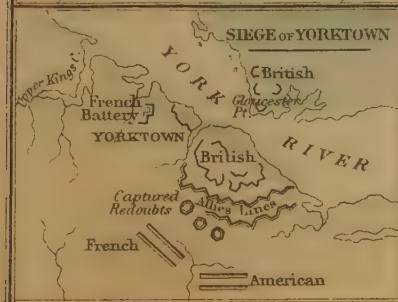
10. Cornwallis was now master of South Carolina. He treated the patriots with such severity that he exasperated the people and aroused a deep spirit of resistance, thus enabling Sumter and Marion to keep their bands together, greatly to his annoyance. He had himself advanced into North Carolina in September, expecting to overrun that State; but hearing of the defeat of Colonel Ferguson, whom he had despatched into the interior to rally the Tories, became alarmed, and returned into South Carolina, where he remained until the close of the year.

11. Ferguson's defeat took place at King's Mountain. On the 7th of October, Colonel Campbell, with nine hundred backwoods riflemen, attacked him there, killed the leader and one hundred and fifty of his men and captured a great many others, a number of whom were hanged, in revenge for similar outrages on Americans.

12. Gates made some efforts to retrieve his good name, but did not succeed, and Congress removed him from his command, and substituted, on the recommendation of Washington, General Nathaniel Greene, who assumed command early in the month of December.

13. No important undertaking was attempted on either side this year in the North. The absence of Clinton and the condition of Washington's troops were the causes of this inactivity. Of Clinton we have already spoken, and we must now say a few words in reference to Washington and the circumstances in which he was placed.

14. His men lay encamped during the winter of 1779-80



THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR.





among the hills of Morristown, New Jersey. The cold was intense; no previous year within recollection could be compared to it, and even now it is commonly spoken of as the "hard winter." New York Bay was frozen over solid enough to bear the most heavily-laden wagons. During this time—miserably sheltered by huts and destitute of clothing, without food and without money, or, if they had money, needing six hundred dollars of it to buy a pair of boots—the condition of the soldiers was deplorable indeed.

15. Under these circumstances, Washington was compelled to resort to the same severe measures as he had found necessary at Valley Forge. But even these were not sufficient to keep his men from starvation; for when spring came, there was absolute famine in his camp, and it required all his personal influence to prevent open mutiny and a complete dissolution of the army.

16. In addition to these disasters, Knyphausen, at New York, hearing of the state of affairs, landed at Elizabethtown with five thousand men, in June, and, though spiritedly resisted by the Americans under General Christopher Greene, committed sad havoc upon the surrounding country. One piece of good news, however, somewhat relieved at this time the despondency of the Americans.

17. Lafayette, their firm friend, had spent the winter in France and had prevailed upon Louis XVI. to send another fleet and army to aid the patriots, and himself hurried over to bring the tidings. He reached America in April, and in the following July, Admiral De Tiernay arrived at Newport with his fleet, carrying an army of seven thousand men under the command of Rochambeau.

18. Shortly after the arrival of this assistance, a British fleet also came to reinforce Clinton. De Tiernay was thus shut up in Narragansett Bay, and the operations upon the success of which Washington and the nation so hopefully relied were for a time delayed. But at the very moment that the American commander-in-chief was engaged with De Tiernay and Rochambeau in devising plans to save the country and secure its independence, treason was plotting the delivery to the British of West Point, the strongest fortress in America.

19. The traitor was Benedict Arnold, who had distinguished



BENEDICT ARNOLD.

himself in many battles, but especially at the siege of Quebec and at Saratoga. Having been severely wounded and thereby rendered unfit for active service, he was made military commander of Philadelphia after its evacuation by the British. Here he lived extravagantly and became deeply involved in debt. He also married a Tory lady, and this, with his overbearing disposition,

rendered him very unpopular.

20. At length the Pennsylvania authorities preferred charges against him, and upon trial, though he was acquitted of criminal intent, he was sentenced to be reprimanded by Washington. The sentence was carried into effect with the greatest delicacy, but Arnold was stung by the disgrace, and, being ruined also in fortune, resolved to gratify both his vengeance and his thirst for wealth by betraying his country.

21. Accordingly, he solicited from Washington, who still implicitly trusted him, the command of West Point. No sooner had he obtained it than he entered into secret negotiations with Clinton for its surrender. The accomplished young Major André, Clinton's adjutant-general, was appointed to conduct the correspondence.

22. For that purpose André went up the Hudson in the British sloop-of-war *Vulture* on the 22d of September, and, landing near the Point, held a conference with Arnold, in which he completed all arrangements. The vessel, meantime, had dropped down the river, having been attacked by the Americans, and André was compelled to return on horseback.



MAJOR ANDRÉ.

23. At Tarrytown he was seized by three militiamen, named Paulding, Van Wart and Williams, and, notwithstanding all

his persuasions and attempts at bribery, was brought into the American camp as a spy. Jameson, the commander of the post, unwisely wrote to Arnold, informing him of the capture.

24. Thus warned, the traitor escaped to New York, and was rewarded by the British with a brigadier's commission and about seven thousand pounds sterling. But his conduct was detested by those to whom he had sold his honor. He died in London in 1801, leaving a name which has ever since been the symbol of a traitor.

25. André was tried by court-martial as a spy, and upon his own statements, which were frank and manly, was convicted and sentenced to be hanged. Every effort was made to save him, but in vain. Even his request to be shot was disregarded; for Washington remembered the cruel death of Nathan Hale, and was inexorable. So, at Tappan, on the 2d of October, 1780, André was hanged instead of the infamous Arnold.

26. Fortunate indeed for the Americans was the timely discovery of Arnold's treachery; for had West Point been delivered up to the British, they would have held entire command of the Hudson, and thus the Eastern would have been severed from the Middle States, Washington's plans totally disarranged, and the war indefinitely prolonged, if, indeed, the patriot cause had not been wholly lost.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What was done by Clinton with his forces at Charleston?
  2. By Admiral Arbuthnot?
  3. Describe the surrender of Charleston.
  4. What did Clinton now determine to do?
  5. What patriots were distinguishing themselves in the Carolinas?
- Who succeeded Lincoln in command?
6. What was done by Gates after his appointment?
  7. Upon what occasion was De Kalb mortally wounded?
  8. What of the miserable condition of the American army? What of Gates?
  9. What of Sumter's troop?
  10. Who was now master of South Carolina? How were the patriots treated by him? Where did he now go?
  11. What was done by Colonel Campbell on the 7th of October?
  12. Why was Gates removed from command? Who succeeded him?

- 13, 14. Why was Washington inactive at this time?
15. To what measures was he compelled to resort? What was the condition of his army?
16. What of Knyphausen?
17. What foreign assistance did the Americans now receive?
18. What delayed De Tiernay's operations for a time?
- 19, 20. What is said of Benedict Arnold?
- 21, 22. Of what base act was he guilty?
23. What of André's capture?
24. How did Arnold effect his escape? What reward did he receive from the British?
25. What was André's fate?
26. What would have happened had West Point been lost?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

HUGER (Hu-jee').  
 TARLETON (Tarl'-ton).  
 WAXHAW (Wax'-haw).  
 MARION (Mär'-Y-on).

FERGUSON (Fer'-gū-son).  
 TIERNAY (Tī-äre'-nay).  
 ROCHAMBEAU (Rō'-shām-bō).  
 ANDRÉ (An'-dray).

---

### CHAPTER VII.

#### *EVENTS OF THE SEVENTH YEAR OF THE REVOLUTION, 1781.*

1. THE winter of 1780-81 had been spent by the main army of America, under General Wayne, at Morristown like the preceding one, but the condition of the troops was vastly improved. Still, there was great suffering, and the Pennsylvanians complained that they were detained beyond the time for which they had enlisted. Therefore they left camp on the 1st of January, to the number of thirteen hundred men, and commenced their march to Philadelphia to demand redress from Congress, which was in session there.

2. Wayne attempted to stop them, but, his life being threatened, he desisted. At Princeton two emissaries from Clinton met them with liberal propositions to join the British army; but, though indignant at their bad treatment, they were still patriotic, and, spurning the English bribe, delivered up the two agents to Wayne, who had them tried and executed as spies.

3. A committee from the national Congress and from Pennsylvania met them, and adjusted the difficulty by discharging those who had served their time, whereupon the rest returned to duty. The New Jersey troops claimed similar treatment, and, failing to receive what they thought their due, mutinied, but were reduced to obedience by Washington's vigorous measures.

4. These disturbances in the army had one good effect. They caused Congress to adopt more efficient means for the maintenance of the soldiers. Direct taxation was resorted to, money was obtained from abroad, and a national bank was established. Robert Morris, who had proved himself so unselfish and patriotic, was placed at the head of the treasury, and by his exertions greatly contributed to the final success of the Revolution.

5. In the early part of January the traitor Arnold, now in the English service, led an expedition into Virginia, and, burning with hatred and revenge, behaved with the greatest brutality, treating both public and private property alike. Thomas Jefferson, who was then governor, called out the militia and compelled him to fall back to Portsmouth.

6. Washington formed a plan to capture Arnold here. Lafayette was to move upon him with twelve hundred men by land, while the French fleet was to prevent his escape by sea. But the fleet of Arbuthnot intercepted and defeated De Tiernay at the entrance to the Chesapeake. Thus the plan failed, and Arnold escaped in safety to New York, General Philips, with two thousand fresh troops, taking his place at Portsmouth and continuing his work of pillage.

7. In the beginning of the year Cornwallis set his army in motion northward, and sent Tarleton to prevent a junction between Morgan and General Greene, who had superseded Gates as commander in the South. On the 17th of January, Tarleton overtook Morgan at Cowpens, and attacked him with his usual impetuosity. At first he swept everything before him; but while his men were disordered in their eager pursuit, Morgan rallied his forces and gained a brilliant victory, taking five hundred prisoners and all Tarleton's artillery and baggage.

8. Cornwallis at once started in pursuit of Morgan, and reached the Catawba River a few hours after the Americans had crossed.



Before he could follow, a heavy rain rendered the river impassable for a time, and the retreating patriots reached the Yadkin in safety. Here Morgan was joined by Greene, and they crossed the river, but were so hotly pursued that their rear-guard was attacked and part of their baggage lost. Heavy rain again saved the Americans, and detained the British until the former had secured their retreat.

9. Cornwallis now gave up the pursuit, and, returning south, took up his position at Hillsborough. Greene, meanwhile, being largely reinforced, deemed himself a match for the enemy, and, turning back into North Carolina, assumed the offensive. On the 15th of March he encountered Cornwallis at Guilford Courthouse; and though the British remained masters of the field, their loss was so great that they deemed it prudent to fall back to Wilmington.

10. The American general did not long remain inactive, but turned his course boldly into South Carolina. At Camden there was a large force of British under Lord Rawdon, and within a mile of this place, at Hobkirk's Hill, the Americans encamped. Here, on the 25th of April, they were attacked by the enemy, and compelled to retreat.

11. The victory, however, was of no value to Rawdon, for, fearing that his way to the coast might be intercepted, he hurried to Monk's Corner; and by the month of June only three important posts in South Carolina—Charleston, Nelson's Ferry and Ninety-Six—were held by the British. About the same time, Augusta, Georgia, was surrendered to the Americans, under Lee and Pickens.

12. Greene attempted the capture of Ninety-Six, but after a four weeks' fruitless siege, hearing of the approach of Rawdon to its relief, he abandoned it. Shortly after, however, it was voluntarily deserted by the enemy, who desired to keep as near to the coast as possible, lest their communications should be cut off. During the hot and sickly season active movements on both sides were suspended, and Greene gave his men rest among the hills bordering the Santee. But the partisan troops on both sides continued a sharp guerilla warfare, and kept the country in constant alarm.



13. Lord Rawdon soon after returned to England, leaving Colonel Stewart in command of the British, now concentrated at Eutaw Springs. Here, on the 8th of September, Stewart was attacked by Greene, who had been reinforced by Marion and Pickens, and a hard-fought battle ensued, in which both sides claimed the advantage. The half-famished Americans stopped, in the moment of victory, to plunder the enemy's camp, and thus gave them an opportunity to rally, when they were themselves driven off the field. But the British were badly crippled, and retreated in the night towards Charleston.

14. Greene followed them far enough to compel them to abandon the interior, and thus his object was gained, although he won no decisive victory in any battle. The battle of Eutaw Springs was the last general engagement south of Virginia, and the result of the entire campaign was satisfactory to the commander-in-chief and the country.

15. Cornwallis left Wilmington and joined Philips at Petersburg, Virginia, on the 20th of May. But Clinton, fearing a combined attack of French and Americans on New York, ordered him to take a position nearer to the coast, that he might receive help from him in case of need. Cornwallis, accordingly, after destroying public and private property to the amount of ten millions of dollars, took up his position at Yorktown, Virginia, with eight thousand men.

16. Meanwhile, Washington had concentrated his own and the French force under Rochambeau in the vicinity of New York. His object at first was probably an attack upon that city; but when he heard of the arrival in the Chesapeake of Count De Grasse with additional land and naval forces, he changed his mind, and resolved to attempt the destruction of Cornwallis.

17. His plan was to close the Chesapeake with a fleet while his army invested Yorktown. He still, however, ostensibly made his preparations against New York, and so adroitly concealed his real intention that Clinton was not aware of his design until a large part of the French and American troops were well advanced towards Virginia.

18. When Clinton found that Yorktown was the object of

attack, and that he was too late to overtake Washington, he sent Arnold with a large body of troops eastward, hoping thus to draw away a part of the American forces. New London was captured and burned on the 6th of September, Fort Trumbull being evacuated on Arnold's approach; Fort Griswold, on the opposite side of the Thames River, was taken by assault, and its commander, Colonel Ledyard, and half the garrison, were butchered, after capitulation.

19. But Washington was not to be diverted from his undertaking. Leaving Arnold to be dealt with by the militia, who soon assembled and compelled him to return to New York, he pushed rapidly on to Yorktown, and by the 28th of September that place was completely invested by the allied army, now numbering sixteen thousand men. To oppose this force Cornwallis had less than eight thousand men, and unless immediate help came it was impossible for him to hold out.

20. On the 9th of October everything was in readiness for the bombardment, and by the 15th it was manifest that the place could be held only a day or two longer. So, after fruitlessly attempting to abandon the stronghold and escape by land to New York, the British army at Yorktown, numbering seven thousand men, surrendered to Washington; and the ships, naval stores and fifteen hundred seamen were given up to Count De Grasse.

21. Great was the exultation when the news of this victory spread through the land. All felt that it virtually ended the war. The hardships of the long years were forgotten in the glorious thought that America was free. The news was too great for the old door-keeper of Congress; for when it was announced in Philadelphia, "Cornwallis is taken," he actually died for joy. The 30th of December was appointed by Congress as a day of national thanksgiving.

22. In England the tidings produced the greatest agitation. Two entire armies had now been swallowed up in America, and all sensible men saw that to prolong the contest was useless. The king, whose faculties had become clouded, insisted that his rebellious subjects must be reduced; but the great body of the people, never thoroughly in sympathy with the war, recoiled

from the further effusion of fraternal blood, and demanded a cessation of the unnatural strife.

### QUESTIONS.

1. What dissatisfaction prevailed among the Pennsylvania troops?
2. How did they receive the British offers of bribery?
3. How were their difficulties adjusted? What other troops mutinied?
4. What good resulted from these disturbances? What of Robert Morris?
5. What was the traitor Arnold doing at this time? Who was then governor of Virginia?
6. Describe Washington's attempt to capture Arnold.
7. Who had superseded Gates as commander in the South? What brilliant victory was gained at Cowpens?
8. How was Cornwallis prevented from pursuing Morgan?
9. Describe the battle of Guilford Court-house.
10. What was done by Greene in South Carolina?
11. What three points did the British now hold in this State?
12. Why were hostilities suspended for a while?
13. Describe the battle of Eutaw Springs.
14. Did Greene's campaign give satisfaction?
15. Why did Cornwallis leave North Carolina? Where did he take up his position?
16. What was Washington's first intention? Why did he change his mind?
17. What was now his purpose?
18. How did Clinton try to divert Washington?
19. Describe the investment of Yorktown.
20. What was the result of Washington's plans?
21. How was the news of Cornwallis's surrender received?
22. What opinion concerning the war prevailed in England?



### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

CATAWBA (Kă-taw'-bă).

RAWDON (Raw'-don).

GUILFORD (Ghîl'-ford).

HOBKIRK HILL (Hôb'-kirk).

SANTEE (San-tee')

EUTAW SPRINGS (Yoo'-taw).

TRUMBULL (Trüm'-bull).

GRISWOLD (Griz'-wuld).

LEDYARD (Lêd'-yard).

DE GRASSE (Deh-gräss).

## CHAPTER VIII.

*EVENTS OF THE EIGHTH YEAR OF THE REVOLUTION,  
1782-83.—END OF THE WAR.*

1. THE war virtually closed with the surrender of Cornwallis, occasional skirmishes alone indicating its continuance. New York, Charleston and Savannah were the only places of importance still in the hands of the British. The people of England had grown weary of a contest with which the great mass had no sympathies, and which national pride alone had tolerated.

2. So towards the spring of 1782, when the sense of mortification had subsided, there sprang up a universal demand that the war with America should cease, and that the ministers who still counseled it should be removed. The House of Commons passed a resolution in March that whoever advised the king to continue hostilities should be deemed a public enemy.

3. To such decided popular expressions even the stubborn old king was obliged to yield. A new ministry, favorable to peace, was formed, orders were sent out to the British generals to stop all fighting, and negotiations were entered into for the restoration of peace.

4. But while these amicable measures were in progress the situation of the country was most perilous. The treasury was bankrupt, commerce destroyed, business neglected and the army unpaid. Congress was powerless, for its jurisdiction was undefined or disputed, and the individual States were unable or unwilling to tax themselves for the payment of the national debt.

5. Under these circumstances, the troops, the great bulk of whom were encamped at Newburgh, on the Hudson, became restless, impatient and finally mutinous, and, failing to obtain relief from Congress, besought Washington to make himself king and manage affairs after his own judgment.

6. The patriot hero spurned the proposal with indignation, and, when violent measures were proposed, exerted his influence to effect a compromise. Through his efforts the officers obtained from Congress five years' full pay in gross, instead of half pay

for life, as passed by resolution in 1780, and the privates received four months' full pay as an installment of their claims.

7. Meanwhile, a preliminary treaty of peace had been signed by the English and American commissioners at Paris, in November, 1782. This was not made final, however, until March, 1783, because by the terms of alliance between France and the United States neither could make a separate treaty of peace with England, and France and England had not agreed upon terms of peace until January, 1783. Nor was everything fully arranged until September, when a full treaty was signed by all the nations that had taken part in the war—namely, England on the one side, and France, Spain, Holland and the United States on the other.

8. By this treaty the independence of the United States was acknowledged, the boundaries assigned being, on the north and east, essentially the same as at present; on the west, the Mississippi; on the south, Florida, which then extended westward to that river, having the 31st parallel for its northern limit.

9. In conformity with the general orders of Congress, the army was disbanded on the 3d of November, 1783, and on the 25th of the same month the British, under Sir Guy Carleton, who had succeeded Sir Henry Clinton, evacuated New York. General Washington immediately met his officers there, and on the 4th of December bade them an affectionate farewell.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What event had virtually closed the war? What places were still in the hands of the British?

2. What demand was made by the British people?

3. What was done by the House of Commons? What measures were taken?

4. In what perilous condition was the country?

5. What offer was made to Washington by the army?

6. How did Washington quiet the soldiers?

7. When and where was a preliminary treaty of peace signed? Why was not the treaty final? What nations had taken part in this war?

8. What were the terms of the treaty?

9. When was the army disbanded? When and where did Washington take leave of his army?



## CHAPTER IX.

*THE ADOPTION OF THE CONSTITUTION.*

1. DURING the war, the thirteen States had agreed upon Articles of Confederation. These were to be submitted to and approved by the States individually before they could become the Constitution of the country. Five years elapsed before the States gave their assent, and in the mean time Congress was compelled to assume all, or more than all, the powers the Articles would have given; otherwise it could not have carried on the war.

2. But when the Articles were finally ratified, in July, 1781, it was found that they had practically conferred but little power on Congress. That body could only advise; the States could do as they pleased about accepting the advice. Consequently, the public creditors remained unpaid; for Congress had no money, and it could not levy taxes. It advised the States to pay, but its recommendations were unheeded or denied.

3. When a peace was conquered, matters grew worse, and the embarrassment soon became so great that it was a matter of doubt whether the new-born country could long survive. Bitter jealousy existed between the several States, which greatly interfered with one another in commercial affairs, and by independent or adverse measures impeded business relations among themselves.

4. The States, indeed, seemed to be heartily united in nothing except in a determination to give the general Congress as little power as possible. Especially were they averse to delegating the right to levy taxes; for, jealous of the liberty which they had so arduously won, they desired to keep this right in their own hands.

5. Nor were the people willing to submit to taxation, even when imposed by the State authorities. When Massachusetts attempted, in accordance with the wishes of Congress, to contribute its share to defray the public debt and support the national credit, the popular discontent broke out in open insurrection in 1786.

6. This is known as "Shays' Rebellion"—its leader being one Daniel Shays—and was only put down by a powerful armed force under General Lincoln. These troubles excited great attention throughout the country, and thoughtful men began to see that a stronger and more centralized government was a necessity if the union of the States was to be established and preserved.

7. Accordingly, in September, 1786, delegates from five of the States met at Annapolis, and, after earnest consultation, concluded to recommend the calling of a convention to revise the Articles of Confederation. This convention, in which all the States except Rhode Island were represented, met at Philadelphia in May, 1787. It was composed of the ablest men of the nation, and Washington was unanimously chosen its president.

8. It soon became evident that mere revision of the old articles would not suffice: so, after much deliberation, during which there was violent agitation and the convention several times was on the point of breaking up, a constitution was agreed upon in September which was to be submitted to the States, and, if nine of the thirteen should give their assent, was to go into operation on the 4th of March, 1789.

9. During the debates on the constitution, the people were divided into Federalists and anti-Federalists. The former favored a strong government, one which would strengthen the union at home and give it character abroad. The latter feared a centralized power, and wished all authority to rest with the States, apprehensive lest too close a bond might result in a monarchy; for republicanism was then but an experiment and not well understood.

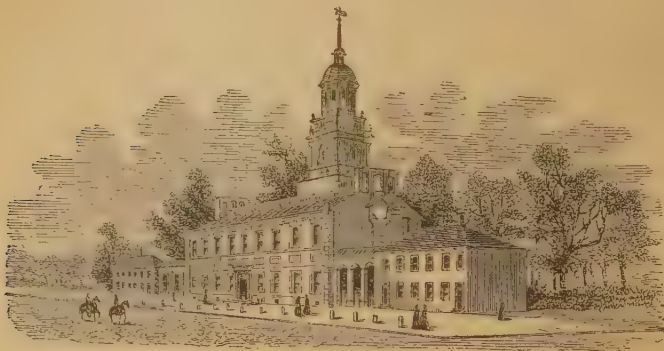
10. By the end of the year 1788 eleven States had ratified this all-important instrument, thus securing its going into operation on the appointed day. North Carolina and Rhode Island gave their assent on the 20th of November, 1789, and the 29th of May, 1790, respectively. In September, 1788, Congress appointed the first Wednesday in January, 1789, as the day for the choosing of presidential electors, and New York as the place where the new government should go into operation. When

the time came, Washington was found unanimously elected President, and John Adams Vice-President.

11. On the 3d of March, 1789, the old order of things expired, and the Continental Congress, which had under the most trying circumstances safely conducted the country through eight years of peril, ceased to exist, except in the grateful recollections of three millions of people whom its patriotic efforts had released from bondage.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What of the Articles of Confederation?
2. When were these articles ratified? Did they give additional power to Congress?
3. What unhappy feeling existed among the different States?
4. What of the right to levy taxes?
5. What occasioned Shays' Rebellion?
6. How was it quelled? What did these troubles show?
7. What was done by the delegates who met in 1786? What of the convention that met in Philadelphia in 1787? Who was chosen its president?
8. What was agreed upon by this convention?
9. What two political parties existed at this time? What were their respective opinions?
10. How many States ratified the Constitution? What two States were the last to ratify it? What day was selected for the choosing of presidential electors? Where was the seat of the new government? Who was elected first President of the United States?
11. What may be said of the Continental Congress?



INDEPENDENCE HALL IN 1776.



WASHINGTON'S JOURNEY.

## FOURTH PERIOD.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE STATES INTO  
A POWER.

## CHAPTER I.

## WASHINGTON'S PRESIDENCY.

APRIL 30, 1789—MARCH 3, 1797.

1. On the 4th of March, 1789, the new Constitution was to go into effect, and a new Congress under it, to meet at New York. But a sufficient number of members to form a quorum did not arrive until the

30th, and the electoral vote was not counted until the 6th of April. The unanimous election of George Washington as President and the choice of John Adams as Vice-President were then duly announced, and official notice was sent to the persons elected.

2. Washington was at his residence at Mount Vernon, Vir-



MOUNT VERNON.

ginia, when the messenger came, and in two days he started for New York. His journey thither was a continual ovation, the people all along his route vying with one another in paying him honor. Triumphal arches were erected, flowers strewed his path, gayly-dressed children sang his praises and processions conducted him from place to place.

3. His progress was so slow that he did not reach New York until near the end of April, on the last day of which he was inaugurated. On the balcony of Federal Hall, in presence of both Houses of Congress and of an immense concourse of people, he took the oath of office, and immediately entered upon its duties.

4. Congress at once proceeded to organize the executive departments of the government. It created three—the State, Treasury and War Departments—and Washington nominated



ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

Thomas Jefferson, Alexander Hamilton and Henry Knox their Secretaries, respectively. John Jay was made Chief Justice of the Supreme Court, and Edmund Randolph Attorney-General.

5. The boundaries of the United States at this time had been fixed, as we have said, by the treaty of Paris. The area thus enclosed comprehended, besides the original thirteen, the present States of Vermont and Maine, in the East; Ohio, Indiana, Michigan, Wisconsin and Illinois, in the North-west; and Kentucky, Tennessee, Alabama and Mississippi, in the South-west. Maine was still held by Massachusetts; and Vermont, though desirous of becoming an independent State during the war, was yet claimed by New York, and was not allowed admission into the Union until 1791.

6. The territory in the North-west was owned by Virginia, Connecticut and Massachusetts; but these States yielded their claims, and in 1787 Congress passed an ordinance for the government of the regions north of the Ohio, under the name of the Territory of the North-west. This ordinance, which ema-



nated from Thomas Jefferson, is especially famous for the provision that slavery was forever prohibited within the territory or in the States to be formed out of it.

7. Of the territory in the South-west, that which is now the State of Kentucky was within the Virginia grant, but, about the year 1775, was organized into an independent colony called Transylvania, and sought admission into the Union. Congress refused, however, to receive its delegates, as it was within the limits of Virginia. Afterwards, by agreement with the latter State, it was organized as Kentucky County. Tennessee remained under the government of North Carolina, to which it belonged; and Alabama and Mississippi, both acquisitions from France in 1763, were now organized into the Mississippi Territory.

8. Such was the country over which Washington was called to preside. The first subject which received his attention was that of the public revenue. Secretary Hamilton was directed to report a system of finance, and in the month of January, 1790, he brought forward his plan. This was to pay the national debt, which now amounted to fifty-four million dollars, and to assume the State debts contracted during the Revolutionary war, which were estimated at twenty-five million dollars, and to do this by imposing duties upon foreign goods and distilled spirits.

9. This plan met with considerable opposition, but was finally approved. To the assumption of the foreign debt there was little objection, but that of the domestic debt and the State debts was strongly opposed, on the ground that most of the original holders of the securities would not be benefited, having been obliged in their need to sell them to speculators for less than a tithe of their value.

10. The duty on whisky was also obnoxious, especially in Pennsylvania, where secret societies were formed to resist its payment. Still, on the whole, the measures adopted gave satisfaction, for they established confidence in the integrity of the country. To Alexander Hamilton is due the restoration of the national credit, and he well merited the tribute paid him by Daniel Webster, who said of him, "He smote the rock of the national resources, and abundant streams of revenue burst forth.

He touched the dead corpse of public credit, and it sprang upon its feet."

11. A national bank and a mint were established at Philadelphia in 1791-2, the former being chartered for twenty years. The seat of government was also transferred in 1790 to Philadelphia, where it was to remain until 1800, when it was to be permanently fixed at a new city to be located on the banks of the Potomac.

12. But still the government was beset with difficulties. The Indians in the North-west territory were hostile; pirates from the Barbary States, in the North of Africa, attacked American ships and imprisoned their crews; Spain shut up the Mississippi against commercial enterprise; and England, smarting from her recent defeat, would make no treaty of commerce. Added to these were the whisky troubles in Pennsylvania.

13. General Harmar was sent in 1790 against the Indians, who were continually harassing the western immigrants upon the pretext that the Ohio was their boundary. He was defeated, however, with great loss. The following year St. Clair, governor of the territory, headed an expedition, and was equally unsuccessful. At length Wayne, the hero of Stony Point, routed the savages with great slaughter in the battle of the Maumee, in 1794, and brought the war to a close, compelling them to cede, in 1795, an immense territory to the United States.

14. On the 4th of March, 1793, Washington entered upon the second term of his presidency, to which he had been again unanimously chosen. John Adams had also been re-elected Vice-President.

15. Political feeling at this time began to grow very bitter. The Federalists were headed by Washington, Adams, Hamilton and Jay, while their opponents were led by Jefferson, Madison and Monroe. The French Revolution, which had broken out shortly before this time, added greatly to the intensity of feeling.

16. In 1793 the French Directory sent M. Genet as ambassador to America. On his arrival he was well received, for the country had not forgotten the assistance extended to it by France in the Revolutionary war. He presumed upon this

friendship, and began to enlist soldiers and fit out privateers against English commerce, for France was now at war with Great Britain.

17. Genet's conduct was very displeasing to Washington, who did not wish to involve the States in another war. But the hot-headed Frenchman persisted, and Washington was compelled to ask for his recall. The request was complied with in 1794. The French ambassador's conduct and recall intensified the bitter feeling between the political parties, who had now become known as Federalists and Democratic Republicans.

18. Mention has been made of the opposition in Pennsylvania to the whisky tax. This grew daily stronger, and, encouraged by Genet's bold demeanor and the rancorous political feeling prevalent, at last broke out in open rebellion in 1794. So thoroughly were the insurgents organized that Washington was compelled to send a force of fifteen thousand militia against them. Unable to withstand this, the "Whisky Rebellion" of Western Pennsylvania came suddenly to an end.

19. England was not yet kindly disposed towards her late subjects, and every pretext for complaint or annoyance was readily seized upon. By the treaty of Paris the Western posts held by the British were to have been surrendered. This had not been done, and the garrisons were suspected, and even accused, of having incited the Indians to war. Slaves were carried off by the departing troops, American sailors were impressed, and trading-vessels were taken.

20. On the other hand, England alleged that the debts due before the war were not paid, and that impediments were thrown in the way of their collection by the State authorities. Things now came to such a pass that they seemed likely to end in war. In this emergency, Washington, anxious to avoid a conflict, for which the country was by no means prepared, took especial care to give no just cause of complaint, and sent Chief Justice John Jay as envoy extraordinary to England to arrange all difficulties amicably.

21. Jay negotiated a treaty which settled the question of the Western posts and other points of dispute, but which was not satisfactory to the American people, principally because it did not

secure sailors against impressment. Nevertheless, it was ratified by the Senate in August, 1795.

22. Jefferson had left the cabinet at the end of the year 1793, but political agitation continued, in which Washington, although he kept aloof from both parties, was subjected to great personal abuse. Conscious of being in the right, he kept the even tenor of his way, doing all he could to benefit the land he had saved, and satisfied that justice would be done him in the end.

23. In 1795 treaties were entered into with Spain and Algiers, the first fixing the boundary of Florida and securing the free navigation of the Mississippi, and the second releasing all seamen who had been captured by pirates and opening the Mediterranean to American vessels.

24. In September, 1796, Washington issued his famous Farewell Address, in which he announced his determination to retire from office at the end of his second term. The two great parties, therefore, into which the people had become divided put forward their principal men—the Federalists, John Adams, the Republicans, Thomas Jefferson. After a bitter contest, Adams was elected, and Jefferson became Vice-President.

25. Congress voted a reply to the Farewell Address of the retiring President, expressing its warmest feelings of gratitude and confidence. Nearly all the State legislatures did the same, and on the 4th of March, 1797, after witnessing the inauguration of his successor, the illustrious Washington returned, amid the benedictions of his countrymen, to the peaceful retirement of his beloved Mount Vernon.

26. During Washington's presidency three new States were added to the Union—Vermont, on the 18th of February, 1791, Kentucky, on the 1st of June, 1792, and Tennessee, on the 1st of June, 1796. There were, therefore, sixteen States in the sisterhood before the close of the eighteenth century.

27. Vermont, the fourteenth State of the Union, is bounded on the east by the Connecticut River, which separates it from New Hampshire; on the north by the 45th parallel, which marks the limits of Canada; on the west by Lake Champlain and the State of New York; and on the south by Massachusetts. Its climate, soil and productions are of the same character

as those of New Hampshire, already described. Its area is a little over nine thousand square miles.

28. Kentucky, the fifteenth State of the Union, has the Mississippi River for its western boundary, and the Ohio for its northern, the former separating it from Missouri, and the latter from Illinois, Indiana and Ohio. On the east the Big Sandy River and the Cumberland Mountains divide it from Virginia and on the south the parallel of  $36^{\circ} 30'$  separates it from Tennessee. Its area is thirty-eight thousand square miles. The soil is, for the most part, very fertile, and, under a good system of tillage, it might be one of the richest agricultural States of the Union. Flax, hemp and tobacco are largely produced. Daniel Boone, a famous hunter and backwoodsman, was the first explorer of this region.



DANIEL BOONE.

29. Tennessee, the sixteenth State, has the Mississippi for its western boundary, the Alleghany Mountains for its eastern, and it lies, north and south, between the parallels of  $35^{\circ}$  and  $36^{\circ} 30'$ . The entire State is agreeably diversified with mountain, hill and plain, has a very fertile soil, and enjoys a delightful climate. Indian corn and tobacco are the great staples. Its area is nearly forty-six thousand square miles.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. When did the new Constitution go into effect? When was the electoral vote taken?
2. Where was Washington at this time? His journey to New York?
3. When was he inaugurated? Where did he take the oath of office?
4. How was the executive department divided? What officers were then nominated?
5. What new States were included within the limits of the country?
6. Who owned the Territory of the North-west? What ordinance was passed by Congress in 1787? Who proposed this ordinance? What renders it famous in history?
7. Who claimed the territory in the South-west? By what name was it known during the Revolution? Under whose government was Tennessee? What acquisition had been obtained from France in 1783?



8. What first demanded Washington's attention? Who was appointed to report a system of finance? What was his plan?

9. With what opposition did it meet, and why?

10. What troubles arose in Pennsylvania? What of Alexander Hamilton's labors? What tribute is paid him by Webster?

11. What acts were now passed by Congress?

12. What troubles beset the government?

13. Describe the unsuccessful expedition against the Indians. Who finally conquered them?

14. When did Washington enter upon his second term?

15. What two political parties still existed? Who were their chiefs?

16. What difficulties arose with France in 1793?

17. What was Washington compelled to do? By what names were the political parties now known?

18. Describe the "Whisky Rebellion."

19. What troubles arose with England?

20. What did England allege against the Americans? Who was sent to England to adjust the difficulties?

21. Was he successful?

22. Why was Washington subjected to great abuse?

23. What treaties were made in 1795?

24. When did Washington retire from office? Who succeeded him?

25. What was done by Congress and the State Legislatures? How did his retirement affect the people?

26. What States were admitted into the Union during Washington's administration? How many States did the Union now contain?

27. Bound Vermont. Its soil, climate and productions? Its area?

28. Bound Kentucky. Its area, natural features and productions?

29. Bound Tennessee. How is it diversified? Its productions and area?

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

ST. CROIX (Sent Kroï).

INDIANA (In-dī-ān'-ā).

MICHIGAN (Mish'-Y-gan).

WISCONSIN (Wiss-kōn'-sin).

ILLINOIS (Il-lī-noi').

KENTUCKY (Ken-tuk'-e).

ALABAMA (Al-ā-bām'-ā).

TRANSYLVANIA (Tran-sil vā nī-ā).

POTOMAC (Pō-to'-mak).

ST. CLAIR (Sent Klāre).

MAUMEE (Maw-mee').

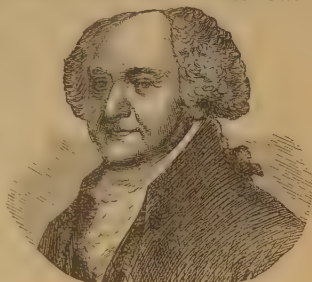
GENET (Zheh-nā').

## CHAPTER II.

*JOHN ADAMS'S PRESIDENCY.*

MARCH 4, 1797—MARCH 3, 1801.

1. JOHN ADAMS, who succeeded Washington as President on the 4th of March, 1797, was one of the most illustrious men of his time. One of the early patriots, he took a conspicuous part in moulding the opinions of his native Massachusetts in the cause of freedom. As a member of Congress he was one of the committee that reported the Declaration of Independence, and exerted his influence to secure its adoption.



JOHN ADAMS.

2. During the Revolutionary war he spent a large part of the time abroad, laboring in his country's service, and when peace came was appointed the first United States minister to Great Britain. Returning to America in 1788, after an absence of ten years, he was elected Vice-President in 1789, and held that office until he assumed the presidency.

3. When he came into office, the condition of the country was very prosperous. Credit had been established, the national debt funded, and ample resources secured both for current expenses and for the gradual payment of the debt, a considerable part of which had been already discharged. Agriculture and commerce were in a thriving condition, the Indians were peaceful, and war with England had been averted.

4. But trouble arose with France, owing to the treaty with England, which was displeasing to the French Directory. The United States flag was insulted, its vessels were captured by French men-of-war, and Pinckney, the American envoy, was ordered to leave France. These events raised a storm of indignation in America. The President called an extra session of Congress to consider the subject, and Pinckney, the late minister.

Gerry and Marshall were sent as commissioners to France to arrange matters if possible.

5. The French Directory would not receive the envoys, but hinted to them privately that if money were paid peace might be secured, otherwise there would be war. Pinckney's reply, "Millions for defence, but not one cent for tribute," became the watchword of the nation, and the government began to prepare actively for war, Washington having been appointed commander-in-chief.

6. Hostilities had begun at sea, and one or two vessels were captured on each side. Before anything very serious occurred, however, the French Directory made new proposals for peace, which were immediately responded to by the President, who sent envoys to France. They, upon their arrival, found the Directory overthrown and Napoleon Bonaparte First Consul. Bonaparte signed a treaty of peace on the 30th of September, 1800, and since that time the friendly relations between the two countries have not been seriously disturbed.

7. Before peace was proclaimed, Washington, who had deservedly obtained the title of "Father of his Country," died at Mount Vernon, on the 14th of December, 1799. The American nation was plunged into deep grief at his loss, and throughout Europe the sincerest tributes were paid to the memory of this great man and unblemished patriot.

8. During the difficulties with France, President Adams recommended the passage of two laws which were very distasteful to the people—a measure which prevented his re-election. These were the "Alien" and "Sedition Laws." By the first all foreigners found plotting against the good of the country might be expelled, and by the second any one libeling Congress, the President or the government could be fined or imprisoned.

9. At the ensuing election in 1800, the Federalists put in nomination President Adams, and Charles C. Pinckney, of South Carolina; and the Republicans, Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, and Aaron Burr, of New York. The Republican candidates received the majority of the popular votes, but each had the same number of electors, so the election was thrown into

the House of Representatives, when Jefferson and Burr were chosen.

10. Just before the close of Adams's administration the seat of government was removed, in accordance with the law passed in 1790, from Philadelphia to the new city of Washington, the site of which was selected by Washington himself. It is situated in the District of Columbia, a small territory originally ten miles square, lying on both sides of the Potomac, and ceded by the States of Maryland and Virginia to the general government. The part given by Virginia was in 1846 returned to that State, so that the present area of the district is about sixty square miles.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. How had John Adams rendered himself illustrious?
2. What office was now conferred upon him? When was he elected President of the United States?
3. In what condition did he find the country?
4. What occasioned trouble with France? How did the President act in this emergency?
5. What was done by the French Directory? What became the watchword of the nation?
6. How was war with France averted? What change occurred in the French government?
7. Into what great grief was the country now plunged?
8. What prevented the re-election of Adams?
9. What candidates were now proposed for the presidency? Which party was victorious?
10. What of the city of Washington? What is the area of the District of Columbia?

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

PINCKNEY (Pink'-ne).  
 GERRY (Ghě'r'-re).  
 MARSHALL (Mar'-shăl).

NAPOLEON BONAPARTE (Nă pō ·  
 lē-on Bo'-nă-part).  
 COLUMBIA (Ko-lŭm'-bĭ-ă)

## CHAPTER III.

## JEFFERSON'S PRESIDENCY.

MARCH 4, 1801—MARCH 3, 1809.

1. THOMAS JEFFERSON, who became President on the 4th of March, 1801, was a man who would have adorned any age or



THOMAS JEFFERSON.

country. When the struggle with England commenced, he took the lead in the patriotic movements in Virginia, and, as a member of Congress, was chairman of the committee which presented the Declaration of Independence, that famous paper having been written by him. His name, too, is associated with the formation of the North-west Territory, in which,

as has been said, slavery was forever prohibited. He was also the author of our decimal currency.

2. The commencement of his administration was marked by the transfer of many of the offices to the Republican party, by the abolition of internal taxes, and by the repeal of several unpopular laws. France in this year received back from Spain the Territory of Louisiana, but ostensibly it remained in Spanish possession.

3. In 1803 the Spanish governor closed the port of New Orleans against American commerce, and thus produced violent excitement in all parts of the States whose rivers are tributaries of the Mississippi. Jefferson was naturally anxious to secure the mouth of this great river; for he clearly saw that whatever power held that commanded the entire country drained by it. He therefore urged Livingston, the American minister at Paris, to use every effort to induce the First Consul to sell New Orleans to the United States.

4. Fortunately for his wishes, Bonaparte was just then preparing for a great European struggle, and was very willing to



get rid of the French possessions in America. So he offered to sell the whole of Louisiana—a territory embracing more than a million square miles—to the United States for fifteen millions of dollars, which offer was at once accepted.

5. This was the great event of Jefferson's administration, and Congress divided the new acquisition into two territories, called, respectively, the Territory of Orleans and the District of Louisiana. The Mississippi in its entire length, and all the country drained by it and its confluent, were thus placed within the national domain.

6. The United States, like all other commercial nations, had hitherto paid tribute to the Barbary States for the security of their commerce in the Mediterranean Sea. But about the year 1801, these piratical powers, becoming more than usually insolent and exacting, in view of the great distance of the United States, did not hesitate to attack American vessels and reduce their captured crews to slavery.

7. The bey of Tripoli, in order to secure greater plunder, declared war; and the United States sent a naval squadron to punish the pirates. In the contest which ensued, the American naval commanders Dale, Preble, Rodgers and Barron greatly distinguished themselves.

8. Commodore Preble, in 1803, appeared against Tangier, a fortified town of Morocco, and, having exacted terms from the emperor, proceeded eastward. At Tripoli he found that the American frigate Philadelphia, one of the vessels of his fleet, was in the hands of the enemy, having run aground while chasing a vessel near shore, and that her captain, Bainbridge, and three hundred of his crew were prisoners.

9. Fearing that the captured frigate might be used for piratical purposes, he sent Lieutenant Decatur with a picked crew to destroy her. This Decatur accomplished, boarding and setting her on fire in sight of the enemy's batteries, and escaping without the loss of a man.

10. The reigning bey was a usurper, his brother Hamet being the rightful sovereign. Mr. Eaton, the American consul at Tunis, concerted with the exiled Hamet to capture Tripoli. The distance between Tunis and Tripoli is one thousand miles.

yet with a band of five hundred men, only nine of whom were Americans, they undertook the perilous march across a desert country.

11. They attacked and captured Derne, a fortified town, on their way, and would probably have taken Tripoli, but before their arrival the bey had concluded a peace with the American commissioner, Mr. Lear. This put an end to the war in the Mediterranean, and the Barbary powers were taught to respect the rights of American commerce.

12. In the year 1804 occurred the death of Alexander Hamilton, Washington's Secretary of the Treasury. He was shot in a duel with Vice-President Aaron Burr, at Weehawken, near New York. This quarrel was both personal and political, and the duel, which occurred on the 11th of June, was fatal to two of the most gifted men of the republic. Burr, after the death of his adversary, lost the confidence of the people, and went westward with the avowed object of forming a settlement in Northern Mexico.

13. Being suspected of a design to break up the Union and found a new confederacy west of the Alleghanies, he was arrested and tried for treason. Although acquitted for want of proof, he remained an outcast, and the man who had come within one electoral vote of being President of the United States died in obscurity, leaving a name scarcely less detested than that of the traitor Arnold.

14. In the fall of 1804, Jefferson was re-elected President, and George Clinton, of New York, was chosen Vice-President. During the whole of this second term there was great commercial disturbance, growing out of the fierce war which raged between England and France. England tried to prevent trade with France, and France, or rather Napoleon, forbade all commerce with England. In order to cripple her adversary, England, in 1806, issued "orders in council" declaring the whole French coast from Brest to the Elbe in a state of blockade. Napoleon retaliated by the "Berlin decree," declaring the British isles in a state of blockade.

15. As the war went on, the British government issued new orders in council in November, 1807, prohibiting all trade with

France and her allies, and Napoleon at once issued the celebrated Milan decree, forbidding all trade with England and her colonies. Prior to these orders and decrees the United States, as a neutral power, did a large carrying trade with Europe, but now her vessels became the prey of both the belligerents. England was mistress of the sea, and thus came more frequently in collision with those neutrals who disregarded her orders.

16. With these she was disposed to act arrogantly, and especially did she claim the right to stop all vessels, even upon the high seas, and take from them such sailors as were of English birth, and force them into her own navy. This "right of search," it can readily be seen, affected American citizens injuriously, for it was hard to distinguish between Englishmen and Americans, and the captains would not be very apt to discriminate, especially if in need of crews.

17. The manifest injustice of these proceedings produced a violent outcry against England in America, and the sense of wrong was intensified by the attack of the British frigate *Leopard* upon the American frigate *Chesapeake* off the Virginia coast, in June, 1807. The American vessel, not apprehending danger, was unprepared for action, and four of her men were carried away on the pretext that they were British deserters, although it was proven that at least three were Americans. This outrage provoked a proclamation from the President forbidding English ships to enter American harbors.

18. The destructive policy of England and France continuing, Congress, in December, 1807, laid an embargo upon American vessels, forbidding them to leave the ports of the United States. But, as this was found to be ruinous to commerce, it was soon repealed, and an act forbidding all intercourse with England and France was passed on the 1st of March, 1809.

19. In this state of things, and on the eve of a rupture with England, Thomas Jefferson's administration ended. He had the previous fall declined a re-election for a third term, and James Madison, of Virginia, was chosen to succeed him, George Clinton, of New York, being re-elected Vice-President.

20. Mention must be made of an act of Congress, passed March 2, 1807, prohibiting the introduction of slaves into the

United States after the 1st of January, 1808 ;\* of the voyage, September 14, 1807, from New York to Albany, of the *Clermont*, a steamboat constructed by Robert Fulton, of Pennsylvania, the forerunner of that stupendous fleet which now furrows all the seas of the world; and of the admission of Ohio as the seventeenth State of the Union on the 29th of November, 1802.



ROBERT FULTON.

21. This State was a part of the North-west Territory, and is bounded on the north by Lake Erie and the parallel of  $41^{\circ} 40'$  north latitude; on the west the meridian of  $84^{\circ} 40'$  separates it from Indiana; the Ohio River separates it on the south from Kentucky, and on the east from West Virginia. The meridian of  $80^{\circ} 35'$  divides it from Pennsylvania, and completes its eastern limit. It is about two hundred miles in its greatest length and breadth, and has an area of forty thousand square miles.

22. The face of the country is considerably elevated, although there are no mountains. The greater part of the middle of the State may be briefly described as a plain about one thousand feet above the level of the sea. Bituminous coal-fields abound, and the climate and soil are excellent. As an agricultural State it is, perhaps, unsurpassed in the Union; and it is this, no doubt, that has made its growth in population and wealth so rapid. Lake Erie and the Ohio River afford great commercial facilities and contribute very much to its prosperity.

23. We find the United States, then, developed at this period into one of the stable powers of the world, its position being recognized among the nations and its influence felt throughout Christendom. We shall next find it daring, in defence of its rights, to grapple, on her favorite element, with the greatest maritime power of Europe—the vaunted Mistress of the Seas.

---

\* At the formation of the government slaves were held by all the States except Massachusetts.

## QUESTIONS.

1. When was Thomas Jefferson elected President? How had he already won great fame?
2. By what was the commencement of his administration marked?
3. What caused violent feelings against Spain?
4. What important acquisition did the United States obtain during Jefferson's administration? Describe how it was accomplished.
5. How did Congress divide the new country?
6. What trouble now arose with the Barbary States?
7. What American commanders distinguished themselves in this conflict?
- 8, 9. What was done by Preble in 1803?
- 10, 11. What was accomplished by Eaton, the American consul at Tunis? What put an end to the war?
12. What caused the death of Alexander Hamilton?
13. What of Burr's conspiracy? What of his life after this?
14. What change took place in the administration in 1804? What now caused great commercial trouble? Why did England issue "orders in council"? Why was the Berlin decree issued?
15. What act of England called forth the Milan decree? How did the United States become involved in these troubles?
16. What of the right of search?
17. What intensified the violent feelings against England?
18. What act was passed by Congress in 1807? Why was it repealed? What was done in 1809?
19. Who succeeded Jefferson?
20. Name the other three noteworthy events of this period.
21. Bound Ohio. Its length, breadth and area?
22. What of its natural features? What has contributed to its growth and prosperity?
23. In what condition was the country at this time?

---

 PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

BARBARY (Bar'-bä-re).  
 TRIPOLI (Trip'-o-le).  
 PREBLE (Prëb'-l).  
 TANGIER (Tan-jeer').  
 MOBOCCO (Mo-röc'-co).  
 BAINBRIDGE (Bän'-brijj).  
 DECATUR (De-ka'-tur).  
 BEY (Bä).

HAMET (Ham'-et).  
 TUNIS (Tu'-nis).  
 MEDITERRANEAN (Mëd-i-ter-rä'-ne-an).  
 WEEHAWKEN (Wee-haw'-ken).  
 ELBE (Elb).  
 BERLIN (Ber-lin').  
 LEOPARD (Lëp'-pärd).





BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS.

## FIFTH PERIOD.

## WAR WITH ENGLAND.

## CHAPTER I.

*MADISON'S PRESIDENCY.*

MARCH 4, 1809—MARCH 3, 1817.



THE JAVA AND CONSTITUTION.

1. JAMES MADISON, the fourth President of the United States, was inaugurated at Washington on the 4th of March, 1809. He was a Virginian by birth, and had been one of the most distinguished delegates in the convention of 1787. He did not, perhaps, possess as great natural abilities as either Adams or Jefferson, but he had a strong, clear and well-balanced mind, and was a man of intense application. He had been Secretary of State for eight years under Jefferson, and was thus thoroughly prepared to encounter the difficulties which now surrounded the nation.

2. At the close of the last administration the country was on the verge of war with both France and England, for the orders in council and the Napoleonic decrees were equally intolerable to an independent people. The threatened difficulty with France was happily averted; for though American merchant vessels were sometimes seized by French cruisers and offensive edicts issued, by the end of the year 1810 Napoleon revoked his "decrees," so far as they were hostile to America, and commercial intercourse was resumed.

3. But it was otherwise with England. She would listen to nothing, refused to annul her offensive "orders," and sent armed vessels to capture American merchantmen in their own waters. On the 16th of May a startling affair occurred off the coast of Virginia. The *Little Belt*, a British sloop-of-war, was hailed by the President, an American frigate, commanded by Commodore Rodgers, and for a reply sent back a shot. The President returned such heavy broadsides that in a few minutes thirty-two of the sloop's men were killed or wounded, the American vessel suffering no damage.

4. While war with England was thus impending, the Indians in the North-west Territory, who had long been restive, urged on, it is supposed, by British emissaries, became exceedingly hostile, and under the leadership of the famous Shawnee chief Tecumseh and his crafty brother, the Prophet, formed a strong coalition against the white settlers. General Harrison, governor of the Indian territory, was sent against them, and determined to strike before the tribe could unite.

5. Accordingly, he marched to the town of the Prophet, situated at the junction of the Tippecanoe and Wabash Rivers, reaching that place on the 6th of November, 1811. Here he was met by emissaries from the wily chief, who said he would sign a treaty the next day. Harrison was not deceived, but, affecting confidence, rested his men where the Prophet indicated, cautioning them, however, to sleep on their arms.

6. At midnight he was attacked by his treacherous foe, and a bloody contest ensued, in which the Indians were totally routed and all Tecumseh's plans frustrated. As the English were blamed for fomenting this outbreak, the feeling against

them throughout the West became very bitter. General Harrison earned in this campaign the familiar name of the "Hero of Tippecanoe."

7. All efforts to induce Great Britain to abrogate her offensive "orders," and to cease the impressment of American seamen, proving of no avail, nothing remained but war. So, on the 19th of June, 1812, President Madison, in accordance with an act of Congress, issued a proclamation of war, and appointed Major-General Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, an old Revolutionary soldier, commander-in-chief. He also issued orders to enlist twenty-five thousand men, and called for fifty thousand volunteers for general service and one hundred thousand militia for garrison duty and frontier defence.

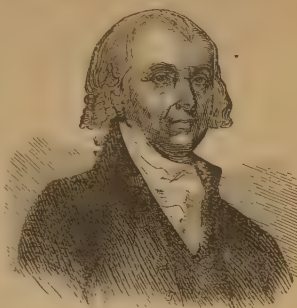
8. The people of the United States were not unanimous in favor of the war. The Federalists generally opposed it, principally on the ground of the unprepared condition of the country. The army numbered only ten thousand effective men, and the navy consisted of ten frigates, a few smaller vessels and one hundred and seventy worthless gunboats. The British navy at this time included one thousand vessels. Fortunately, however, England was engrossed in her efforts to overthrow Napoleon and re-establish legitimacy in Europe.

9. Louisiana was admitted as the eighteenth State of the Union in April, 1812. It was a part of Jefferson's purchase from Napoleon, and may be geographically described as follows: Commencing at its south-western extremity and running northward, it is bounded on the west by the Sabine Lake and River to the meridian line of  $94^{\circ} 20'$ , thence by that line to the 33d parallel; on the north by this parallel to the Mississippi, and by this river to the 31st parallel, on the east. From the Mississippi to the Pearl River the 31st parallel completes its northern and the river its eastern boundary. The Gulf of Mexico bounds it on the south.

10. The extreme length of the State from east to west is a little less than three hundred miles, and its breadth from north to south two hundred and fifty miles. Its area is about forty-one thousand square miles. It has nowhere a greater elevation than two hundred feet above the gulf level, and in the lower parts it

is frequently inundated at high water, which renders its climate somewhat unhealthy.

11. The delta of the Mississippi, on which New Orleans is situated, is an alluvial deposit made by the great river. The commercial facilities of the city are unsurpassed, the wealth of the immense valley of the Mississippi being at its command. The chief productions of the State are sugar and cotton, nearly all the sugar made in the United States being raised here. New Orleans is the greatest cotton mart in the world.



JAMES MADISON.

## QUESTIONS.

1. When was Madison inaugurated? How did he compare with Jefferson and Adams? How had he become thoroughly prepared for his duties?

2. How were the troubles with France adjusted?

3. What was England's conduct towards America? What widened the breach already existing?

4. What occasioned war with the Indians?

5. Describe the contest.

6. How were the Indians defeated?

7. When and why was war declared against Great Britain? Who was appointed commander-in-chief? What preparations were made for the war?

8. What different opinions concerning the war prevailed? What of the English and American navies? What other difficulties engrossed the attention of England?

9. When was Louisiana admitted as a State? Name its boundaries.

10. Give its length, width and area. What of its climate?

11. What of New Orleans? The chief productions of the State?

## PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

SHAWNEE (Shaw-nee').

TECUMSEH (Tē-kūm'-sēh).

HARRISON (Hār'-rī-son).

TIPPECANOE (Tip-pē-cā-noo').

WABASH (Waw'-bash).

DEARBORN (Deer'-buru).

SABINE (Sā-been').

PEARL (Perl).

## CHAPTER II.

*MADISON'S PRESIDENCY.—CONTINUED.*

1. AN invasion of Canada opened the war with England, and, had there been any significance in omens, would have been disheartening indeed; for it was signally unsuccessful. General William Hull, governor of Michigan Territory, at the head of two thousand Ohio troops, was on his way to Detroit to punish the hostile Indians of the North-west when war was proclaimed. In anticipation of this event, he had been invested with discretionary power to invade Canada.

2. As soon, therefore, as he learned that war was declared, he crossed the Detroit River, on the 12th of July, with the intention of attacking the British post at Malden. But he delayed at Sandwich, eighteen miles off, foolishly awaiting the effects of a proclamation which he had issued to the inhabitants. This gave the enemy time to fortify themselves and to receive fresh troops and supplies.

3. Meantime, a detachment sent out by him to guard the provisions coming to his camp was surprised and overwhelmed at Brownstown, August 5th, by the British and Indians. Fearing lest his communications should be cut off, he returned to Detroit, to the great chagrin of his men, without striking a blow.

4. At the same time, Fort Mackinaw, an American post on an island at the outlet of Lake Michigan, the grand depot of the fur companies of the West and the key to that section of the country, was captured by a force of British and Indians before the garrison were aware of the existence of war.

5. Hull's withdrawal to Detroit emboldened the British commander, General Brock, now reinforced by the Indian chief Tecumseh, to make an attack upon that place. Without any attempt at defence, and while his troops were eagerly awaiting the signal to fire, Hull raised the white flag in token of capitulation, and, while his men were burning with shame and rage,







unconditionally surrendered the fort, with its garrison and stores, to the British, on the 16th of August.

6. This was an unaccountably disgraceful affair, and subjected Hull to the accusation of treachery. Two years after, thirty British prisoners were given in exchange for him, and he was tried for treason and cowardice. Being convicted of the latter, he was sentenced to be shot; but the President, in view of his age and previous services, pardoned him.

7. The failure of Hull did not prevent another attempt to invade Canada. General Van Rensselaer was in command of a large force of militia, principally from New York State, on the Niagara frontier. On the 13th of October he sent a portion of his troops across the river to attack Queenstown Heights. The Americans gained possession of the enemy's battery, and would have been completely successful could Van Rensselaer have persuaded the rest of his men to cross the river.

8. They were militia, however, and resisted all persuasion to leave their State. So, after a loss of over one thousand in killed, wounded and prisoners, the attempt was abandoned, and Van Rensselaer, disgusted with his cowardly command, resigned his place to General Smith, of Virginia, who, soon becoming equally ashamed of his men, also resigned. In this abortive effort, General Brock was killed on the British side, and on the American the afterwards celebrated Winfield Scott and John E. Wool, both young volunteers, were taken prisoners.

9. Thus on land the result of the campaign of 1812 was unfortunate; and as a large portion of the people, especially in the New England States, were opposed to the war, affairs would have worn a very discouraging aspect had not the neglected navy redeemed the honor of the country by a series of brilliant successes at sea.

10. The American navy, at the time of the breaking out of the war, consisted, as has been already stated, of only ten frigates and a few smaller vessels. Indeed, not only was it not fostered by the government, but it had been suffered to fall into decay. It was owing, therefore, to individual energy rather than to national forethought that the gallant little navy was able to maintain the honor of the country.

11. On the 13th of August, Captain Porter, in the *Essex*, captured the British sloop of war *Alert*, and on the 19th the American frigate *Constitution*, Captain Hull, met with the British frigate *Guerriere*, Captain Dacre, and after a severe fight so crippled her that, unable to bring her into port, he burnt her. This victory of "Old Ironsides," as the *Constitution* was called, gave great satisfaction, for it was the first time in fifty years that a British ship had been defeated in regular battle.

12. In October, the *Wasp*, an American sloop cruising off the coast of North Carolina, fell in with the British brig *Frolic*, and after a sharp engagement boarded her, when it was found that only the helmsman was left unhurt. Scarcely, however, was she taken, when a British ship of the line hove in sight and captured both vessels.

13. In the same month the American frigate *United States*, commanded by Captain Decatur, captured the British frigate *Macedonian* off the Azores after a severe engagement, and succeeded in bringing her prize to New York. The last naval triumph of the year was the capture, December 29th, off the coast of Brazil, of the British frigate *Java*, by the *Constitution*, now commanded by Bainbridge. The British ship was so crippled in the conflict that it was found necessary to burn her.

14. During this year more than three hundred prizes were taken by American ships of war and privateers, which swarmed in every sea, preying upon British commerce. The belief entertained at the beginning of the war that the navy of the United States would be swallowed up by that of England was dissipated. By these victories the enthusiasm of the nation was aroused and confidence inspired. Madison was, therefore, re-elected President in the fall of 1812, and at the same time Elbridge Gerry, of Massachusetts, was chosen Vice-President.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What event opened the war with England? What of General Hull?
- 2, 3. Describe the invasion of Canada.
4. Describe the capture of Fort Mackinaw.
5. What powerful ally had the English? What of Hull's conduct?
6. What of his trial and sentence?
7. Who made a second attempt upon Canada? Why did it fail?

8. Who succeeded Van Rensselaer? What noted persons were killed and taken prisoners in this attempt?
9. What success had the Americans at sea?
10. What was the condition of the American navy?
11. What of the capture of the *Guerriere*? Why was this an important victory?
12. Describe the contest between the *Wasp* and *Frolic*.
13. What was done by Captain Decatur? What of a victory off the coast of Brazil?
14. How many prizes were taken this year? How did the people show their approval of the President's policy?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

RENSSELAER (Ren'-slair).  
GUERRIERE (Gher-rĭ-air').

MACEDONIAN (Mäs-se-do'-nĭ-an).  
GERRY (Gher'-re).

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### *MADISON'S PRESIDENCY.—CONTINUED.*

1. TOWARDS the end of 1812 naval armaments were in preparation on the lakes to aid in the conquest of Canada, which was still, notwithstanding the reverses of this year, much desired by the administration. For the campaign of 1813 three armies were raised, and were thus posted: the army of the West, under Harrison, near the head of Lake Erie; the army of the Centre, under Dearborn, on the Niagara frontier; and the army of the North, under Wade Hampton, near Lake Champlain. The design was for all three to invade Canada.

2. The armies of the Centre and the North accomplished so little in the year 1813 that their campaign may be briefly pronounced an inglorious failure. Dearborn, in April, with seventeen hundred picked men, crossed Lake Ontario and attacked York, now Toronto, General Pike gallantly leading the advance. Unfortunately, in the moment of victory, the enemy's magazine blew up, killing Pike and about two hundred of his men. In the disorder the British retreated, and the Americans took the place, with a large amount of military stores.



3. Dearborn now re-embarked his troops and sailed against Fort George, on the Niagara. On the approach of the Americans the British retreated, followed by their enemy ; but, watching their opportunity, they made a night attack upon Dearborn, on the 6th of June, and compelled a precipitate retreat to Fort George. Here Dearborn allowed himself to be surrounded and a detachment of six hundred of his men cut off. This raised an outcry against him, and he was recalled, General Wilkinson taking his place.

4. Wilkinson was ordered to descend the St. Lawrence, and, having effected a junction with Hampton, in command of the army of the North, to make a combined attack upon Montreal. When he reached the Great Rapids, near Williamsburg, he sent forward a strong detachment to disperse the enemy, who everywhere harassed the descent of his troops. Meeting the foe at Crysler's Field on the 11th of November, a severe battle took place, which he won, though suffering a heavy loss in men.

5. Meantime, Hampton had entered Canada, and, proceeding as far as St. John, was defeated by the British, and so was unable to join Wilkinson at St. Regis, as had been agreed upon. Wilkinson reached French Mills, nine miles from St. Regis, and wintered there, Hampton having, meanwhile, made his way back to Plattsburg as best he could, where during the winter he was joined by General Winchester. There was a strong feeling of personal dislike between Hampton and Wilkinson, which prevented hearty co-operation, and may have had much to do with the inglorious result.

6. The army of the West was more fortunate, but still nothing was really gained until the lake fleet under Perry was able to co-operate with Harrison's land forces. No impression had been made upon Canada, and the British still held Michigan and threatened Ohio. The campaign of the West may be briefly summed up as follows.

7. In January, 1813, General Winchester advanced to the Maumee Rapids with a portion of Harrison's army, estimated at from eight hundred to one thousand men, mostly Kentuckians. As the British were threatening Frenchtown, on the river Raisin, he sent a portion of his men to drive them off, which

they did. Coming up soon after with the rest of his force, he encamped in the open field.

8. Early on the morning of the 22d he was attacked by a large force of English and Indians, and forced to surrender. Proctor, the English commander, either willfully or carelessly, left the prisoners to the mercy of the Indians, who murdered and scalped a great many of them. This produced great mourning in Kentucky, from which State most of the victims came, and thenceforward in the war the cry of her sons was, "Remember the Raisin!"

9. Hearing of this defeat, Harrison, who was on his way to aid Winchester, stopped at the rapids and threw up a fortification, which he called Fort Meigs. Here Proctor besieged him on the 1st of May; but General Clay, with twelve hundred Kentuckians, coming to his relief, the British were attacked in return, and forced to abandon the siege after a second attempt.

10. Foiled at Fort Meigs, Proctor next tried Fort Stevenson, at Lower Sandusky, now Fremont, commanded by Major Croghan, a youth of twenty-one. The garrison numbered only one hundred and fifty men and possessed but one gun, a six-pounder. Nevertheless, its gallant young commander determined to defend it to the last man. Proctor attacked it on the 2d of August, but met with such a warm reception from the six-pounder and one hundred and fifty muskets that he was forced to retire, with a loss of one hundred and fifty men. Fearing Harrison's approach, he abandoned the siege and returned to Malden.

11. The enemy still held Michigan and Lake Erie and threatened Ohio, but a change was now about to come over the aspect of affairs. Both sides saw how important it was to have a naval force upon the lakes; therefore both made every effort to secure it. Early in October, 1812, preparations were in progress, and by the 1st of August, 1813, two squadrons, one English and the other American, were ready for action on Lake Erie.

12. The English force consisted of six vessels and sixty-three guns, manned by about five hundred men; the American of nine vessels and fifty-four guns, with five hundred men, largely drawn from Harrison's army. Commodore Barclay commanded the English squadron, and Commodore Perry the American. Sir

James Yeo and Commodore Chauncey were respectively the commanders-in-chief of all the lakes.

**13.** On the 10th of September the hostile fleets met near the western extremity of Lake Erie, and a severe battle ensued, which lasted four hours. Perry was victorious, and captured every British vessel. During the engagement Perry's own vessel, the *Lawrence*, being rendered useless, he took an open boat and transferred his flag to the *Niagara*. His laconic report to Harrison has become famous. He said, "We have met the enemy, and they are ours—two ships, two brigs, a schooner and a sloop."

**14.** This victory gave the Americans complete control of Lake Erie and opened the way to Canada. Harrison was now conveyed across the lake by Perry, and Proctor was compelled to abandon Malden. The British commander retreated into Canada with his Indian ally, abandoning all his American posts, and Harrison pursued and overtook him at the Moravian Towns on the Thames River on the 5th of October.

**15.** Proctor, seeing that a battle could not be avoided, chose as favorable a position as possible, and awaited the attack. He was totally routed, most of his force being captured, and himself saved only by the fleetness of his horse. His Indian ally Tecumseh was slain and America rid of its most bitter and implacable foe. Henceforward during the war Michigan and the North-west remained free from both British and Indians.

**16.** Before the successes of Perry and Harrison—that is to say, in the spring of 1813—Tecumseh had visited the Indians of Alabama and the South-west and induced them to enter into a confederacy against the whites. The settlers took refuge in forts, one of which, Fort Mims, was attacked in the month of August by seven hundred Creek Indians, and four hundred men, women and children were horribly massacred.

**17.** Volunteers flocked from all sides to avenge this shocking deed. The principal body of them came from Tennessee, under the command of General Andrew Jackson, whose standard was also joined by friendly Indians. In a series of battles, terminating with the sanguinary conflict of Tohopeka, or, as the whites called it, the Horseshoe Bend, on the Tallapoosa River, the Indians were defeated and completely broken, and were glad to

sue for peace, which was granted them on the surrender of a large part of their territory.

18. This battle of the Bend was fought on the 14th of March, 1814, and was a very unequal affair; one thousand warriors were hemmed in, where the river Tallapoosa makes a very wide loop, by a force at least three times their number. Thus entrapped, they struggled with all the energy of despair, and yielded at length a dearly-bought victory to their foes; six hundred braves lay stretched upon the plain, and two hundred and fifty women and children fell into the white men's hands.

19. On the high seas the American navy achieved some brilliant successes and experienced some severe reverses, but the gallantry of both officers and men was the constant theme of admiration. During the whole of the year 1813 the British held in close blockade the Atlantic coast from Cape Cod to the Mississippi, and it was very difficult for cruisers to get to sea.

20. On the 24th of February, however, Captain Lawrence, in the sloop-of-war *Hornet*, fell in with the British brig *Peacock*, and, after an action of only fifteen minutes, so disabled her that she sank, carrying down nine of her own crew and three sailors of the *Hornet* who had gone to her assistance. On returning to the United States, Lawrence was promoted to the command of the *Chesapeake*, then lying in Boston harbor.

21. On the 1st of June, with a raw crew and short of officers, he put to sea to meet the British frigate *Shannon*, which was waiting outside the harbor. An engagement took place about six o'clock in the evening some thirty miles from Boston light. After a fierce battle of fifteen minutes the British captured the *Chesapeake* and killed or wounded one hundred and fifty of her crew. Lawrence himself was mortally wounded, and as he was borne below uttered the since famous watchword, "Don't give up the ship!"

22. The death of Lawrence was felt to be a national calamity, as was also the loss of the brave Captain Allen and the capture of his vessel, the *Argus*, on the 14th of August. Allen had conveyed the American minister, Mr. Crawford, to France, and proceeded to cruise in English waters. He was quite suc-

cessful, and had captured prizes and property to the value of two million dollars. In the British Channel he fell in with the *Pelican*, a vessel of somewhat larger armament than his own, and in the battle which ensued he was mortally wounded and the *Argus* was taken.

23. These misfortunes were somewhat compensated for by the capture of the British brig *Boxer* by the American brig *Enterprise*, on the 5th of September. Both the commanders were killed, and the American *Burrows* and the Englishman *Blythe* were laid in the same grave at Portland, Maine.

24. During the years 1812-13 Captain David Porter did gallant and effective service at sea in his country's cause. In command of the frigate *Essex*, he captured the English sloop-of-war *Alert* and many merchantmen, and in a long cruise of more than a year in the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans afforded valuable protection to American commerce.

25. Although a little in advance of the time, it may be added here that on the 28th of March, 1814, he was captured in the harbor of Valparaiso, on the Chilian coast, by two British vessels of war which had been expressly sent in search of him. After one of the most desperate and bloody struggles of the war, he was forced to surrender.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What armies were raised for the campaign of 1813?
- 2, 3. What was accomplished by the armies of the Centre and the North?
- 4, 5. Describe the attack upon Montreal. What feelings existed between Hampton and Wilkinson?
6. What States were still held by the British? The army of the West?
- 7, 8. What event caused great mourning in Kentucky?
9. Describe the attack on Fort Meigs.
10. That on Fort Stevenson.
11. What active preparations were begun by both parties in October, 1812?
12. Who were the respective commanders-in-chief on the lakes? What were their forces?
13. Describe Perry's victory.
14. What good resulted from this victory? What did Harrison now do?



15. Describe the battle in which Tecumseh was slain.
16. What confederacy had been formed through the influence of Tecumseh?
- 17, 18. Describe the battle of Horseshoe Bend.
19. What is said of Americans on the sea?
20. What was accomplished by Lawrence in the Hornet?
21. In the Chesapeake?
22. How was the death of Lawrence regarded? Describe the capture of the American vessel Argus.
23. That of the British brig Boxer.
24. What of services rendered by Captain Porter?
25. When and how was he taken?

PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

MALDEN (Maul'-den).  
 MACKINAW (Mak'-in-aw).  
 DACRE (Dā'-c'r).  
 AZORES (Az-ōres').  
 BRAZIL (Brā-zil').  
 JAVA (Jah'-vă).  
 TORONTO (To-rōn'-to).  
 CRYSLER'S (Kris'-lers).  
 ST. REGIS (Sent Rē'-jis).  
 SANDUSKY (San-dus'-ke).  
 FREMONT (Fre-mont').

CROGHAN (Crō'-gan).  
 YEO (Yō).  
 CHAUNCEY (Chahn'-se).  
 MORAVIAN (Mo-rā'-vī-an).  
 CREEK (Krēek).  
 TOHOPEKA (To-ho-pē'-kă).  
 TALLAPOOSA (Tāl-lă-poo'-să).  
 BURROWS (Bur'-roes).  
 BLYTHE (Blithe).  
 VALPARAISO (Văl-pă-rī'-so).  
 CHILIAN (Chīl'-le-an).

CHAPTER IV.

MADISON'S PRESIDENCY.—CONTINUED.

1. At the close of the year 1813 a new Congress met, and it was manifest that the spirit of opposition to the war had greatly increased throughout the country, although the war party was still dominant. The New England and other commercial States were especially adverse to the policy of the government, and Massachusetts even refused to join in voting thanks to the victorious heroes of the navy. The celebrated Daniel Webster began his career in this Congress as an anti-war representative from New Hampshire.

2. In the early part of 1813 the emperor of Russia had offered his mediation between England and the States, which the American government accepted at once, and sent three commissioners to St. Petersburg to negotiate. England held aloof until the end of the year, when she, too, signified her willingness to treat for peace, and in January, 1814, two persons were added to the American commission, and sailed for Europe to join their three associates there.

3. Meantime, the belligerents continued to prosecute their warlike schemes with more vigor, if possible, than before. General Wilkinson broke up his winter quarters at French Mills and removed to Plattsburg. In March he attempted to enter Canada by way of Lake Champlain, but was repulsed, and threw up his command, General Izard taking his place. In the beginning of May, General Brown was placed in command of the army on the Niagara frontier, and, having made the necessary preparations, crossed the Niagara with five thousand men on the 3d of July, and took Fort Erie without a struggle.

4. Next day the American advance, led by General Scott, reached a plain on the south side of the Chippewa River, where, at midnight, they were joined by Brown with the main body. The British, under General Riall, were encamped within sight. On the morning of the 5th both sides were ready for the conflict. The battle that ensued was severe, resulting in the defeat of Riall, who, after losing five hundred men, fell back to Burlington Heights.

5. The hero of this brilliant victory was General Scott, who now moved forward to Queenstown with the intention of making a demonstration against Fort George, but, being unsupplied with cannon, fell back to the Chippewa. Riall was reinforced by General Drummond, who, taking the command, advanced against the Americans. At sunset on the 25th he met Scott at Lundy's Lane, leading the American advance, and immediately attacked him.

6. The forces were very unequal, the British numbering two thousand men, while Scott had only one thousand; nevertheless, here, within sound of the mighty cataract of Niagara, was fought one of the bloodiest battles of the war. Scott maintained

himself gallantly until dark, when Brown, with the main body, arrived on the field. The latter, perceiving that a battery placed upon a height was the key to the British position, called Colonel Miller to him, and asked him if he could take it. "I'll try, sir," was the reply, and, marching his regiment up the hill, he secured the coveted spot.

7. The British were three times repulsed in their efforts to recover the guns, and finally, at midnight, withdrew from the field, leaving the Americans in possession. Both sides lost heavily, each having about eight hundred men killed or wounded. The commanding generals on both sides, Drummond and Riall on the British, and Scott and Brown on the American, were wounded.

8. General Ripley, who was left in command, now drew off the American forces to Fort Erie, where he was besieged by Drummond, who made frequent attempts to capture the place by storm, but, having lost in these assaults over two thousand men, retired to Fort George in the latter part of September. Brown, who had returned to his post some time before, withdrew his army from the fort, which, by General Izard's orders, he destroyed, and went into winter quarters in November on the American side of the river.

9. When Izard left Plattsburg to take command of the forces near the Chippewa, he left Colonel Macomb in command, with about three thousand men. Sir George Prevost, now strongly reinforced by veteran troops from England—men who had served with Wellington on the Spanish Peninsula—advanced against Macomb with over twelve thousand thoroughly-trained soldiers. The American commander, unable to withstand so large a force, withdrew to the south side of the Saranac River, a rapid stream which the enemy could not ford without considerable delay.

10. On the 11th of September, when Prevost had made his preparations to attack Macomb by land, the English fleet on Lake Champlain, commanded by Commodore Downie, assailed the American squadron under Commodore McDonough which lay in Plattsburg Bay. Thus a combined land and naval attack was made upon the little American stronghold. Downie's fleet,

which consisted of sixteen vessels, carrying ninety-five guns and one thousand men, bore down upon McDonough, whose force numbered fourteen vessels, having eighty-six guns and eight hundred and fifty men. The contest was severe, and lasted for two hours and a quarter, when the entire British fleet was captured.

11. While the fleets were contending in the bay, Prevost tried to force his way across the Saranac, but was beaten back at every point by Macomb's little band, which had by this time been reinforced by about three thousand neighboring militia. As soon as Prevost saw what had befallen the fleet, he abandoned his assault, and that night retreated in great disorder, leaving his sick and wounded and vast quantities of military stores behind. This fruitless attack upon Plattsburg cost the enemy over twenty-five hundred men in killed, wounded and deserters, while the American loss was but little over one hundred. These successes caused the greatest joy throughout the land, and silenced for the moment the clamors of the anti-war party.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What feeling respecting the war still prevailed at the end of the year 1813? Which of the States were particularly opposed to the war? What celebrated person began his career in this Congress?

2. What offers were now made by the emperor of Russia? What commissioners were appointed?

3. What was done by the belligerents in the mean time?

4. Describe the battle of the Chippewa.

5. Who was the hero in this battle? What now followed?

6. 7. Describe the battle of Lundy's Lane.

8. Describe the siege of Fort Erie.

9. What reinforcement did Prevost receive? Where did Macomb retreat?

10. Describe McDonough's victory at Plattsburg.

11. What caused Prevost to abandon his attack upon Macomb? What was the enemy's loss? The effect of this victory?

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

ST. PETERSBURG (Sent Pē'-ters-burg).	MACOMB (Mä-kōm').
IZARD (Iz'-zard).	WELLINGTON (Wel'-ling-ton).
CHIPPEWA (Chip'-pe-wah).	SARANAC (Sār'-ä-nak).
RIALL (Ri'-al).	DOWNIE (Down'-e.).
BURLINGTON (Bür'-ling-ton).	MCDONOUGH (Mac Dōn'-ō).

## CHAPTER V.

*MADISON'S PRESIDENCY.—CONTINUED.*

1. DURING the whole of the year 1814 the entire Atlantic sea-board was blockaded by British cruisers. So effectively were the ports locked up that it was deemed prudent to extinguish the light-house lamps, as being of use only to the enemy. Blockading vessels also made frequent descents on the coast and inflicted great damage on the inhabitants of the sea-port towns. Several places in Maine were captured. Stonington, in Connecticut, was bombarded, and Cockburn continued his heartless depredations along the southern shores.

2. In the middle of August another British fleet appeared in the Chesapeake, commanded by Admiral Cochrane, having on board a large body of troops, variously stated at four thousand and five thousand men, under the command of General Ross. These were landed at Benedict, on the Patuxent River, twenty-five miles from its mouth.

3. Their design was twofold: first, to co-operate with Cockburn in the destruction of an American flotilla commanded by Commodore Barney which had greatly harassed the enemy's fleet; second, "to destroy and lay waste such places on the coast as might be found assailable." The first object was speedily accomplished, for on the 22d, Barney, finding the fleet of Cockburn bearing down upon him, and aware that escape was impossible, burned his boats rather than allow them to fall into the enemy's hands.

4. The next object of Ross was the capture of Washington, but instead of marching directly upon that city from Benedict he took the road by Bladensburg. The weather was excessively hot, and his men were so helpless from fatigue that a little spirited opposition would have driven them back to their ships. But General Winder, who commanded the Americans, could not get his raw militia to attack the enemy, so that the British met with no resistance except from a few brave marines under the gallant Barney, and a regiment of regulars.



5. They entered Washington on the 24th, and burned the Capitol, the President's house and other public buildings, together with some private dwellings, after which they hastily retreated to the fleet, which still lay on the Patuxent. This wanton destruction of public property on the part of the British subjected Ross and Cockburn to great obloquy; at the same time, it was a disgraceful affair for the Americans, who certainly did not show their wonted spirit.

6. At this time also Alexandria, below Washington, was attacked, and its shipping and merchandise surrendered to the enemy. Baltimore was next assailed. On the 12th of September Ross landed his troops at North Point, fourteen miles from the city, while the fleet moved up the Patapsco River to bombard Fort McHenry, then two miles from Baltimore, whose entrance it guarded. Ross was met by an advance corps from the city and killed in the skirmish which ensued; the Americans were, however, forced to retire within their defences.

7. The fleet, meantime, unsuccessfully bombarded the fort for thirty-six hours; and on the night of the 13th, General Brook, the successor of Ross, finding that he could make no impression upon it, embarked his troops and sailed away. During the bombardment of Fort McHenry, Francis S. Key, an American detained under the guns of an English vessel, whither he had gone to procure the release of some friends, wrote the song entitled "The Star-Spangled Banner." This has been adopted as the national hymn.

8. During the summer the authorities of Pensacola, a Spanish port of Florida, permitted the English to occupy their forts and fit out an expedition against Fort Bowyer, at the entrance to Mobile Bay, commanded by Major Lawrence. On the 15th of September the fort was attacked by a combined land and naval force, but the assailants were driven off after losing one ship and two hundred men, and were compelled to return to Pensacola.

9. General Jackson, who, in 1814, had been placed in charge of military affairs in the South, vainly remonstrated with the Spaniards for sheltering the enemies of a country with which they were at peace. He thereupon determined to take possession of the place, and accordingly, marching rapidly on Pen-

sacola, he captured it with little resistance on the 7th of November, and thus expelled the British from Florida.

10. Anticipating another attack on Mobile, Jackson next turned thither, but, finding that it was the intention of the British to invade Louisiana and capture New Orleans, he sent the bulk of his troops to that city, and went there himself in the beginning of December. He found the defences in a bad condition and the people in the greatest alarm. His energy and determination were, however, equal to the occasion. He erected fortifications, organized the militia, called for volunteers, and, to keep his motley assemblage of troops and citizens in complete control, proclaimed martial law.

11. Towards the middle of December, while Jackson was in the midst of his preparations, a British fleet entered Lake Borgne, carrying twelve thousand soldiers and four thousand sailors and marines. The army was composed largely of Wellington's veterans, and was commanded by Sir Edward Pakenham, a distinguished Peninsular general. To resist this large force Jackson had a small flotilla on Lake Borgne and five thousand troops, only one thousand of whom were regulars.

12. On the 14th the flotilla was captured, after a severe conflict, and thus the direct route to New Orleans was opened. By the 23d the British had established themselves within nine miles of the city, where Jackson attacked them successfully on the following night, thereby retarding their advance and obtaining more time to complete his line of defences within four miles of the town.

13. There, on a neck of land lying between the Mississippi and an impassable swamp, the American general threw up his entrenchments.\* To defend them he had now at his command six thousand men; but there was a great advantage in his position. The causeway, the only route to the entrenchments which the British could take, was scarcely a mile in width, and was

\* It is almost a pity to dissipate the idea of these entrenchments being made of cotton bales, but historical accuracy compels us to say that they were of *earth*. Cotton bales were tried in the first instance, it is true, but the first red-hot shot fired them and scattered the burning fragments among the powder magazines. They therefore were entirely removed.

completely under control of the American batteries. On the 28th of December and on the 1st of January the English commander made feints upon the batteries, but on the 8th of January, 1815, the grand assault began.

14. The British advanced in the face of a destructive fire from the American batteries, but, though they were literally mowed down by the cannon-shot, they pressed on, closing their broken ranks as they moved forward. When they came within gunshot of the works, the unerring rifles of the Kentucky and Tennessee backwoodsmen poured upon them their deadly fire. The brave troops faltered, and Pakenham, attempting to reform their ranks, fell, mortally wounded.

15. Wellington's veterans now broke and fled in dismay, leaving two thousand of their number on the field, while the Americans lost only seven killed and six wounded in the action. General Lambert, upon whom the command now devolved, retreated to his ships, and thus gloriously for the Americans ended the last land-battle of the war.

16. The capture of Commodore Porter's vessel, the *Essex*, has already been mentioned. The other naval engagements up to the close of the war were, on the whole, unfavorable to America. In fact, the little navy, which had won imperishable fame during the first two years of the war, was, by 1814, well-nigh exhausted, and no pains had been taken by the government to recruit its strength. Most of the smaller vessels had been captured, and the larger ones were held in the tight grasp of the blockade.

17. The American sloop *Peacock* captured the British brig *Epervier* off Florida, April 29, 1814. On the 16th of January, 1815, Commodore Decatur, attempting to go to sea from New York in the *President*, was captured by a British squadron of five vessels off Long Island, but not until his ship was completely shattered. The *Constitution*, commanded by Captain Stewart, engaged the two British sloops *Cyane* and *Levant* off Lisbon on the 20th of February, and captured both.

18. Captain Biddle, in the *Hornet*, captured the British brig *Penguin* near the Cape of Good Hope on the 3d of March, and on the last day of June (four months after the proclamation

of peace) the Peacock captured the Nautilus. The next day the vessel was restored to the British, the Americans having been informed that the war was over. This was the last hostile act of the second war with England.

### QUESTIONS.

1. In what condition were the American sea-ports? Who committed depredations on the coast?

2. What large British force appeared in August?

3. What were the designs of this force? Were they successful in their first object?

4. Describe the capture of the city of Washington.

5. What did the British do in the city? The effect of this?

6. What other city was attacked and captured?

7. Who attacked Fort McHenry, and with what success? What of the origin of the "Star-Spangled Banner"?

8. What was done by the Spanish in Pensacola? How did the English profit by this?

9. Who commanded the military affairs in the South? Describe the capture of Pensacola.

10. Why did Jackson remove his forces to Louisiana? What of the defence of New Orleans? What measures did Jackson take?

11. What British force now arrived at Lake Borgne?

12. What of the capture of the flotilla?

13. What great advantage had Jackson? Describe his entrenchments.

14, 15. Describe the battle of New Orleans.

16. What was now the condition of the navy?

17, 18. What captures were made on both sides at sea? The last hostile act of the war?

### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

BOWYER (Bō'-yer).

EPERVIER (Ā-pār'-ve-ā).

LEVANT (Le-vant').

COCKBURN (Ko'-burn).

PATUXENT (Pä-tüks'-ent).

BLADENSBURG (Blā'-denz-burg).

WINDER (Win'-der).

ALEXANDRIA (Al-ex-an'-drī-ā).

PATAPSCO (Pä-taps'-ko).

PENSACOLA (Pen-sā-kō'-lā).

BORGNE (Börn).

PAKENHAM (Päk'-en-ham)

CYANE (Sī-an').

BIDDLE (Bid'-d'l).

NAUTILUS (Naw'-tī-lus').

COCHRANE (Kōk'-ran).

## CHAPTER VI.

*MADISON'S PRESIDENCY.—CONCLUDED.*

1. PEACE between England and the United States was signed at Ghent, Belgium, on the 14th of December, 1814, but the news did not reach America until the 11th of February, 1815, when a swift-sailing British sloop-of-war arrived in New York from Europe, bearing the treaty, which had been signed by the commissioners of the two countries and ratified by England.

2. As the cry of "Peace!" ran through the city there was a spontaneous outburst of joy, and, as if by one impulse, houses were illuminated and citizens thronged the streets to congratulate one another. Throughout the country there were similar demonstrations. The United States Senate ratified the treaty on the 17th of February, and the official proclamation was made the next day.

3. The treaty provided for the cessation of hostilities, the exchange of prisoners, the restoration of captured places, the adjustment of unsettled boundaries, and for a combined effort to put an end to the slave-trade; but, strange to say, no mention was made of the two great points of dispute—the encroachments upon American commerce and the impressment of American seamen. Fortunately, the omission was practically unimportant; for peace in Europe had removed all occasion for difficulty. Nevertheless, the opponents of the administration found great fault with it for not having compelled Great Britain to abandon the "right of search."

4. The return of peace was, however, gladly hailed by all parties. The country was in a deplorable condition. Commerce was annihilated, every branch of industry depressed, the treasury empty and the public credit impaired. From the beginning the Federal party had been opposed to the war, and it was extremely unpopular in the New England States, whose trade, fisheries and commerce especially suffered—indeed, were totally ruined.



5. The dissatisfaction in the North had increased as the war progressed, and the reverses of the American armies during a great part of the time had added to the discontent. Towards the end of the year 1814, when affairs looked very gloomy, the feeling had resulted in the calling of a convention, at the instance of Massachusetts, to meet at Hartford, Connecticut, on the 14th of December. All the New England States were represented either in whole or in part.

6. The object of the convention was to consider grievances and devise means of redress; but it was accused of the intention of advising the New England States to act independently of the other States, which would have been a virtual withdrawal from the Union. Nothing, however, of this kind can be fairly proven from its proceedings; for after a session of twenty days it merely issued an address, moderate in tone, in which grievances were stated and an alteration in the Constitution of the United States recommended.

7. While the war with England was progressing, the piratical Algerines, supposing that the United States would be unable to retaliate, again began to prey upon American commerce. Under the pretext that the presents sent him were not what he wanted, the dey of Algiers had declared war and captured an American merchantman and reduced the crew to slavery.

8. A fleet of nine vessels, under the command of Commodore Decatur, was sent on the 9th of May, 1815, to the Mediterranean, and on the 17th of June, near Gibraltar, captured an Algerine frigate, and on the 28th appeared before Algiers and dictated terms to the dey.

9. The treaty was signed on board the commodore's vessel, and stipulated for the surrender of all prisoners, the indemnification of Americans for losses, the abandonment of the practice of enslaving Christians, and the renunciation of all claim henceforward to tribute. Tunis and Tripoli were similarly dealt with, and the Barbary pirates were taught to respect the rights of nations.

10. In 1816 a new bank, called The Bank of the United States, was incorporated, to continue twenty years, with a capital of thirty-five millions. This took the place of the national

bank, established in 1791, the charter of which expired in 1811. The new bank was made the depository of the public moneys. In the fall election of 1816, James Monroe, of Virginia, was chosen President, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, Vice-President.

**11.** On December 11, 1816, Indiana was admitted as the nineteenth State of the Union. It was a part of the North-west Territory, and was organized into an independent territory in 1800 and reduced in 1809 to the limits it now has as a State. It is bounded on the north by Lake Michigan and the State of Michigan, from which it is separated by the parallel of  $41^{\circ} 52'$ . On the east the meridian of  $84^{\circ} 40'$  divides it from Ohio. The Ohio River forms its southern and part of its eastern boundary, and divides it from Kentucky. Its western limit is the meridian of  $87^{\circ} 30'$  from Lake Michigan to the Wabash River, which, to its confluence with the Ohio, completes its boundary. It is about two hundred and seventy-five miles in its greatest length from north to south, and one hundred and thirty-five in width from east to west. Its area is nearly thirty-four thousand square miles.

**12.** It has neither mountains nor great elevations, but some parts are hilly and rugged. Still, it is generally either level or slightly undulating. It contains vast beds of coal, which must soon become immensely productive. Its climate is generally milder than that of corresponding latitudes on the Atlantic coast, but it is subject to sudden changes. The cold of winter is severe, but of comparatively short duration, while the summers are delightful.

**13.** The soil is generally good, and much of it very fertile, producing all the staples of the farm and ranking fifth in the Union in the production of Indian corn. This State was one of the early settlements of the French, Vincennes being founded about the year 1730, and traces still linger there of the characteristic cheerfulness of that people.

**14.** The administration of Madison, although subjected to severe criticism in its day, was a glorious one for the Union. The war with England, while it caused much damage to public and private property and was productive of great suffering,

gained for the United States the respect of Europe, and the American navy won imperishable renown on the sea.

15. On land the defensive operations were crowned with success, but the invasion of Canada was a failure. The blockade had the effect of establishing home manufactures, and the evils of war were more than compensated for by the recuperative energy of a free people. In nothing was this more clearly seen than in the speedy extinction of the national debt of one hundred and twenty millions of dollars which the war had entailed.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What act closed the war of 1812?
2. How was the news received in the United States?
3. What provisions were made by the treaty? What of points omitted?
4. In what condition was the country at the close of the war? What portion especially suffered?
5. What led to the Hartford Convention?
6. What obloquy is attached to it? What effect had this convention upon the Federal party?
7. What country took advantage of the late troubles of the United States?
8. How did the United States resent this?
9. On what conditions was a treaty made with Algiers?
10. What is said of the bank established in 1816? Who were now elected President and Vice-President?
11. What territory was admitted in 1816? How is it bounded? Its length, breadth and area?
12. What of its natural features and climate?
13. Its productions? What of its early settlement?
14. What of Madison's administration? What good resulted from the war with England?
15. What gave an impetus to home manufactures? What is said of the national debt?

---

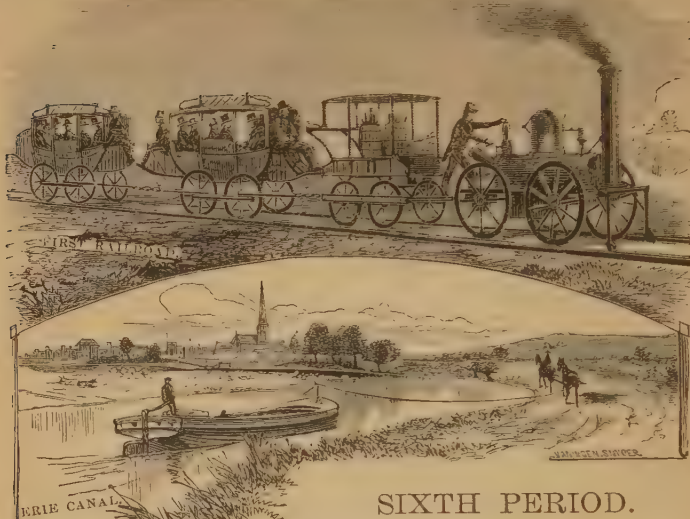
#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

GHENT (Ghěnt).

BELGIUM (Běł'-je-um).

ALGIERS (Al-jeers').

ALGERINE (Al-je-reen').



## SIXTH PERIOD.

## RAPID GROWTH OF THE COUNTRY.

## CHAPTER I.

## MONROE'S PRESIDENCY.

MARCH 4, 1817—MARCH 3, 1825.



THE SEMINOLE WAR.

1. JAMES MONROE, who was inaugurated President on the 4th of March, 1817, was, like all his predecessors except Adams, a native of Virginia. He had served in the Revolutionary war, had been minister to France under Washington and Jefferson—negotiating, under the latter, the Louisiana purchase—and before his election to the chief magistracy had held the place of Secretary of War in Madison's cabinet. He was thus well versed in public affairs.

2. He was a man of courtly manners and presence, and yet

an ardent Republican in principles and habits. He was the idol of the Republicans, and was popular with those who had been Federalists. Though more solid than brilliant, his single-hearted patriotism won the hearts of all, so that, at a time when party spirit ran high, he received an almost unanimous call to office, only one vote out of two hundred and thirty-five in the electoral college being cast against him.



JAMES MONROE.

3. Coming into power under such happy auspices, his administration has become known as "the era of good feeling." A complete subsidence of virulent partisanship in home politics, and the peaceful relations existing with foreign powers, particularly entitle it to this appellation. The country recovered rapidly from the effects of the war, and commerce, manufactures and all industrial pursuits sprang up again with renewed vigor.

4. Late in the year 1817 the Seminole Indians, living in Florida, joined by some remnants of the Creeks, committed depredations on the borders of Georgia and the new Territory of Alabama, which had been formed from the eastern portion of the Mississippi Territory. General Gaines, who commanded the United States troops in that region, tried to reduce them; but, finding his force too small, he asked for aid, whereupon General Jackson, who had command in the South, ordered out the militia and proceeded against them.

5. With one thousand mounted Tennesseans he overran the entire country, and, being convinced that the hostility of the savages had been incited by the Spaniards, he entered Florida and seized the forts of St. Marks and Pensacola. Two British subjects, named Arbuthnot and Ambrister, who were accused of urging the Indians to war and of supplying them with means to carry it on, having fallen into his hands, were tried by court-martial, convicted and executed.

6. Spain considered Jackson's invasion of its territory an act of hostility, and was very indignant; but Congress approved of



the proceeding, and negotiations were soon entered into with Spain for the purchase of Florida. In February, 1819, a treaty was made at Washington, by which the country was ceded to the United States for five millions of dollars due by Spain to its citizens, and the eastern boundary of Mexico was fixed at the Sabine River.

7. This treaty was not ratified by the king of Spain until the close of the year 1820, nor did Spain surrender possession until the following July. No sooner was the treaty negotiated, however, than immigration set in to Florida from the States, and ere long a considerable population had established themselves there.

8. In the year 1819 an agreement was entered into with England, securing to America the right of fishing on the coast of British America, and establishing the 49th parallel, from the Lake of the Woods to the Rocky Mountains, as the boundary between the States and British territory.

9. Four new States were added to the Union during President Monroe's first term, namely, Mississippi, December 10, 1817; Illinois, December 3, 1818; Alabama, December 14, 1819; and Maine, March 15, 1820. These, except the last, were all formed out of what had been French territory, Mississippi and Alabama being portions of the Louisiana purchase, and Illinois a part of the North-west Territory. So there were now twenty-three States in the Union.

10. Mississippi and Alabama are contiguous, and will, therefore, be best described together. The 35th parallel forms the northern boundary and separates them from Tennessee. The Chattahoochee River, from the 31st parallel to West Point, and a line from the latter place to where the 35th parallel cuts the Tennessee River, form the eastern boundary of Alabama, except the space between the 31st parallel and the Gulf of Mexico, which the Perdido River bounds. The 31st parallel constitutes the southern boundary of both States, except that part lying between the Perdido and Pearl Rivers, which extends to the gulf. The Pearl and the Mississippi constitute the western limits of Mississippi. An irregular meridian, which may be marked  $88^{\circ} 30' W.$ , separates the two States.

**11.** The north-eastern part of Alabama is somewhat hilly, but towards the Mississippi and the gulf the face of the country in both States may be described as a series of plateaus of gradual downward inclination, which, along the Mississippi, terminate in bluffs from one hundred to two hundred feet in height. The length of Mississippi from north to south is about four hundred miles, while its width is one hundred and fifty. Its area is forty-seven thousand square miles. Alabama is three hundred and thirty miles from north to south, and three hundred miles in extreme width. Its area is about fifty-seven thousand square miles.

**12.** The climate and soil of the two States are similar, both being extremely hot in summer, for they approach within seven degrees of the tropics; but the winters are very pleasant and salubrious. The soil, especially that of Alabama, is extremely fertile. Both States are large producers of cotton: Alabama especially is noted for the luxuriant growth of the great staple of the South. The sugar-cane is also cultivated to some extent.

**13.** Illinois is bounded on the north by the parallel of  $42^{\circ} 30'$ , which separates it from Wisconsin; on the east Lake Michigan, the meridian of  $87^{\circ} 30'$ , and the Wabash River, divide it from Michigan and Indiana. On the south the Ohio separates it from Kentucky, and on the west the Mississippi forms the boundary between it and Missouri and Iowa. The extreme length of the State is three hundred and eighty miles, and its greatest breadth two hundred, including an area of over fifty-five thousand square miles.

**14.** The surface is generally a table-land elevated six or eight hundred feet and terminating in bluffs along the rivers. The climate presents considerable variety, as the State covers five degrees of latitude. Generally the winters are severe and the summers hot, the breezes from the prairies having a modifying effect. In an agricultural point of view, Illinois is unsurpassed in the Union, the vegetable mould being often twenty-five feet deep. The staples of the farm are produced in great abundance.

**15.** Maine, although not admitted until 1820, was one of the

earliest settled places in the country. Before its admission into the Union as an independent State it was attached to Massachusetts, and in climate, soil and the character of its inhabitants it resembles the other New England States, except that its climate is still colder than theirs.

16. The northern boundary was long the subject of dispute between Great Britain and the United States, and at one time almost produced a rupture between the two nations; but by the treaty of 1842 it was fixed thus: the St. Johns and St. Francis Rivers to Lake Pohenagamook, then south-westerly along the Green Mountains to the north-east corner of New Hampshire. The 71st meridian, to the Salmon Falls River, and that river to the ocean, constitute its western boundary, and divide it from New Hampshire. The meridian of  $67^{\circ} 50'$ , from the Great Falls of the St. John to Grand Lake, and that lake and the St. Croix River, are its eastern limits, and separate it from New Brunswick. The Atlantic Ocean, which here deeply indents the coast, is its southern boundary.

17. Missouri had applied for admission during the session of 1818-19, but failed to obtain the sanction of the House of Representatives unless a clause prohibiting slavery were added to its constitution. Next year it applied again, and again the House demanded the prohibitory clause.

18. At length it was proposed in the Senate that Missouri should be admitted as a slave State, but that thenceforward slavery should be forever forbidden north of the parallel of  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , which was the southern boundary of the new State. This was finally accepted by a decided majority, and the agreement is known as the Missouri Compromise. The parallel of  $36^{\circ} 30'$  is the southern limit of Missouri, except in its south-east corner, and nearly coincides with the line which separates Virginia from North Carolina, and Kentucky from Tennessee.

19. There was at this time a growing feeling in the country against slavery. The arguments in favor of its retention, however, were numerous, especially now that it had become an established institution and could not well be got rid of. So far as legislation was concerned, it had become a mere question of

interest. In New England and the Middle States it was not profitable; in the States formed out of the great North-west Territory it was prohibited. Thus these parts of the country were, either from choice or from necessity, opposed to it. On the other hand, it was profitable in the Southern States, and it was natural for the people there to uphold it.

20. The question of the tariff—that is to say, a duty on foreign manufactures for the purpose of protecting home productions—was also now agitating the minds of the people. Shortly after the war, in 1816, at the instance of the South, and greatly against the wishes of the North, a tariff bill passed Congress. In 1820 it was proposed to revise this tariff by increasing the duties, but the States had now changed ground, the Northern States favoring and the Southern States opposing the measure.

21. In 1820 Monroe and Tompkins were re-elected, and entered upon their second term on the 4th of March, 1821. At this time the colonies of Spain in Mexico and South America revolted and established independent governments. These the United States acknowledged in the year 1822, and President Monroe in his annual message announced that “the American continents, by the free and independent position they have assumed and maintained, are henceforth not to be considered subjects for future colonization by any European power.” This, although the language of John Quincy Adams, Secretary of State, is known as the “Monroe Doctrine.”

22. In the year 1824, Lafayette, who had so endeared himself to Americans during the Revolution, paid a visit to the United States. He traveled through every one of the twenty-four States, and wherever he went was received with enthusiastic greetings and expressions of gratitude. He remained a little over a year, and was taken back to France in a national frigate named in compliment to him “the Brandywine.”

23. Monroe, having now nearly served out his second term, declined, like his predecessors, being nominated for a third, and four candidates were named for the Presidency, Andrew Jackson, John Quincy Adams, William H. Crawford and Henry Clay. None of these having received a majority, the election went to the House of Representatives, when Mr. Adams, of

Massachusetts, was chosen. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, had been elected Vice-President by the people.

**24.** Missouri, the admission of which had caused so fierce a struggle in Congress, is one of the largest and noblest States of the Union. It is bounded on the north by the parallel of  $40^{\circ} 46'$  and the river Des Moines, which separates it from Iowa, on the east by the Mississippi, which divides it from Illinois, Kentucky and Tennessee, on the south by the parallel of  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , which separates it from Arkansas, and on the west by the Missouri River and the meridian of  $94^{\circ} 40'$ .

**25.** The extreme length of the State is two hundred and eighty-five miles, and its breadth two hundred and eighty; its area is sixty-seven thousand five hundred square miles. North of the Missouri River, the land gently undulates, while on the south it presents every variety of surface. The climate is variable, the winters being exceedingly severe and the summers excessively hot, but the air is for the most part dry and pure. The soil is generally good, and in many parts remarkably fertile. The great staples are Indian corn and hemp, but all the productions of the farm may be raised in abundance.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. When was Monroe inaugurated President? What offices had he held?

2. How did he render himself popular?

3. By what name is his administration known? What happy effect had this?

4. Describe the trouble with the Seminole Indians.

5. What persons were accused of inciting the Indians to war? How were they punished?

6. How did Spain regard Jackson's invasion of its territory? How did the States obtain Florida?

7. What of the treaty?

8. What agreement was made with England in 1819?

9. What States were admitted during Monroe's first term?

10. Give the boundaries of Mississippi and Alabama.

11. What is said of the natural features of both States?

12. Their climate and productions?

13. Bound Illinois. Give its length, breadth and area.

14. What variety of climate does it present?



15. When was Maine admitted? To what State was it formerly attached? What of its climate?
16. What of a dispute in reference to its boundary? Its other limits?
17. Why was Missouri refused admission?
18. What do you know of the Missouri Compromise?
19. What feeling prevailed respecting slavery? What different views were held?
20. What is said of the tariff question?
21. Who were now elected President and Vice-President? What of the Monroe Doctrine?
22. What celebrated person visited America in 1824? What honors were paid him?
23. How was the next President elected?
24. Bound Missouri.
25. Its length, breadth and area? Its climate and soil?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

SEMINOLE (Sēm'-i-nole).

GAINES (Gānes).

PERDIDO (Per-de'-do).

IOWA (Ī'-o-wă).

POHENAGAMOOK (Po-hen'-ă-gă-mōök').

MISSOURI (Mis-soo'-re).

AMBRISTER (Am'-bris-ter).

---

## CHAPTER II.

### ADAMS'S PRESIDENCY.

MARCH 4, 1825—MARCH 3, 1829.

1. JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, who was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1825, as the sixth President of the United States, was the son of John Adams, the second President. He was a man of fine culture, and had been thoroughly trained in statesmanship by his illustrious father. He had served as minister in the Netherlands, Portugal, Prussia, Russia and England, and had been a senator and Secretary of State under Monroe, and was thus admirably fitted for the high office he was to fill.



JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

2. It was his misfortune—as it had been his father’s—to come into power at a time when party spirit ran very high. Elected by the House of Representatives, he was bitterly assailed by the friends of the disappointed candidates; and, both Houses of Congress and Vice-President Calhoun being committed to the opposition, his presidential term was uneventful. Still, his administration was one of wisdom and peace, and the country made rapid progress in population and wealth.

3. A difficulty now arose with Georgia concerning the Creek lands. This State had obtained from some of the chiefs of the Indians a grant of these lands, and determined to remove the occupants. The government interposed in behalf of the Creeks, and Georgia declared her intention to resist the interference. The disagreement was adjusted by the Indians consenting, for a large sum of money, to remove beyond the Mississippi.

4. On the 4th of July, 1826, the fiftieth or semi-centennial anniversary of American independence, occurred the death of the two venerable ex-presidents John Adams and Thomas Jefferson, the former aged ninety and the latter eighty-two years. They had lived to see the nation they had so materially helped to create prosperous and great. They died ripe in years and honors, loved and revered by the entire country.

5. The tariff question again became prominent in the debates of Congress, and, after an exciting discussion, what is known as the “high protection tariff” bill passed, in 1828. This was bitterly opposed by the South, and as eagerly advocated by the North.

6. In the midst of the intense feeling of the times, the presidential election of 1828 took place, General Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, and President Adams being the rival candidates. Jackson was elected by an overwhelming majority, and John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, was chosen Vice-President. This was regarded as a victory over the protectionists.

7. During President Adams’s administration the first railroad in the country was completed and the Erie Canal opened. It was an era of vast internal improvement, and was a period of great national prosperity. The debt incurred by the late war was rapidly diminishing, and there was a surplus of five millions of

dollars in the treasury. The only misfortune of the country was the existence of a bitter and malignant party spirit.

### QUESTIONS

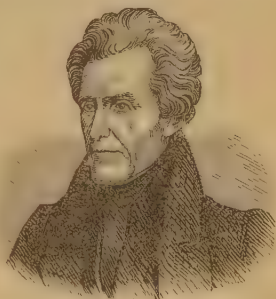
1. Who was inaugurated President in 1825? What had fitted him for this position?
2. Why was his administration an uneventful one?
3. What of a conflict between Georgia and the government? How was the difficulty adjusted?
4. What remarkable events occurred on the fiftieth anniversary of American independence?
5. What of the "high protection tariff" bill?
6. What of the presidential election in 1828?
7. Name the other important events of the younger Adams's administration.

## CHAPTER III.

### *JACKSON'S PRESIDENCY.*

MARCH 4, 1829—MARCH 3, 1837.

1. ANDREW JACKSON was inaugurated the seventh President of the United States on the 4th of March, 1829. He was in every respect a wonderful man. Born in obscurity, he rose, by sheer force of character, to the proud position of chief magistrate of the republic. We have seen with what energy and determination he conducted himself as a military leader; the same indomitable will and steadiness of purpose characterized him as President.



ANDREW JACKSON.

2. Upon coming into office he resolved to surround himself with his political friends, and therefore removed from office nearly every one who had opposed his election. It is said that during the first year of his administration there were seven hundred changes made in public offices, not including subordinate positions, while during the previous forty years there had

been but sixty-four. This inaugurated the system of "rotation in office" which has ever since prevailed, and which gives a markedly partisan character to each administration.

3. The party which elected Jackson was opposed to spending the public revenues upon internal improvements, and the President, as its representative, interposed his veto several times to annul appropriations for that purpose. In his first annual message he took ground against renewing the charter of the Bank of the United States, as he believed it to be unconstitutional.

4. This step was considered a high-handed measure, against a powerful corporation which had many very warm friends. When Congress, disregarding the advice, passed an act to re-charter the bank, his veto was deemed almost revolutionary. The bank party, however, was not strong enough to secure for it a two-thirds vote, so that the President conquered, and the Bank of the United States ceased to exist in 1836, its charter having expired by limitation.

5. In 1835 a war more formidable than any the country had yet engaged in with the savages broke out with the Seminoles. The cause was the usual one—the removal of that people from their home to lands beyond the Mississippi. The red men, under their famous warrior Osceola, prolonged the contest for seven years. Dashing upon the settlements from their lurking-places in the Everglades, they did great injury, and kept the whites in constant alarm.

6. On the 28th of December, as Major Dade, with one hundred and seventeen men, was on his way from Tampa Bay to reinforce General Clinch at Fort Drane, he was suddenly attacked and killed with all of his command except four men. This is known as "Dade's massacre." On the same day, as General Thompson and five of his friends were dining just outside of Fort King, Osceola and a party of Indians set upon them and killed and scalped them all. This was an act of vengeance for an injury which the proud chief had suffered at the hands of Thompson, who had imprisoned and put him in irons some time before.

7. Two days after, Osceola encountered General Clinch, with six hundred men, at the fords of the Withlacoochee, and, after a

hard-fought battle, was defeated. During February and March, 1836, he fought several times with General Gaines, at the head of more than one thousand braves, but was always worsted. The Creeks joined the Seminoles in May, and committed great depredations upon the settlers, compelling large numbers of them to flee for their lives. General Scott was at length placed in command, and prosecuted the war with vigor against the Creeks, who were soon reduced and transported west of the Mississippi.

8. But the Seminoles still continued the contest, which was conducted without much regard for good faith on either side. Governor Call, of Georgia, had a severe battle with the treacherous foe in October, 1836, near the scene of Dade's massacre. The enemy was beaten and dispersed, but only retired farther into the swamps, whence as opportunity occurred new attacks could be made and incalculable injury inflicted.

9. At length, in October, 1837, Osceola having come under a flag of truce into the camp of General Jessup, who was in command at St. Augustine, he was seized by order of that officer and sent to Fort Moultrie, where he was kept in confinement until his death, which occurred on the last day of January, 1838. Notwithstanding the loss of this chief, the Indians continued their warfare. Several able officers were sent against them, among whom was Colonel Zachary Taylor, but they were not fully pacified until the next administration.

10. In the West, also, there was trouble with the savages. In 1832 the Sacs and Foxes, living in the territory that is now the State of Wisconsin, led by the celebrated Black Hawk, a chief of the Sacs, made war upon the settlers in that region. In the struggle that ensued, Black Hawk, after whom the war is named, was taken prisoner, and the United States acquired a large extent of country and drove the Indians far beyond the Mississippi.



DANIEL WEBSTER.

11. In the winter of 1829-30 the doctrine of State rights—that is, the right of a State to determine for itself how far it



shall yield obedience to the national authority—came up for discussion, and was warmly debated by Daniel Webster, of



JOHN C. CALHOUN.

Massachusetts, and Robert Hayne, of South Carolina. The orations of both on the occasion are widely known. Calhoun, the Vice-President, was the leader of the State Rights party.

12. There was great divergence of opinion on the subject; and when, in 1832, new duties were added to the tariff, South Carolina, asserting that the whole system of protection

was unjust and unconstitutional, issued an ordinance declaring the tariff laws "null and void," and prepared to resist their enforcement, threatening to secede from the Union if any attempt were made to carry out these laws.

13. President Jackson, nevertheless, declared his intention to execute them, and warned the "Nullifiers" of the danger of their course. His unflinching attitude caused the South Carolinians to pause; and though the doctrine of the right to secede was not yielded, opposition to the supremacy of Congress was withdrawn. Mr. Clay at this time brought forward his celebrated Compromise Bill, by which the tariff was to be gradually reduced until 1843, after which no duties should exceed twenty per cent. on the value of the goods, and its passage allayed for the time the bitterness of party feeling.

14. In the fall of 1832 President Jackson was re-elected for a second term by a vastly-increased majority, and Martin Van Buren, of New York, was chosen Vice-President. Thus the verdict of the people stamped with approval the acts of the President.

15. His contest with the United States Bank, to which we have referred, was now going on, and in 1833 Jackson ordered all the public moneys in its vaults to be removed to different State banks, believing them no longer in safe keeping where they were. The removal of the government deposits made it necessary for the bank to call in its loans, and money became scarce. Debtors

throughout the country were unable to meet their liabilities, and great commercial distress ensued.

16. This caused an outcry from the friends of the bank and from the party opposed to the President, and led to the passage of a vote of censure on his course by the Senate. This was not expunged till several years afterwards. Jackson, however, firm of purpose, persisted, and, with the help of the House of Representatives, carried his point.

17. His vigorous foreign policy at this time was an especial source of pride to his admirers. In 1831, France had promised to pay five million dollars for damages to American commerce during the wars of Napoleon; but the money had not been forthcoming, and Jackson promptly ordered the American minister at Paris to demand his passports, urging Congress at the same time to make reprisals on French vessels. Matters looked threatening; but through the mediation of England the money was paid and the war averted.

18. On the night of the 16th of December, 1835, a great fire broke out in the city of New York, which destroyed six hundred of the most valuable stores and occasioned a loss of property to the amount of eighteen million dollars. This, with an order soon after from the President requiring payment for public lands to be made in gold and silver, and an act of Congress distributing the surplus revenue—above five million dollars—among the several States, brought about a period of unequaled commercial distress, the details of which belong to the history of the succeeding administration.

19. During the term of President Jackson two new States were added to the Union—Arkansas, January 15, 1836, and Michigan, January 26, 1837—making the twenty-fifth and twenty-sixth in the sisterhood. The first, Arkansas, is bounded as follows. On the north by the parallel of  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , which separates it from Missouri; on the west by the meridian of  $94^{\circ} 40'$  to the Red River, which divides it from Indian Territory; the Red River and the meridian of  $94^{\circ} 20'$  separate it from Texas and complete its western limit. The parallel of  $33^{\circ}$  forms its southern boundary and separates it from Louisiana, and the Mississippi forms its eastern boundary, dividing it from Missis-

issippi and Tennessee. Its area is fifty-two thousand square miles.

20. The side next to the Mississippi is a vast plain covered with marshes. Levees have, however, been constructed, which prevent inundation and render the land fertile to a wonderful degree. On the north-west are the Ozark Mountains, which divide the State into two unequal parts, the upper having the climate and productions of the Northern States, while the lower resembles Mississippi and Louisiana.

21. Michigan is bounded on the south by the parallel of  $41^{\circ} 40'$ , which separates it from Indiana and Ohio; on the east by Lakes Huron and Erie; on the north by Lake Superior; and on the west by the Montreal and Menomonee Rivers and Lake Michigan, which separates it from Wisconsin. The State, which is quite irregular in form, includes an area of about fifty-six thousand square miles. The climate is greatly modified by the surrounding lakes, yet it is, especially in the northern part, rigorous in winter. The productions are the usual staples of the farm. Michigan, notwithstanding its cold winters, is eminently adapted to agriculture.

22. In the election of 1836 the democrats were successful, and Martin Van Buren, of New York, was chosen President, the candidate of the Whigs—the successors of the Federalists—being General Harrison. Richard M. Johnson was elected Vice-President by the Senate, there having been no choice by the people.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Who was inaugurated President in 1829? What of his character as a statesman?

2. How was the system of rotation in office introduced?

3. To what was Jackson's party opposed? Why was he opposed to renewing the charter of the bank?

4. What victory did he win?

5. What war broke out in 1835?

6. What of Dade's massacre? What other outrage took place the same day?

7. By whom was Osceola defeated? What Indian tribe joined the Seminoles? By whom were they defeated and driven west of the Mississippi?

8. What happened in October, 1836?

9. How was Osceola captured? Did this close the war?
10. What Indian troubles now arose in Wisconsin? What name was given to this war? What was gained by it?
11. What question was warmly debated in Congress? Who took part in the debate? Who led the State Rights party?
12. What was threatened by South Carolina?
13. What of President Jackson's course? What is said of Clay's compromise?
14. What was the result of the presidential election of 1832?
15. What action of President Jackson caused great commercial distress?
16. By whom was his course condemned?
17. What difficulty threatened with France? How was war averted?
18. What disaster occurred in New York in 1835? What brought on great commercial distress?
19. What States were admitted into the Union during Van Buren's administration? Bound Arkansas.
20. What is said of its natural features?
21. Bound Michigan. How is the climate modified? What is said of its productions?
22. Which party was victorious in the presidential election of 1836?

---

PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

DADE (Dāde).	WITHLACOOCHEE (With-lā-koo'-chee).
OSCEOLA (Os-se-ō'-lā).	SACS (Sāks).
DRANE (Drain).	OZARK (Ō'-zark).
MENOMONEE (Me-nom'-o-nee).	

---

CHAPTER IV.

VAN BUREN'S PRESIDENCY.

MARCH 4, 1837—MARCH 3, 1841.

1. MARTIN VAN BUREN, the eighth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1837. He had been a senator, governor of New York, Secretary of State, minister to England and Vice-President under Jackson. For some time preceding his accession there had been a vast amount of over-trading and speculation. This was generally attributed

to the distribution of the public funds among the State banks, making money plenty and loans easy.

2. But immediately before his coming into office the two measures of Jackson's administration mentioned in the last



MARTIN VAN BUREN.

chapter—one requiring specie payment for public lands, and the other distributing the surplus funds among the States—withdrew a large capital from the banks, causing a corresponding contraction in loans and a collapse of all business and speculation.

3. Scarcely had Van Buren taken his seat when the financial storm which had thus been gathering burst upon the country. Merchants everywhere failed—those of New York to the amount of one hundred million dollars—banks suspended payment, eight States were unable to pay their debts, and two of them, Mississippi and Florida, repudiated them altogether. Even the United States treasury was crippled, for it could not immediately call in its deposits.

4. In this emergency an extra session of Congress was called in September, 1837; but it was unable to do much for the public good or to restore public confidence. To save the national treasury, however, from any similar occurrence in future, Mr. Van Buren proposed an independent treasury, and a law embodying this plan was passed in 1840. It provided that the public moneys should be kept, subject to the order of the Secretary of the Treasury, in the treasury at Washington and in the sub-treasuries to be established in the principal cities. This is known as the sub-treasury law.

5. During this administration the Seminole War still continued; and although the Indians were beaten at Okeechobee by Colonel Taylor on Christmas day, 1838, and a treaty was signed in 1839, still the war was not ended until 1842. The cost of this war, forty million dollars, and the unsatisfactory condition of the country, for both of which this administration was unjustly blamed, rendered Van Buren unpopular.



6. So, in the election of 1840, though the nominee of the powerful party which had so overwhelmingly elected Jackson, he was defeated by General William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, the Whig nominee, by a large majority. John Tyler, of Virginia, was at the same time chosen Vice-President.

7. In 1837 a portion of the Canadian people revolted against Great Britain, and those who sympathized with them in the United States came near involving England and America in another war. By the promptness of the President and the good judgment of General Wool, the difficulty was avoided. The people of Canada were soon after pacified, and returned to their allegiance.

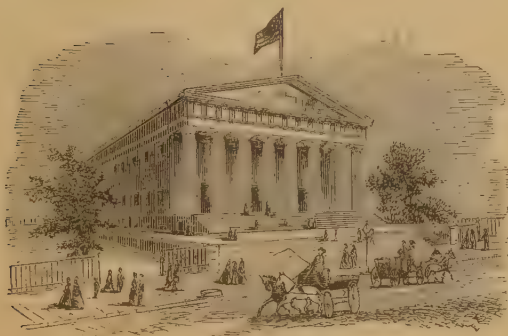
#### QUESTIONS.

1. What change took place in the presidency in 1837? What public offices had Van Buren held previously to this?
2. What financial troubles existed?
3. What evil effects had this?
4. What was done by Congress in 1837? What was done to save the national treasury? What was this law called?
5. What of the Seminole War? What two things rendered this administration unpopular?
6. How did this feeling show itself in the next election?
7. What is said of the Canadian troubles in 1837?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

OKEECHOBEE (O-ke-chō'-bee).



UNITED STATES BANK.

## CHAPTER V.

*HARRISON AND TYLER'S PRESIDENCY.*

HARRISON, MARCH 4, 1841—DIED APRIL 4, 1841.

TYLER, APRIL 6, 1841—MARCH 3, 1845.

1. WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON, ninth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1841.



WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON.

He is already known to the reader as the hero of Tippecanoe. His military reputation made him President; but, as he had no record as a statesman, it is impossible to tell how he would have succeeded as Chief Magistrate, for he did not live long enough to be tried. Beset by eager applicants for office—for rotation was now the established practice—he sickened and died just

one month after his inauguration, and John Tyler, of Virginia, in accordance with the provisions of the Constitution, succeeded him on the 6th of April.

2. Mr. Tyler was a warm friend of Henry Clay, and it was possibly owing to this fact that he was placed in nomination by the Whigs. Before the death of President Harrison an extra session of Congress had been called to meet on the 31st of May. The great object of this session was to re-establish a national bank. Accordingly, when Congress met, it abolished the sub-treasury system, and passed two bills for the establishment of a bank of the United States. Tyler vetoed both, and thereby drew upon himself the fierce denunciation of the party which had elected him.



JOHN TYLER.

All the members of his cabinet except Mr. Webster immediately resigned.

3. In 1842 the boundary of Maine, as it now exists, was fixed by Mr. Webster and Lord Ashburton. This had been previously a vexed question, and had seemed likely to lead to difficulty with England. In the same year occurred what is called the Dorr rebellion in Rhode Island. The charter of the colony, two centuries old, was still the constitution of the State. It was displeasing to the masses because it required the citizens to have a certain amount of property in order to vote.

4. An attempt was made to alter this, which resulted in a division of the people into two parties, the "suffrage party" and the "law and order party." Thomas Dorr, a leader in the reform, was illegally chosen governor by the former. After some trouble, during which Dorr was arrested, tried for treason, convicted and sent to prison for life, the difficulty was overcome. Soon afterwards a more liberal constitution was framed, and Dorr restored to his civil rights.

5. The Mormons, a new religious sect, gave serious trouble about this time, owing to their teaching the doctrine of polygamy. This was offensive to a vast majority of the people; so, when they settled in Missouri, they were driven out by the indignant citizens, and migrated to Illinois, where they fared still worse. They had founded a city there, called Nauvoo, and had become strong, their numbers being greatly swelled by immigrants from abroad. But, as they defied the laws, their leader and prophet, Joseph Smith, was imprisoned, and in 1844 killed by a mob.

6. Soon after, the Mormons migrated westward, and in the valley of Salt Lake founded a city and colonized an extensive area, in which they have collected a large population of believers in their doctrine, and which the United States has since erected into the Territory of Utah.

7. In 1844 the first electro-magnetic telegraph line was put into operation, between Washington and Baltimore. It was the invention of Professor Morse, who labored long before he was enabled to bring his idea to the test of public experiment. Now the telegraph is a necessity, and the name of Morse is a household word. In this year, also, the tenants of some of the old

"patroon" estates in New York refused to pay rent, believing that they could not be legally compelled to do so. It required the military to quell the disturbance which followed.

8. Two days before his retirement from office, President Tyler signed a resolution of Congress, permitting, under certain conditions, the annexation of Texas to the United States. The history of this affair is briefly told. Texas belonged to Spain, and had been considered a part of Mexico. The Spanish colonies in America revolted against the mother country, Mexico and Texas among the rest.

9. General Santa Anna, after numerous revolutions, became president of Mexico, and in 1835 abolished the constitution (framed after that of the United States) and made himself dictator. Texas refused to acknowledge him, and, under the leadership of General Houston, maintained her independence, which, in 1836, was acknowledged by the European powers and by the United States.

10. In April, 1844, Texas asked to be admitted into the Union, but there was strong opposition in Congress to granting the request; for it was felt that it would, in the first place, involve the country in a war with Mexico, and, in the second, would greatly enlarge the area of slavery, against which there was a strong and ever-increasing feeling in the country, except in the States where it was so profitable. A treaty for its admission was therefore rejected by the Senate on the 8th of July, 1844.

11. The question came before the country for decision in the presidential election of 1844, the candidates for the presidency having been specially nominated with regard to their position on the subject. The popular verdict was in favor of James K. Polk, of Tennessee, for President, who was the annexation candidate. At the same time George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, was chosen Vice-President. Encouraged by the approval of the people, when the question of annexing Texas again came up, Congress passed a resolution in its favor, and President Tyler signed it on the 1st of March.

12. Two days after, on the last day of his term, he signed the acts admitting Florida and Iowa into the Union. The former

became a State immediately, the latter not until December 28, 1846. Texas was admitted on December 29, 1845. Florida is, therefore, the twenty-seventh, Texas the twenty-eighth and Iowa the twenty-ninth State. They may be described as follows.

13. Florida is an extensive peninsula, stretching south-west from the thirty-first to the twenty-fifth parallel and terminating in Cape Sable. Its northern boundary is St. Mary's River to its source, thence the parallel of  $30^{\circ} 22'$  to the Apalachicola River, and from that river to the Pearl the 31st parallel. The Pearl River forms its western limit, and in all other parts it is bounded by the Atlantic Ocean and the Gulf of Mexico. Its peninsular portion is about one hundred and forty miles wide; its area is fifty-nine thousand square miles, of which but little is improved.

14. The country is generally level, probably nowhere elevated more than three hundred feet above the sea. The southern part is covered by an immense sheet of water filled with islands, called the Everglades. The reclaimed portions are noted for their exuberant fertility, and here the live-oak and the magnolia are found in all their magnificence. The climate of the State is very fine, and Florida during the winter has become a favorite resort for invalids from the North. Cotton, sugar-cane and a very fine quality of tobacco are produced, besides the ordinary staples, and the orange-groves of the State are famous.

15. Texas is a very extensive territory, lying between  $25^{\circ} 50'$  and  $36^{\circ} 20'$  north latitude. The Rio Grande forms a part of its western boundary and separates it from Mexico, the 103d meridian completing its western limit and dividing it from New Mexico. From this meridian westward to the Rio Grande the parallel of  $32^{\circ}$  forms part of its northern limit and separates it from New Mexico, and eastward the parallel of  $36^{\circ} 30'$  to the meridian of  $99^{\circ} 30'$ , and then the Red River, complete the northern boundary and separate it from the Indian Territory. The meridian of  $99^{\circ} 30'$  to the Red River, and that of  $94^{\circ} 20'$  to the Sabine River, and the latter river to the Gulf, complete its eastern limits and divide it from the Indian Territory and Louisiana.

16. The shape of Texas is thus very irregular. Its extreme length and breadth are, respectively, over eight hundred and seven hundred and fifty miles. The area included is more than



two hundred and thirty-seven thousand square miles, or five times the size of Pennsylvania. Every variety of surface and soil is presented, and it possesses a most genial climate. Its productions are very diversified, but cotton and Indian corn are the great staples, two crops of the latter being the annual yield.

17. Iowa is bounded on the north by the parallel of  $43^{\circ} 30'$ , which separates it from Minnesota; on the south by the parallel of  $40^{\circ} 30'$ , which divides it from Missouri; the great rivers Missouri and Mississippi confine it west and east, the former separating it from Nebraska and the latter from Illinois and Wisconsin. It is about three hundred miles long and two hundred wide, including an area of fifty-one thousand square miles. The climate in winter is very severe, but the summer season is delightful. The soil, which is fertile and easy of cultivation, produces the usual staples.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What is said of President Harrison's term? Who succeeded him?
2. Why had an extra session of Congress been called? Why did Tyler's cabinet resign?
3. What dispute was now settled? What of Dorr's rebellion?
4. What attempt was made? How did this end?
5. What religious sect caused trouble? What of their migration?
6. Where did they finally settle?
7. What great invention was put in operation in 1844? What is said of the "patroon" estates in New York?
- 8, 9. What of the former history of Texas?
10. Why was it refused admission in April, 1844?
11. Which party succeeded in electing a President?
12. What were the last acts signed by Tyler? How many States did the Union now number?
13. Locate Florida, and give its boundaries, area, etc.
14. What of its climate and productions?
15. Give the boundaries of Texas.
16. What of its dimensions, soil and productions?
17. Bound Iowa. What of its extent, climate and productions?

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

MORMON (Mor'-mŭn).  
 NAUVOO (Naw'-voo').  
 UTAH (Yoo'-taw).  
 SANTA ANNA (San'-tă An'-nă).

POLK (Pōke).  
 APALACHICOLA (Ap-ă-lă-chī-cō'-lă).  
 MINNESOTA (Min-ne-sō'-tă).  
 NEBRASKA (Ne-bras'-kă).



## SEVENTH PERIOD.

## WAR WITH MEXICO.

## CHAPTER I.

*POLK'S PRESIDENCY.*

MARCH 4, 1845—MARCH 3, 1849.



ENTRANCE INTO MEXICO.

1. JAMES KNOX POLK, who came into office as the eleventh President of the United States upon the 4th of March, 1845, was a native of North Carolina. He first attracted attention, as a member of Congress by his opposition to President Adams

the younger, but his reputation as a statesman was not widespread. His accession, however, had the effect of reuniting the Democratic party, which had become divided in Mr. Van Buren's time.

2. In the canvass preceding his election two questions had been prominent, the annexation of Texas and the north-western

boundary. His party advocated the first, and claimed the parallel of  $54^{\circ} 40'$  for the second. Thus he was committed to both. The boundary question was for a time threatening in its aspect, but the country receded eventually from this demand and in 1846 the parallel of  $49^{\circ}$ , which had been agreed upon in 1819 as far as the Rocky Mountains, was made the limit through to the Pacific Ocean.

3. The annexation question had, as we have already seen, been virtually settled during the preceding administration by the admission of Texas. Nothing, therefore, remained but to abide the consequences of the act. General Taylor, who had



JAMES KNOX POLK.

proved himself a gallant officer in the Seminole War, was sent into the new State, and in September, 1845, took up his post at Corpus Christi, near the mouth of the Nueces River. The Texans claimed the country as far as the Rio Grande, while the Mexicans would only concede the part lying east of the Nueces. The design of the expedition was to protect the

rights of the new State, and ward off the threatened invasion of the Mexicans.

4. Indeed, Mexico had some time before declared that the annexation of Texas by the United States would be considered an act of war, and, when it was received into the Union, had broken off diplomatic relations with the government at Washington. It may be doubted whether Mexico had any right to complain of the conduct of the United States, since Texas had for nine years gallantly maintained its independence, and had already been recognized by the European powers.

5. In January, 1846, Taylor pushed on to the Rio Grande, and, while establishing a depot of supplies at Point Isabel, a small band of his troops was surprised by the Mexican general Ampudia and either captured or killed. This was the first act of open hostility, and Congress, upon hearing of it, on the 11th of May, in obedience to the war spirit which animated the coun-

try, declared that "war existed by the act of Mexico," voted ten millions of dollars, and called for fifty thousand volunteers. Such was the excitement of the times that thrice this number offered their services.

6. But before Taylor heard of this, affairs had assumed so serious an aspect that he decided to act as if war already existed. After the capture of the reconnoitring party just mentioned, he saw that he must take the responsibility. Therefore, when the Mexicans crossed the Rio Grande in force, evidently bent upon the capture of Fort Isabel, he immediately marched to strengthen that place.

7. The two armies met on the 8th of May, on a plain named, on account of its stately trees, Palo Alto. The Mexicans numbered six thousand men, under General Arista, and the Americans twenty-three hundred. The latter, however, did not hesitate to press on to the attack. The contest lasted from noon to evening, when the Mexicans were driven off, Taylor's troops encamping upon the field. Arista lost six hundred men; the American loss was small, but among the killed was the brave Major Ringgold.

8. Another battle took place the next day within three miles of Fort Brown, at a ravine called Resaca de la Palma, or Palm Tree Pass. The Mexicans, though heavily reinforced, were again routed, and fled, after losing one thousand men, beyond the Rio Grande. La Vega, one of their generals, was captured by Captain May. Taylor now returned to Fort Brown, which had been gallantly defended in the interval by Major Brown, and which received the name it bears in memory of its commander, he having been killed by the bursting of a shell.

9. On the 18th General Taylor crossed the Rio Grande and took possession of Matamoras without opposition. Here he



TAYLOR'S CAMPAIGN.

waited for reinforcements, which did not arrive until the summer was nearly spent. Before September, however, he was prepared to continue his march into the interior. On his way lay Monterey, a naturally well-fortified city, and at this time defended by ten thousand men under General Ampudia. Taylor reached this place on the 9th of September, and immediately commenced operations against it.

10. By the 19th he found himself in a condition to attack, and after three days' severe fighting, in which Generals Worth and Quitman did marked service, he took the town, and the Mexican garrison surrendered. On the 24th, General Ampudia was allowed to march out with his troops and all the honors of war. An armistice for eight weeks was also agreed upon.

11. Meantime, the government at Washington, advised by General Scott, had determined upon a plan of operations. There were to be two expeditions, one against the far West and California, and the other against the capital of Mexico itself. The army of the West, under General Kearney, accordingly assembled at Fort Leavenworth. The army of the Centre, under General Wool, collected at San Antonio. The navy was to co-operate with these armies, one fleet to act on the Pacific coast and another on the Gulf of Mexico.

12. Taylor's force, too, now called the Army of Occupation, was heavily reinforced, so that he was in a better condition to act on the offensive. About the time of the fall of Monterey, General Wool set out from San Antonio, and in six weeks, after a laborious march, reached Monclova with about three thousand men. Here he received orders to abandon the expedition to Mexico, and turned southward to join General Taylor, to whose force the army of the Centre was now to be united. On the 5th of December he reached Parras, within supporting distance of Taylor.

13. The armistice between Generals Taylor and Ampudia was subject to orders from their respective governments, and, before the eight weeks had expired, Taylor was ordered to make an offensive movement. Accordingly, he sent a portion of his army, under General Worth, to Saltillo, and, leaving General Butler in garrison at Monterey, marched towards Tampico.



General Patterson, who led the advance, had reached Victoria, when he heard that Tampico had surrendered to a United States squadron under Captain Conner. This event occurred early in 1847. We must now leave Taylor's army for a while until we have followed the steps of the other forces up to a corresponding time.

14. During the summer of 1846, General Kearney, with eighteen hundred men, set out on his expedition against New Mexico. He accomplished the march of nine hundred miles to Santa Fé, the capital, and in August took possession of the whole province without opposition. After organizing a new government for the place, he proceeded westward, but was overtaken by a messenger, who informed him that California was already in the hands of the Americans. Leaving the great bulk of his forces under command of Colonel Doniphan, Kearney, with a squad of cavalry one hundred strong, completed the journey across the continent to the Pacific.

15. Doniphan, according to Kearney's orders, left a garrison at Santa Fé, and with the main body, not quite one thousand strong, marched through Mexico more than one thousand miles to Saltillo. On this journey he gained two victories over greatly-superior forces—the one at Brazitos, December 25, 1846, and the other at the Sacramento, February 28, 1847—which left the rich city of Chihuahua at his mercy. The time of service of his men having expired when he reached Saltillo, he took them to New Orleans and discharged them.

16. Kearney learned, while on his way to the Pacific, that the conquest of California had already been achieved by Colonel Fremont and Commodores Sloat and Stockton. In 1845, Fremont had been sent by the government to explore the Salt Lake Valley, California and Oregon. While engaged in his explorations, hearing that the Mexican commander intended to expel the American settlers from California, he went to their rescue, and, although he was not aware of a war having broken out between the two countries, attacked the Mexicans, routing them in every battle, and drove them from Northern California.

17. This was about the beginning of July. Later in the same month, Sloat, hearing of the war, took possession of Mon-

terey, and still later, Stockton, who superseded Sloat, captured Santiago and, in conjunction with Fremont, Los Angeles Kearney arrived, after incredible hardships, in time to prevent Fremont from assuming the governorship of the conquered province. We now return to General Taylor.

18. In the fall of 1846, during the armistice, the American government had offered the Mexicans terms of peace, but these were haughtily refused. It determined, therefore, to "conquer a peace," and to do this it was decided that the central part of the Mexican republic must be penetrated and the capital menaced. Accordingly, General Winfield Scott, as commander-



GENERAL WINFIELD SCOTT.

in-chief, was ordered to carry the war to the city of Mexico. The plan was to land his forces at Vera Cruz, capture it, and march upon the capital by the shortest route.

19. Scott, therefore, ordered Taylor to send him at once the best of his troops, and with them the brave generals Worth and Quitman. With twelve thousand men of his own command he landed near Vera

Cruz, March 9, 1847, and soon invested that city. After a fierce bombardment of four days, in which the fleet, under Commodore Perry, took an active part, the city and the strong castle of San Juan de Uloa, with all the armaments and munitions of war, surrendered on the 29th of March; five thousand prisoners and five hundred pieces of artillery fell into the hands of the victors.

20. General Taylor was greatly mortified when he received the order to send his best officers and men to Vera Cruz, especially as he had been about to commence active operations. By the loss of these troops he was left with only five thousand men, five hundred of whom were regulars. Santa Anna, the Mexican dictator, taking advantage of this weakening of Taylor's force, determined to crush him. With an army of twenty thousand men, he marched upon Saltillo from San Luis Potosi. Taylor, hearing of the movement, fell back to a pass eleven miles

from the town, named by the Mexicans El Angostura, near the plantation of Buena Vista.

21. This pass was protected on one side by rugged mountains, and on the other by deep ravines. Early on the morning of the 23d of February, 1847, Santa Anna attacked Taylor there, and so confident was the Mexican commander of victory that before the battle began, he sent word to Taylor he would give him one hour to surrender, which time was employed by the American general in preparation for the contest.

22. The conflict was a series of encounters, in which the Americans bravely defended themselves against the fierce onset of the enemy, who on each repulse fell back, re-formed, and renewed the attack. The battle ended only with the night, during which Santa Anna retreated, with a loss of two thousand men. The American loss was about seven hundred and fifty. This victory left the Americans in quiet possession of the region about the Rio Grande, which was not again disturbed during the war. General Taylor's brilliant military career was now ended, and shortly after, leaving the command to General Wool, he returned to the United States, where he was received with distinguished honor.

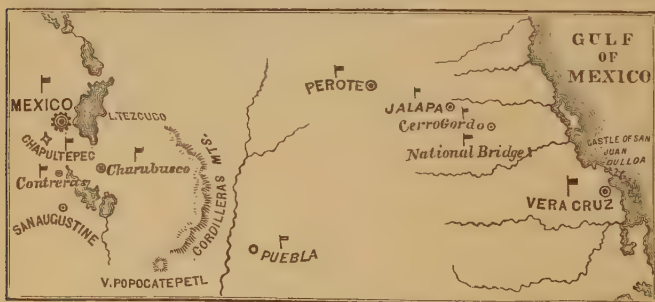
23. The remaining work of the war was left for General Scott, who, after the capture of Vera Cruz, immediately began his march to the city of Mexico. General Twiggs was sent forward with the advance to Jalapa, and on his way found the enemy strongly fortified at Cerro Gordo, under Santa Anna, who, after his defeat at Buena Vista, had taken possession of this mountain pass with about thirteen thousand men. Here Scott joined Twiggs, and with their united forces, nine thousand strong, an attack was made upon the enemy on the morning of the 18th of April.

24. Before noon the Americans had carried every position. By cutting a road through the forest and dragging his cannon up the precipice with ropes, Scott managed to get in Santa Anna's rear and take him by surprise. The defeat was a total one the Mexicans losing one thousand killed and wounded and three thousand prisoners, including five generals, together with all their artillery and baggage, and large quantities of stores.

Santa Anna himself barely escaped capture. The American loss was only four hundred.

25. Scott now took in quick succession the city of Jalapa, the castle of Perote, and, on the 15th of May, the ancient city of Puebla, second only to Mexico in importance. Here he waited some three months for reinforcements, Santa Anna availing himself of the interval, with surprising energy, to devise new means of saving his capital and harassing the invaders.

26. On the 7th of August, Scott resumed the march, with eleven thousand men, and in three days reached the crest of the Cordilleras. In the midst of the magnificent valley below him lay the proud city, with the towers of the Montezumas conspicuous to the view, defended by thirty thousand men strongly entrenched; far off rose the giant cloud-capped peak of Popocatepetl, with its snow-covered sides, its majestic proportions reflected in the placid waters of Lake Tezcuco, which lay spread out beneath.



SCOTT'S CAMPAIGN.

27. The Americans advanced cautiously, making a long detour southward, around a number of lakes, in order to avoid the direct road. At Contreras, fourteen miles from Mexico, they came upon an entrenched camp, which they carried by assault in less than twenty minutes. On the same day, the 20th of August, San Antonio was taken, and Churubusco, after a short but bloody conflict, yielded to the united efforts of Generals Worth, Pillow and Twiggs. Santa Anna was thus driven into the city of Mexico, after having lost in killed and wounded

four thousand and in prisoners three thousand men. The Americans in the same time lost eleven hundred men.

28. Next day, when Scott was within three miles of Mexico, Santa Anna asked for an armistice, for the purpose, as he stated, of negotiating a peace. The request was granted; but, finding that the treacherous Mexican was availing himself of the opportunity to strengthen his defences, the American commander declared the truce at an end, and ordered General Worth to storm Molino del Rey, an outer defence of Chapultepec.

29. Accordingly, on the 8th of September, the assault was successfully made, but not until the assailants had lost nearly one-fourth their number. Chapultepec only remained. This was a strongly-fortified castle, situated upon an almost inaccessible hill, and commanding the city. On the 12th, batteries were erected against it; and on the 13th, the place itself was carried by assault, Generals Pillow and Quitman leading their men, though at a great sacrifice of life. There was now nothing left to prevent the Americans from entering Mexico, for Quitman was already at the gates, and Santa Anna, with the remnant of his army, had fled.

30. The authorities came to General Scott, and begged him not to allow his army to enter the city; but, deeming it necessary to rest his men and to afford them some gratification after all their toil, he refused to accede to the request, and on the 14th of September the victorious American army entered Mexico, and the flag of the United States waved over the national palace.

31. The war was now virtually ended. On the 2d of February, at Guadalupe Hidalgo, a small town four miles from the capital, the Mexican Congress made a treaty of peace with the American commissioners. By this the Rio Grande, from its mouth to El Paso, thence to the southernmost bend of the Gila, along that river to its confluence with the Colorado, and thence a straight line to the Pacific Ocean at a point ten miles south of San Diego, was made the boundary between Mexico and the United States. New Mexico and California were thus added to the territory of the country. Since that time, the district known as the Silver Region, south of the Gila, has been purchased,



extending the limits between the Grande and the Colorado one hundred miles farther south.

**32.** For this vast region the American government agreed to pay fifteen millions of dollars and to assume debts to the value of three million five hundred thousand dollars due to citizens of the Union. This treaty was confirmed by the Senate, and peace was proclaimed by President Polk on the 4th of July, 1848. Hardly had the treaty with Mexico been concluded when gold in great abundance was found in California, and soon the new territory became a great attraction for immigrants from all parts of the world, and in a few years an immense population thronged the country which had hitherto been a desert.

**33.** The territory acquired from Mexico became at once the subject of political contention. While the war was progressing, David Wilmot, a member of Congress from Pennsylvania, introduced a "proviso" by which slavery was to be forever excluded from any territory which might be obtained from Mexico. This did not become a law, but it brought the subject of slavery prominently before the people, both in and out of Congress, and became the feature of the next presidential election.

**34.** In the ensuing political campaign three parties appeared in the field—the Whigs, Democrats and Free-soilers. The Whigs nominated General Zachary Taylor, the Democrats General Lewis Cass, and the Free-soilers Ex-President Martin Van Buren. The great personal popularity of the first carried the election for the Whigs, and General Taylor, of Louisiana, and Millard Fillmore, of New York, were chosen President and Vice-President of the United States.

**35.** In the year 1848, on the 29th of May, Wisconsin was admitted into the Union as the thirtieth State. It is bounded on the north by Lake Superior and the State of Michigan, from which it is separated by the Menomonee and Montreal Rivers; on the east by Lake Michigan; on the west by the Mississippi and St. Croix Rivers and the meridian of  $15^{\circ} 30'$ , which separate it from Iowa and Minnesota; and on the south by the parallel of  $42^{\circ} 30'$ , which divides it from Illinois.

**36.** Wisconsin is about two hundred and eighty miles in extreme length from north to south, and two hundred and fifty

in breadth from east to west. It has an area of fifty-four thousand square miles, nearly. Its surface is a rolling prairie elevated six to twelve hundred feet. The climate, though severe in winter, is free from those sudden changes which make more southern latitudes unhealthy. In the southern part the land is excellent and well adapted to agricultural purposes, and the usual staples of the farm are abundantly produced.

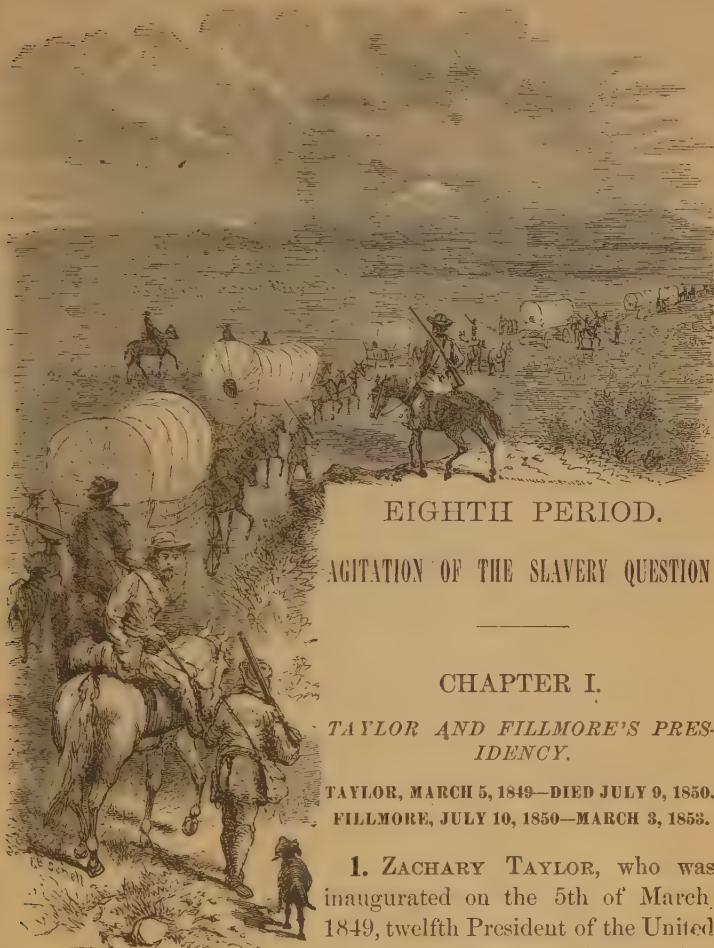
## QUESTIONS.

1. Who was the eleventh President of the United States? How had he distinguished himself before this?
2. What two questions were prominent during his administration?
3. What orders were given to General Taylor? The reasons for this?
4. What had been threatened by Mexico? Was Mexico right? How long had Texas maintained its independence?
5. What was the first hostile act of the war? What was immediately done by Congress?
6. What was done by Taylor before he heard of the declaration of war?
7. Describe the first battle of the Mexican war. What were the losses?
8. Where was the second battle fought? Describe the attack upon Fort Brown.
9. What place did Taylor now prepare to capture?
10. Describe the attack.
11. What two expeditions were planned by the government? The army and navy?
12. What was Taylor's force now called? How was he reinforced?
13. What orders did Taylor receive respecting the armistice? By whom was Tampico taken?
14. What was done by General Kearney in the summer of 1846?
15. What victories were won by Doniphan in his march to Saltillo?
16. By whom was California conquered? Upon what expedition had Fremont been sent?
17. What of naval victories?
18. What orders were given to General Scott? Why?
19. What preparations did he make for the siege of Vera Cruz? What was the result of the siege?
20. What was Taylor's position now? What did Santa Anna determine upon? Where did Taylor prepare to defend himself?
21. What did Santa Anna propose?
22. Describe the battle of Buena Vista. What did Taylor now do?
23. Describe the operations of General Scott.
24. Give an account of the battle of Cerro Gordo.

25. What of Puebla? How long did Scott wait for reinforcements? What use did Santa Anna make of this interval?
26. Describe the situation of the city of Mexico.
27. What three strongholds were now captured by the Americans?
28. Of what act of treachery was Santa Anna guilty?
29. Describe the capture of Molino del Rey and Chapultepec. What virtually ended the war?
30. What request was refused by General Scott?
31. What were the terms of the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo?
32. When was peace proclaimed? What happened in California?
33. What political difficulty now arose?
34. What was the result of the presidential election in 1848?
35. Bound Wisconsin.
36. What is said of its natural features, climate and productions?

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

AMPUDIA (Am-poo'-de-ah).	SALTILLO (Sahl-teel'-yo).
RIO GRANDE (Re'-o Grahn'-dā).	TAMPICO (Tam-pee'-kō).
HOUSTON (Hoos'-ton).	LOS ANGELOS (Loce An'-jā-los).
NUECES (Nway'-ses).	CHIHUAHUA (Che-wah'-wah).
CORPUS CHRISTI (Kör'-pūs Kris'-tī).	BRAZITOS (Brah-zee'-toce).
GUADALUPE HIDALGO (Gwah-dah-loo'-pā He-dahl'-go).	VERA CRUZ (Vā'-rah Krooz).
CALIFORNIA (Kāl-e-for'-nī-ā).	SAN LUIS POTOSI (San Loo'-is Po-to see').
ARISTA (Ah-rees'-tah).	BUENA VISTA (Bwā'-nah Veess'-tah).
LA VEGA (Lah Vā'-gah).	SAN JUAN DE ULOA (San Hwahn day Ool-lo'-ah).
KEARNEY (Kar'-ne).	JALAPA (Hah-lah'-pah).
MATANORAS (Mat-ā-mō'-ras).	CERRO GORDO (Sēr'-ro Gor'-do).
LEAVENWORTH (Lev'-en-wurth).	CORDILLERAS (Kor-dil'-le-rāz).
SACRAMENTO (Sak-rā-men'-to).	PEROTE (Pā-ro'-tā).
SAN AUGUSTIN (San Au-gus-teen').	PUEBLA (Pweb'-lah).
DONIPHAN (Don'-e-fan).	CONTRERAS (Con-trā'-ras).
MONCLOVA (Mon-klō'-vah).	SAN ANTONIO (San An-to'-ne-o).
PARRAS (Par'-ras).	CHURUBUSCO (Choo-roo-boos'-ko).
SLOAT (Slōte).	MOLINO DEL REY (Mo-le'-no del Rā).
SANTIAGO (San-te-ah'-go).	CHAPULTEPEC (Chah-pool-tā-pek').
SAN JUAN (San Hwahn).	EL ANGOSTURA (El An-gos-too'-rah).
PALO ALTO (Pah'-lō Al'-to).	POPOCATEPETL (Po-po-kah-tay pet'l).
RESACA DE LA PALMA (Ray-sah'-kah day lah Pal'-mah).	GILA (Hee'-lah).
MONTEREY (Mon-tā-rā').	



WESTERN EMIGRATION.

## EIGHTH PERIOD.

## AGITATION OF THE SLAVERY QUESTION

## CHAPTER I.

## TAYLOR AND FILLMORE'S PRESIDENCY.

TAYLOR, MARCH 5, 1849—DIED JULY 9, 1850.

FILLMORE, JULY 10, 1850—MARCH 3, 1853.

1. ZACHARY TAYLOR, who was inaugurated on the 5th of March, 1849, twelfth President of the United States, was a native of Virginia, but was brought up from infancy in Mississippi. His record as a soldier has already been given. To his success as a military leader he owed his elevation to the presidency, for he made no pretension to statesmanship; indeed, he took so little interest in public affairs that it is said he had not cast a political vote for forty years before his election.

2. When he came into power, the country was greatly agitated on the question of slavery, and this embarrassed the administration and threatened the disruption of the Union. The state of



ZACHARY TAYLOR.

public feeling developed itself when California applied for admission as a State in February, 1850, for the constitution under which it sought to be admitted prohibited slavery. The Southern States took offence at this, and declared that territory which had been acquired by the blood and treasure of the entire country should be open to the people of every section, with all their

property, and this, of course, included slaves. Besides, they considered it a violation of the Missouri Compromise, which made  $36^{\circ} 30'$  the northern limit of slavery, since a large portion of the new State lay south of that parallel.

3. On the other hand, in the Northern States generally, slavery was believed to be a great evil; and though there was no disposition to molest it where it already existed, it was felt that it would be a great wrong to extend it to new territory, and especially to territory where it had been illegal, which was the case in all the country acquired from Mexico. There were many other arguments adduced on both sides, and all the debates affecting the question were carried on with great rancor, which boded ill to the harmony—indeed, to the existence—of the Union.



MILLARD FILLMORE.

4. To obviate the impending danger, the Senate of the United States appointed a committee to devise a method of settlement. Henry Clay, the chairman of this committee, himself a slaveholder, but opposed to the extension of slavery, brought forward, on the 9th of May, 1850, a plan of compromise which included the admission of California under its constitution.



There were several other provisions in Mr. Clay's measure, which caused it to be jestingly called the "omnibus bill." These were: the formation of the two new territories of Utah and New Mexico without any stipulation on the subject of slavery; the prohibition of the slave-trade in the District of Columbia; the enactment of a stringent law requiring that all fugitive slaves should be returned to their masters; and the payment of ten millions of dollars to Texas for its claim upon New Mexico.



HENRY CLAY.

5. During the debate upon these questions in Congress, President Taylor died suddenly on the 9th of July, 1850, and Vice-President Fillmore was inaugurated President on the following day. General Taylor's death at this crisis was felt to be a public calamity, for the entire community had learned to repose confidence in his integrity and patriotism.

6. Millard Fillmore thus became the thirteenth President of the United States. He was a man of fine personal appearance and scholarly attainments, but beyond his own State, New York, he had no great reputation as a statesman previous to his elevation to the chief magistracy. He faithfully carried out the compromise measures of Mr. Clay, which passed both Houses of Congress on the 9th of September, but not as a single bill.

7. Mr. Clay's measures were undoubtedly the best that under existing circumstances could have been devised, and they received the hearty concurrence and advocacy of the greatest minds of the nation, Daniel Webster being one of their warmest supporters. But still they were subjected to severe criticism, and injured both those statesmen in the opinion of many of their former admirers. The enforcement of the fugitive slave act was especially obnoxious to the people of the North, and produced intense bitterness of feeling in both sections of the country. It was frequently evaded and sometimes resisted in the free States, and this alleged want of good faith increased the ill feeling in the slave States.

8. In 1851 about six hundred adventurers, familiarly known as "Filibusters," undertook to annex Cuba to the United States. Led by General Lopez, they landed on the Cuban coast, but were captured, and the leaders were shot without any interposition on the part of the United States government. In 1852 a difficulty arose with England about the deep-sea fisheries, which for a time threatened the then existing friendly relations with that power, but in 1854 the right of American fishermen to ply their trade anywhere in British waters was secured by treaty. To President Fillmore's administration is due the peaceful opening of the Japanese empire to American trade, a naval expedition having been sent out to that country in 1852, under Commodore Perry.

9. In the nominations for President in the fall of 1852, the Democrats and Whigs, who both adhered to the compromise measures of Mr. Clay, nominated respectively General Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, and General Winfield Scott, of New York. The Free-soilers selected John P. Hale, of New Hampshire, for their leader. General Pierce was elected by a very large majority, and at the same time William R. King, of Alabama, was chosen Vice-President.

10. California, which was admitted into the Union on the 9th of September, 1850, as the thirty-first State, is bounded on the north by the 42d parallel, which separates it from Oregon, on the east by the Sierra Nevada Mountains to Lake Tahoe, thence by a straight line to the Colorado River, where the 35th parallel cuts it, and from that point by the river itself; these separate it from Nevada and Arizona. On the south a line from the junction of the Colorado and Gila Rivers to ten miles south of San Diego divides it from Lower California; the Pacific Ocean forms its western boundary. It has an extreme length from north to south of seven hundred and twenty miles and an average breadth of two hundred and forty miles, with an area of two hundred and thirty-seven thousand square miles.

11. The climate is much milder than in corresponding latitudes on the Atlantic border, and the winters are short and seldom severe. The summers along the coast are perhaps less agreeable than the winters, owing to the ocean fogs. By the

inhabitants the seasons are designated as the wet and dry rather than as winter and summer. About a fourth of the area is fit for cultivation, but in the fertile parts the exuberance of production is remarkable. Much of the land has hitherto lain neglected, the digging for gold especially attracting the attention of the people; but there now seems to be a better system of tillage, which will no doubt eventually develop the agricultural resources of the State. Gold at present is the great production, and the yield varies from fifty millions of dollars upwards annually.

### QUESTIONS.

1. To what did Taylor owe his elevation to the presidency?
2. What was agitating the country when he came into power? What was considered by the South a violation of the Missouri Compromise?
3. How did the Northern States defend their opinion?
4. How did the Senate obviate the impending danger? What of the omnibus bill?
5. What public calamity now befell the country?
6. Who succeeded to the presidency, and what was his reputation?
7. What noted person supported Clay's measures? What increased the ill feeling in the slave States?
8. Who were the Filibusters, and what was attempted by them? What foreign country was opened to American trade?
9. What nominations were made for the presidency in 1852, and who was elected?
10. What State was admitted into the Union during Fillmore's administration? Give its boundaries.
11. What of its seasons and productions?

### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

LOPEZ (Lō'-pez).	TAHOE (Tah'-ho).
PIERCE (Peerss).	ARIZONA (Ar-Y-zō'-nă).
SIERRA NEVADA (See-ër-rah Nă-vah'-dah).	COLORADO (Köl-o-rah'-do).
	SAN DIEGO (Săn De-ă'-go).

## CHAPTER II.

*PIERCE'S PRESIDENCY.*

MARCH 4, 1853—MARCH 3, 1857.

1. FRANKLIN PIERCE, fourteenth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1853. He com-



FRANKLIN PIERCE.

menced his public life quite young, and was elected a United States senator from his native State, New Hampshire, as soon as he had attained the legal age. In the Mexican war he had signalized himself as an efficient officer and attained the rank of a brigadier. He came to the chief magistracy at a time when the angry feelings of the country on the slavery question had sub-

sided very much, and all things seemed to promise another era of good feeling.

2. The treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, owing to inaccuracy in the map used during the negotiations, left the boundary between the United States and Mexico ill defined. This being likely to lead to difficulty, a new arrangement was entered into in 1853, by which the United States became possessed of the Silver Region and the Mesilla Valley, and the present limits were accurately defined. For this tract the sum of ten millions was paid; and, as the negotiations were conducted by Mr. James Gadsden, it is popularly known as the Gadsden purchase.

3. Mention has been made of the expedition to Japan fitted out under President Fillmore's administration. It only remains to be said that in 1854 a treaty was made by which all the advantages of trade with that distant and hitherto exclusive empire were secured to the United States. Other expeditions, tending to the development of the country and the enlightenment of its inhabitants, were undertaken by this administration. The explorations of the La Plata River and the Pacific Ocean,

and of a practicable route for a railroad to the Pacific coast, were among these.

4. The hopes which the people entertained that sectional strife would gradually die out were unhappily not realized. The peaceful interval was but a temporary lull of the storm. Late in the year 1853 a bill was introduced by Stephen A. Douglas, United States senator from Illinois, for the formation of two new territories, one to be named Kansas and the other Nebraska, and leaving the question of the introduction of slavery to be determined by the inhabitants. This proposition was virtually one to annul the Missouri Compromise, for both territories lay north of  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , and the bill was therefore violently opposed by the North as a breach of that compact.

5. A renewal of the heated debates of former days was the consequence; and seldom had there been more passion manifested in the halls of Congress than was displayed during the discussion of the celebrated "Kansas-Nebraska Bill." It became a law in May, 1854. A bitter rivalry at once sprang up between the North and the South about the colonizing of the territory of Kansas, which lay in the direct line of Southern emigration.

6. Various attempts were made to organize a territorial government, but the elections could not be conducted peaceably. Violence and disorder prevailed, settlements were attacked, and for some years the lower portion of the disputed territory was in a condition little better than that of actual war.

7. This contest was still going on when the time for the presidential election approached in the fall of 1856. The Democratic party put in nomination James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, for President, and John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, for Vice-President. The Whigs, as a party, had ceased to exist, having become hopelessly divided upon the question of the Kansas-Nebraska bill. Those in favor of the measure sided with the Democrats, and those opposed to it formed themselves into a new organization, which has since become powerful under the name of the Republican party. The latter nominated for the presidency Colonel John C. Fremont, of California. Mr. Buchanan was elected by a large electoral majority.



8. A small party, known as the "Americans" or "Know-Nothings," who were organized on the principle of opposition to foreign influence, nominated ex-President Fillmore; only a single State, however, was carried by it.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What is said of Pierce before his election as President?
2. What troubles existed relative to the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo? How were they settled?
3. What of the expeditions fitted out during Pierce's administration?
4. What bill was introduced by Senator Douglas in 1853?
5. What is said of the Kansas-Nebraska bill?
6. What took place in Kansas?
7. What question caused a division among the Whigs? What new political party was organized in 1856? Which party was successful in the presidential election?
8. What secret political organization was now formed? Its success?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

MESILLA (Mā-seel'-lah).  
 LA PLATA (Lah Plah'-tah).  
 DOUGLAS (Dug'-las).

KANSAS (Kan'-zas).  
 BUCHANAN (Bū-kan'-an).  
 BRECKINRIDGE (Brĕk'-in-ridj).

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### BUCHANAN'S PRESIDENCY.

MARCH 4, 1857—MARCH 3, 1861.

1. JAMES BUCHANAN, whose inauguration took place on the 4th of March, 1857, was the fifteenth President of the United States. He had reached the mature age of sixty-six years, and had been in public life for a long period. He had served as President Polk's Secretary of State, and when he received the presidential nomination had just returned from England, having been ambassador there under President Pierce.

2. A large number of persons not belonging to the Democratic party favored his election, because they thought it would tend to "restore that national fraternal feeling between the different States that had existed during the early days of the

Republic." But it was soon found that popular passion and State jealousy had grown too strong for mere persuasion.

3. Soon after the inauguration, a decision of the Supreme Court, delivered by Chief-Justice Taney, excited a strong anti-slavery sentiment in the North. This is known as the Dred-Scott decision. Dred Scott was a slave, who had been taken by his master to Fort Snelling, in Minnesota, a part of the great North-west Territory, from which by the ordinance of 1787 slavery was forever excluded. Thence he returned with his master to Missouri, a slave State, and was there, with his children, held in bondage.



JAMES BUCHANAN.

4. Scott now claimed his freedom, on the ground that he had been where by organic law he was free, and that he could not legally be re-enslaved. The majority of the court not only disallowed his claim, but also added that the Missouri Compromise was unconstitutional; that slave-owners had a right to hold their property of whatever kind in the Territories; and that neither slaves nor their descendants, bond or free, could become citizens of the United States.

5. In the North this was considered as the removal of the last barrier to the extension of slavery. This and the fugitive slave law caused the enactment in several States of personal liberty laws, which gave great offence to the South.

6. To add to the unhappy state of feeling between the sections, John Brown, who had been prominent as a leader among the free State men in Kansas, on the night of the 16th of October, 1859, with twenty-one associates, seized upon the United States arsenal at Harper's Ferry, intending to arm therefrom such slaves as would join him. His aim was to excite a revolt of the bondmen against their masters. But though he held possession of the arsenal for two days, no slaves came, and he with a few adherents was captured, tried and executed.

7. At this time also trouble sprang up in Utah among the Mormons. As has already been mentioned, Utah had been created a territory in 1850, but it had not been properly organized until Mr. Buchanan became President. He sent out Mr. Alfred Cumming as governor in 1857, but the Mormons at first refused to acknowledge or obey him, and not until the general government had made a great display of force and expended a large amount of money did they submit to be ruled by any one save Brigham Young, their "prophet, priest and king."

8. When the time for the nomination of presidential aspirants came in 1860, the John Brown raid was still fresh in the memory of the South. The Democratic convention assembled in Charleston in April. A number of the delegates from different States, finding themselves unable to control the nominations, left in a body, and held a separate convention in June, nominating John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, the regular convention having nominated Stephen A. Douglas. The Republicans brought forward Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, and a small party whose motto was "The Union, the Constitution and the Enforcement of the Laws," set up John Bell, of Tennessee.

9. Mr. Douglas was the author of the doctrine of "squatter sovereignty," as the principle of the Kansas-Nebraska bill was popularly styled, and his party claimed that the actual settlers in a new State were the proper persons to say whether slavery should be introduced there; the supporters of Breckinridge asserted that slavery might legally be carried into any territory; the adherents of Bell expressed no opinion on the subject; the Republicans declared that they would respect the constitutional provisions in regard to slavery, but contended that it ought not to be extended into any new domain. With these widely-diverging principles the various parties entered upon the campaign.

10. Throughout the heated canvass that ensued, the Southern politicians declared that the South would go out of the Union if Mr. Lincoln were elected. But it was not generally believed in the North that this step would be taken. Abraham Lincoln of Illinois, was elected President, and with him was associated Hannibal Hamlin, of Maine, as Vice-President.

11. The Southern leaders said the government had fallen into the hands of their avowed enemies, and that it would be intolerable to remain longer in mis-called union with them. Moreover, in accordance with the doctrines of statesmen like Calhoun, they firmly believed that the States were sovereign and had at any time the right to reassume the authority which they had only delegated.

12. By the 1st of February, 1861, seven States—South Carolina, Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana and Texas—had declared themselves no longer members of the Union. Delegates from six of these met at Montgomery, Alabama, on the 4th of that month, and organized, provisionally, a new government, which was called the “Confederate States of America.” Jefferson Davis, late United States Senator from Mississippi, was chosen President, and Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, Vice-President. At the same time, all United States property within their limits was declared to belong to the Confederate States, and its seizure was ordered.

13. The North was for the moment stunned at the turn of events, and there was no unanimity as to what should be done. There was, indeed, a latent hope that war might yet be averted, and a prevailing sentiment that there should be no “coercion.” The border States were anxious for an accommodation; and, on the recommendation of Virginia, a “peace conference” assembled at Washington on the 4th of February; but after a fruitless session of three weeks it adjourned. Indeed, compromise was now impossible; for on the very day on which the conference met, the Gulf States had, as we have stated, formed a “provisional government” for themselves.

14. There remained at this time within the seceded States but two posts of importance which still acknowledged the authority of the United States. These were Fort Sumter, in Charleston Harbor, and Fort Pickens, near Pensacola. In each there was a small garrison, Major Robert Anderson commanding at Sumter, and Lieutenant Adam Slemmer at Pickens. Around these forts batteries were soon erected by the Confederates.

15. Anderson was short of supplies, and a vessel was sent from New York to furnish them. She arrived on the 9th of

January, 1861, but was fired upon by the shore batteries and forced to return. This assault upon the American flag was unresented; for hesitation characterized the government at Washington, while great decision marked all the acts of the authorities at Montgomery. In this sad condition of affairs, Mr. Buchanan's presidency expired.

16. During this administration, while some of the older States were endeavoring to shake off their allegiance, three new States were added to the Union. These were Minnesota, Oregon and Kansas.

17. Minnesota was admitted on the 11th of May, 1858, as the thirty-second State of the Union. It is bounded on the north by British America, from which the parallel of  $49^{\circ}$  separates it; on the east by Lake Superior, the meridian of  $92^{\circ} 30'$ , and the St. Croix and Mississippi Rivers, which divide it from Wisconsin; on the south by the parallel of  $42^{\circ} 30'$ , which is the limit between it and Iowa; and on the west by the meridian of  $96^{\circ} 30'$ , Big Stone and Travers Lakes, and the Red River of the North, by which it is separated from Dakota Territory.

18. The extreme length of the State from south-east to north-west is about three hundred miles, and its greatest breadth two hundred and eighty miles. It includes an area of somewhat over eighty-three thousand square miles. Though it has no mountains properly so called, it is the most elevated tract between the Gulf of Mexico and Hudson Bay. The climate is so severe in winter that quicksilver frequently freezes, but in summer the thermometer rises at times as high as  $96^{\circ}$ . The soil is excellent in the vicinity of the rivers, but in the drift regions it is too wet for cultivation. Wheat, oats, potatoes and Indian corn are largely produced.

19. Oregon, the thirty-third State of the Union, was admitted on the 14th of February, 1859. It is bounded on the north by the Columbia River, and by the 46th parallel, which separates it from Washington Territory; on the east by the Lewis Fork of the same river and the meridian of  $116^{\circ} 40'$ , which divide it from Idaho; on the south by the 42d parallel, which separates it from Nevada and California; and on the west by the Pacific



Ocean. The extreme length of the State from east to west is four hundred and twenty miles, and its breadth from north to south two hundred and eighty, and it includes an area of ninety-five thousand square miles.

20. It is a mountainous region, intersected by the Cascade and Blue ranges, which divide it into the lower, the middle and the upper country. Of these the lower or western part is very fertile; the middle affords generally excellent pasturage; but the upper or eastern is sterile, and not likely to repay the cultivator. In common with the rest of the western shore of the continent, the climate is milder than in corresponding latitudes in the east. Like California, Oregon has its wet and its dry season. Wheat is the staple product, but all the other cereals except Indian corn flourish.

21. Kansas, the thirty-fourth State of the Union, was admitted on the 24th of June, 1861. It lies between the 37th and 40th parallels of latitude, which separate it from Indian Territory on the south and Nebraska on the north. Its western limit is the 102d meridian, which divides it from Colorado; and on the east the meridian of  $94^{\circ} 45'$  as far north as Kansas City, and the Missouri River for the rest of the distance, separate it from the State of Missouri. Its extreme length from east to west is somewhat over four hundred miles, while its breadth is about two hundred miles, and it includes an area of more than eighty-one thousand square miles.

22. The surface of Kansas is a continued succession of gently-undulating ridges and valleys, and the soil is, for the most part, of unrivaled fertility. The coal-fields of Missouri extend for thirty or forty miles into its eastern portion, and give indications of being extremely rich. The agricultural capabilities of the State are great, and are being rapidly developed, the productions being similar to those of its neighbor, Missouri.

23. These three States have a combined area considerably larger than that of the thirteen original colonies taken together, and are destined, from their geographical position and resources, to take a conspicuous part in the history of the country. Already large towns and a rapidly-growing population indicate a prosperity hardly to be found elsewhere.

## QUESTIONS.

1. Who was inaugurated President in 1857? How had he served his country before this?
2. What persons voted with the Democrats at this election? Why?
- 3, 4. Describe the Dred-Scott decision.
5. What caused the enactment of personal liberty laws in the North?
6. What is said of John Brown's raid?
7. What troubles now arose in Utah?
8. What of the Democratic convention held at Charleston in April? Who were the nominees in the presidential election in 1860?
9. What were the views of the different parties?
10. What was asserted by the Southern politicians?
11. What was done by the South after the election in 1860? How did they defend this action?
12. Name the States that immediately seceded. What government was organized by them?
13. What is said of the Peace Conference?
14. What Southern posts of importance remained in possession of the United States? In what condition were they, and who commanded them?
15. How was the North prevented from giving them assistance?
16. What States were added to the Union during Buchanan's administration?
17. Give the boundaries of Minnesota.
18. What is its length, breadth and area? What is said of its natural features, climate and productions?
19. Bound Oregon. Give its length, breadth and area.
20. How is the State divided? What is said of the climate and productions of each division?
21. Bound Kansas. Give its length, breadth and area.
22. What peculiarity of surface does it present? What is said of its coal-fields and other productions?
23. How do these three States compare with the thirteen original States in area? What is said of their progress?

---

 PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

TANEY (Taw'-ne).

BRIGHAM (Brig'-am).

HANNIBAL (Han'-vĭ-bal).

TRAVERS (Trav'-ers).

DAKOTA (Dă-kō'tă).

IDAHO (I'-dă-ho).



## NINTH PERIOD.

### THE CIVIL WAR.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### *LINCOLN'S PRESIDENCY.*

MARCH 4, 1861—APRIL 14, 1865.



DRILLING OF TROOPS.

1. ABRAHAM LINCOLN, sixteenth President of the United States, was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1861. He was a native of Kentucky, but at the age of nineteen removed with his parents to Illinois, from which State he was elected.

His life furnishes an illustrious example of the manner in which honesty and industry may in the United States raise the humblest to the highest honors. From very small beginnings he became a lawyer, a State legislator, a member of Congress and a candidate for the United States Senate. In the canvass for the senatorship he was defeated by Stephen A. Douglas, but was

brought so prominently before the country in the contest that he was made the standard-bearer of the Republican party in the presidential campaign of 1860.

2. In his inaugural address the new President announced that he had no intention to interfere with the institution of sla-



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

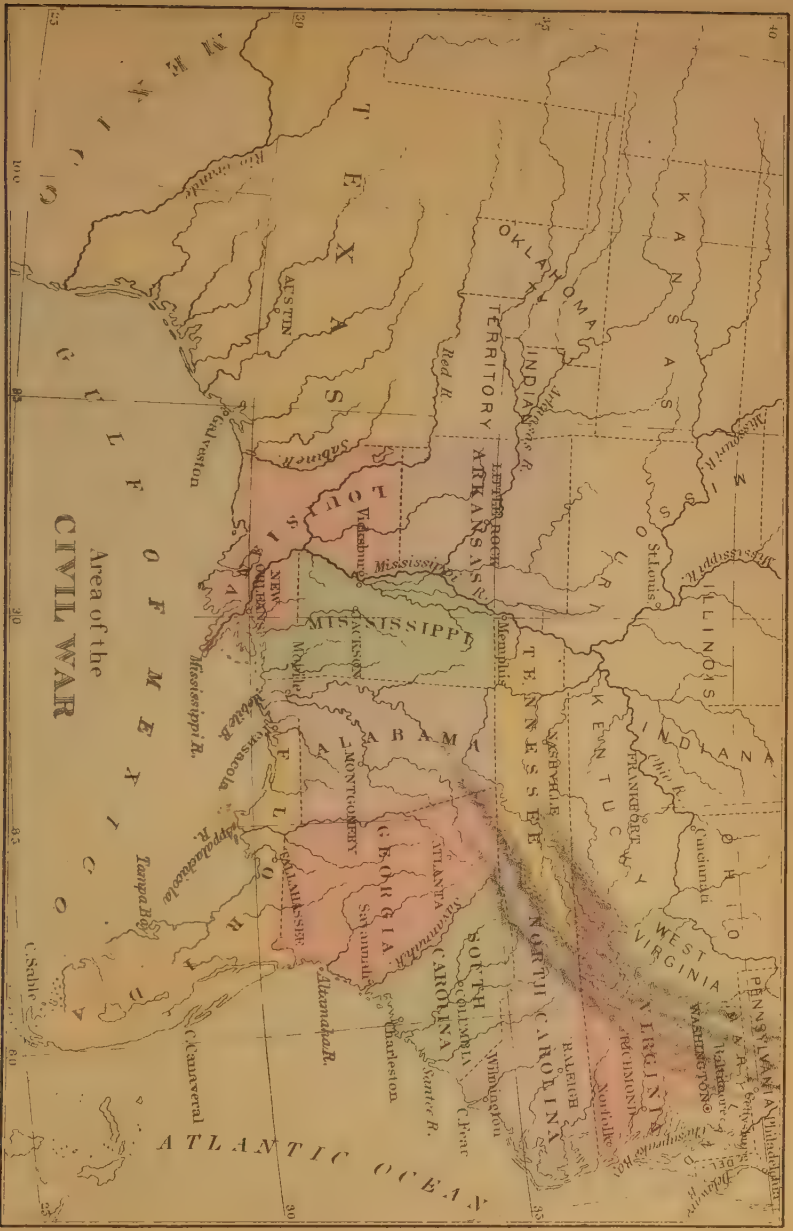
very where it existed, for he knew he had no right to do so. He was conciliatory in manner, and was manifestly anxious to bring about a peaceable solution of the existing difficulties. But it was too late. The South was already in the field, with no intention of retracing its steps.

3. Hearing that it was decided by the new administration to reinforce and provision Fort Sumter, General Beauregard, who commanded the Confederates at Charleston, resolved to drive Anderson and his little garrison out. On the morning of the 12th of April he opened his batteries upon the fort, and for thirty-six hours poured a heavy storm of shot and shell upon that brave commander and his devoted men, when Anderson capitulated.

4. When the news of this bombardment was spread through the North, indignation filled the hearts of all, and a determination to avenge the affront and restore the national authority was everywhere manifested. When, therefore, the President, on the 15th of April, called for seventy-five thousand troops, three hundred thousand volunteers immediately responded. The effect of the capture of Fort Sumter upon the South was also electrical; it removed doubt, and caused Virginia, Arkansas, North Carolina and Tennessee to join the Confederacy.

5. Fearing for the safety of Washington, now that Virginia had seceded, troops were hastily summoned for its defence. At the same time the Confederates also showed extraordinary activity. They seized upon Harper's Ferry Arsenal, and were about to take possession of Norfolk Navy Yard, when the United States officers in command there set fire to the build-

Area of the  
CIVIL WAR







ings, scuttled and sunk most of the ships and destroyed a large amount of property. Still, immense quantities of war material fell into Confederate hands.

6. No sooner were these seizures made than, all through the South, United States property of every description was taken possession of by the Confederates. President Lincoln thereupon issued a proclamation, on the 27th of April, declaring all ports in the seceding States closed.

7. The first active movement made by the national government to restore its authority in the South was on the 24th of May, when, by order of General Scott, a force was sent into Virginia, and Alexandria and Arlington Heights were occupied. On the 3d of June a small body of Confederates were surprised in camp at Philippi, in West Virginia, and routed. On the 10th of the same month a force sent by General B. F. Butler from Fortress Monroe was defeated at Big Bethel. These skirmishes were but the precursors of the gigantic struggle impending.

8. A Confederate army, one hundred thousand strong, soon stretched itself along from Harper's Ferry to Norfolk, protecting Richmond, which had just been made the permanent capital of the Confederacy, and at the same time threatening Washington. The strongest position of this line was at Manassas Junction. A large Union army, under General McDowell, marched to attack this force at the Junction on the 16th of July.

9. Some skirmishing took place on the 18th half-way between Manassas and a small stream called Bull Run; and at this latter place, on the 21st, occurred the first great battle of the war. The forces engaged were between twenty thousand and thirty thousand on each side. During the first part of the day the Confederates were worsted; but upon their receiving reinforcements the scale was turned, and the Unionists, panic-stricken, fled towards Washington, leaving three thousand men either dead on the field or prisoners.

10. The next day, July 22d, General George B. McClellan superseded General McDowell in the command of the army. McClellan was very popular, having just closed a short and suc-

cessful campaign in Western Virginia, in which his troops had defeated the Confederates at Rich Mountain, Carrick's Ford



GEORGE B. McCLELLAN.

and Cheat Mountain, and compelled them to retire from that part of the State. His accession was hailed with delight; and when Congress ordered a levy of five hundred thousand men, it was speedily filled, and a splendid body of troops put under his charge for preparation for the field. The remainder of the year was mainly occupied by him in accomplishing this end.

11. Skirmishes frequently occurred, but these, with one exception, must be passed over. At Ball's Bluff, on the 21st of October, two thousand Federals had crossed the Potomac to reconnoitre, but were driven back by a superior force, and lost one-half their number.

12. While these things were going on in the East, the Confederates in the West were making every effort to take Missouri out of the Union. They were foiled through the prompt action of Captain Nathaniel Lyon, who broke up Camp Jackson and saved the United States arsenal at St. Louis, and on the 17th of June obtained a victory at Booneville. On the 5th of July, Colonel Franz Sigel was attacked by a greatly-superior force of Missourians at Carthage, and, after a gallant contest, retreated and joined Lyon. On the 10th of August, Lyon, who had been promoted to the rank of general, was killed at Wilson's Creek while leading his troops in a bayonet charge.

13. Kentucky, like all the border States, was in an unhappy position. Her people were divided upon the great question at issue, and it was no uncommon thing to find citizens of the same place, and even members of the same family, enlisted on opposite sides. Early in September, the Confederate government ordered General Leonidas Polk to take possession of the State, and he at once occupied and fortified Columbus, thus blocking up the Mississippi.

14. On the opposite bank of the river, in the State of Missouri,

Belmont was also held by the Confederates. Here General U. S. Grant, with a body of three thousand men, moving from Cairo, Illinois, made an attack on the 7th of November, driving the garrison to their boats; but, the guns of Columbus being brought to bear against him, he was in turn compelled to retreat.

15. After General McClellan's promotion to the command of the army around Washington, now called the "Army of the Potomac," his place in Western Virginia was well supplied by Generals Rosecrans, Benham and Reynolds, who foiled all the efforts of the Confederates to regain that part of the State. General Scott now resigned, being too old for active service, and McClellan, who was gradually gathering together an immense army unsurpassed in appointments and efficiency, was made general-in-chief of the national forces.

16. The North was not wanting in its duty, and men and money were furnished with unsparing liberality. The patriotism of individuals was manifested by numerous munificent gifts in aid of the maintenance of the Union. Congress voted the large sum of five hundred millions of dollars to carry on the war, and the President by proclamation forbade all intercourse with the seceding States.

17. The Confederate government was equally active, and every means was adopted that a brave people could devise to gain ends which they believed themselves justified in seeking. Commissions were offered to privateers, and agents were sent abroad to secure recognition and solicit aid. Messrs. Mason and Slidell were sent, one to England and the other to France, which countries had already acknowledged the seceding States as belligerents. Making their way to Cuba, the commissioners took passage at Havana for England on board the British merchant steamer Trent. Captain Wilkes, commander of the United States sloop-of-war San Jacinto, stopped this vessel at sea, and, taking off the envoys, brought them to the United States.

18. When the news of this affair reached England, there was intense excitement, and an immediate demand made for the release of the commissioners. The American government dis-

avowed the action of Wilkes, made a satisfactory apology, and sent Mason and Slidell to their proposed destination.

19. During the year 1861 two joint naval and military expeditions were fitted out against the South. The first of these, under Commodore Stringham and General Butler, captured two forts defending Hatteras Inlet, on the 29th of August. The second, under Commodore Dupont and General Thomas W. Sherman, after a brilliant engagement, took Forts Walker and Beauregard, at the entrance to Port Royal Harbor, South Carolina; and this harbor became thenceforward the great depot for naval and military supplies and a rendezvous for the blockading fleet off the Southern coast.

20. The increase of the navy was one of the first things to which the administration had found it necessary to direct its attention. New vessels were built, old ones repaired, merchantmen purchased or chartered, and gun-boats for river and harbor purposes constructed, so that at the end of the year the naval force numbered over two hundred serviceable vessels of all kinds, armed and equipped in the best possible manner.

21. The Confederates also fitted out a large number of vessels, which did wonderful execution. Incalculable damage was done to United States commerce by privateering, and in the first year of the war the Confederate captain Semmes was a great object of dread to Northern merchantmen. He ran the blockade of New Orleans June 30, 1861, and, after capturing a large number of vessels, took refuge in the British port of Nassau, where he received supplies, and then proceeded upon his work of destruction. At length he crossed the Atlantic and entered the harbor of Gibraltar, where he was intercepted by a Federal gun-boat, and to prevent the capture of his vessel he sold it. He went to England with his crew, and there purchased a faster steamer, the *Alabama*, with which he continued his depredations on American vessels.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Who was inaugurated President in 1861? What is said of his previous career? What contest made him prominent?
2. What of his inaugural address?



3. Who was the commander of the Confederate army at Charleston? Describe the attack upon and surrender of Fort Sumter.
4. How did the North show its determination to avenge this affront? What effect had the capture of Sumter upon the South?
5. What places and property were now seized by the Confederates?
6. What proclamation was now issued by the President?
7. What was the first active movement made by the national government? What of the battle of Big Bethel?
8. What was the capital of the Confederacy? Who was sent to attack Manassas Junction?
9. When and where was the first great battle of the war fought? The result?
10. Who superseded General McDowell? What had rendered him popular? What did he now do?
11. What occurred at Ball's Bluff?
12. What attempts were made to take Missouri out of the Union? What of the battle of Wilson's Creek?
13. What part had Kentucky taken thus far in the conflict? What was done at Columbus?
14. What did General Grant do?
15. What was known as the Army of the Potomac? Why did Scott resign, and who succeeded him?
16. What sum was voted by Congress to carry on the war? What patriotism was shown by private individuals?
17. How did the Confederate government show its activity? What foreign powers recognized the seceding States? What is said of the seizure of Mason and Slidell?
18. What demands were made by England?
19. Describe the joint naval and military expeditions sent out in 1861.
20. How did the United States increase its navy?
21. What is said of the Confederate navy? What was done by Captain Semmes? What of the Alabama?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

BEAUREGARD (Bö'-re-gard).

NORFOLK (Nör'-fök).

PHILIPPI (Fī-lip'-pe).

BETHEL (Beth'-el).

MANASSAS (Mă-nas'-säs).

MCDOWELL (Măk-dow'-el).

MCCLELLAN (Măk-klēl'-lăn).

SIGEL (Sē'-gel).

HAVANA (Hah-van'-nah).

SAN JACINTO (San Jah-sin'-to).

SLIDELL (Sli-del').

CAIRO (Kā'-ro).

ROSECRANS (Rōz'-kranz).

HATTERAS (Hat'-er-ăs).

STRINGHAM (String'-ăm).

DU PONT (Doo-pont').

SEMMEs (Sems).

NASSAU (Nas'-saw).

## CHAPTER II.

*LINCOLN'S PRESIDENCY.—CONTINUED.*

## SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR—1862.

1. THE year 1861 had been, virtually, one of preparation. Both sides were engaged in a work of immense proportions, and both had nerved themselves for the terrific struggle. The North had now an army of over five hundred thousand effective men in the field, while the South had only three hundred and fifty thousand. The latter had, however, the advantage of fighting on the inside of the circle, which enabled them at any time more readily to concentrate their strength.

2. The Federal campaign for 1862, although very extended in its operations, was simple in its plan. The object was three-fold—the opening of the Mississippi, the blockade of the Southern ports, and the capture of Richmond. The rescue of the border States from invasion was, of course, involved in this scheme. To accomplish its purpose the government had made the following disposition of its forces.

3. In the West, General Buell had a large army in Kentucky, with his headquarters at Louisville; General Halleck with a powerful force occupied Missouri, having St. Louis as his central point; and Commodore Foote was at Cairo with a large fleet of gun-boats to co-operate with either general. Supporting armies occupied the line between the main forces.

4. In the East, General McClellan's immense army lay along the Potomac, ready to move against Richmond. The blockade was to be closely maintained, and two naval and military expeditions were to be sent out—one, under Commodore Goldsborough and General Burnside, to capture the forts on Roanoke Island, on the coast of North Carolina, and the other, under Captain Farragut and General B. F. Butler, to enter the Mississippi, capture New Orleans, and aid in opening the entire river.

5. The Confederates, we have seen, occupied Columbus on the Mississippi. They also held Bowling Green on the Big Barren River, Fort Henry on the Tennessee, and Fort Donel-

son on the Cumberland. The capture of these two forts was determined upon by General Halleck.

6. Commodore Foote was sent up the Tennessee with his gun-boats, and General Grant was ordered to co-operate by land. Before Grant reached the place, Fort Henry, after a heavy bombardment, had surrendered to Foote, on the 6th of February; three thousand of the garrison, however, escaped to Fort Donelson. The latter fort was only twelve miles from Fort Henry, but on the Cumberland River; therefore, before Grant could venture to assail it he had to wait until Foote brought his boats from the Tennessee to the Cumberland, which occupied eight days, or until the 14th.

7. Fort Donelson was a much stronger place than Fort Henry, and had a garrison of fifteen thousand men when the Union forces approached. It was first assaulted on the 14th, and the battle continued for three days. The fleet was badly damaged, and Commodore Foote wounded. But Grant, having been reinforced until his army numbered thirty thousand, so pressed the Confederates that, after a spirited resistance, they surrendered on the 16th with over thirteen thousand men.

8. This brilliant Union victory compelled the evacuation of Columbus and Nashville. Buell at once occupied the latter place, and the Confederates retreated to Corinth, where they collected a powerful army under Generals Sydney Johnston and Beauregard. Early in April the Union forces ascended the Tennessee to Pittsburg Landing, General Grant being placed in command. Here we must leave the combatants until we have brought up to date the movements of the other Union forces.

9. Mention has been made of the projected expedition against Roanoke Island. The fleet sailed from Hampton Roads, and after encountering a terrible storm, reached Hatteras Inlet on the 27th of January, and entered Pamlico Sound. On the 8th of February, the army, assisted by the guns of the fleet, attacked and captured the fort on Roanoke Island, taking twenty-five hundred prisoners. Two days after, the whole Confederate fleet in the Sound was either captured or destroyed; and on the 14th of the month, New-Berne, after a sanguinary battle, fell into the hands of Burnside. The crowning success

of the expedition was the capture, on the 25th of April, of Fort Macon, which defended the harbor of Beaufort.

10. While Burnside was thus employed in North Carolina, an expedition was fitted out at Port Royal, South Carolina, against the sea-ports of Georgia and Florida; and, during the month of March, Darien and Brunswick in the former State, and Fernandina, Jacksonville and St. Augustine in the latter, were taken possession of by Federal forces. On the 11th of April, Fort Pulaski, at the mouth of the Savannah River, was captured by General Hunter, after a severe bombardment.

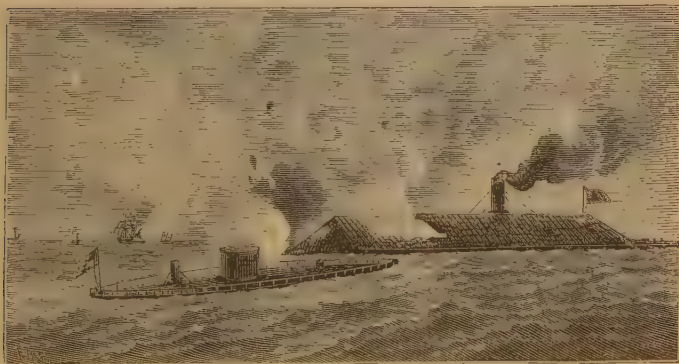
11. While the naval enterprises on the Atlantic coast were thus fortunate, the expedition sent out against New Orleans proved equally successful. It consisted of forty-five vessels, and a land-force of fifteen thousand men. Early in March it assembled at Ship Island, near the mouth of the Mississippi. Two forts of great strength, St. Philip and Jackson, guarded the river seventy miles below the city and thirty miles from the gulf. There was also a chain barrier, supported on hulks, stretched across the channel at Fort Jackson. Farragut bombarded the forts for six days, from the 18th to the 24th of April, without effect, and then determined to run past them.

12. The difficult task of cutting the chain barrier was successfully performed, and before daylight on the morning of the 24th, Farragut steamed up the river with seventeen vessels, carrying about three hundred guns. After a terrible battle, he passed the forts, and encountered a Confederate fleet of sixteen armed vessels, supported by the steam-battery Louisiana and the ram Manassas, and by sunrise had either captured or destroyed them all. Next day, the 25th, he appeared in front of New Orleans.

13. On the 28th the forts surrendered, and on the 1st of May General Butler took possession of the city. Farragut then sent a portion of his fleet up the river, and captured Baton Rouge and Natchez. Afterwards he passed the batteries at Vicksburg with little damage, and joined the Union fleet at Memphis. Thus the lower Mississippi was opened, the chief city of the gulf taken, and a powerful iron-clad fleet of the Confederates destroyed.

14. In the mean time, a remarkable affair occurred at Fortress Monroe. When Norfolk was surrendered in 1861, the steam frigate *Merrimac*, with a large number of vessels, was scuttled and sunk. She was soon afterwards raised by the Confederates, and converted into an iron-plated ram and named the *Virginia*. On the 8th of March, accompanied by two small vessels, she came into Hampton Roads, where there was a fleet of Union war-ships, and, regardless of shot and shell which rained upon her roof-like iron sides, dashed against the sloop-of-war *Cumberland*, striking her such a blow with her iron prow that the ship sank in a few minutes.

15. The frigate *Congress*, which lay near, was run on shore by her captain to avoid a similar catastrophe, but the *Virginia* raked her so terribly that her crew were obliged to surrender. At sunset the *Virginia* returned to Norfolk, having destroyed two vessels and inflicted a loss of two hundred and fifty men upon her antagonists. The Confederates naturally looked forward to an easy victory over the rest of the Union fleet on the morrow. But during the night a strangely-constructed iron vessel, commanded by Lieutenant Worden, came



FIGHT OF THE MERRIMAC AND THE MONITOR.

into the Roads. It was the Monitor, Captain Ericsson's "cheese-box on a raft," as it was called, which had come from the North just in time to prevent further damage.



16. When the *Virginia* appeared early next morning, and under a full head of steam was driving against the frigate *Minnesota*, the little *Monitor* darted out from the shore and fearlessly put itself between the monster and the intended victim. Then followed a battle such as never before took place upon the sea. Cannon-balls of the largest size rattled against the sides or fell broken in pieces upon the decks of both vessels. Neither could materially harm the other, but the victory was with the *Monitor*, for the *Virginia* was foiled in her purpose of destroying the Union fleet. She returned to Norfolk, never again to appear as an antagonist.

17. The Confederate general Price was driven southward from Missouri towards Arkansas by General Halleck, in the month of November, 1861. The Confederates afterwards increased their force in this region to twenty thousand men, and General Van Dorn was placed in command. On the 7th of March, 1862, Van Dorn attacked General Curtis, the Federal commander, at Pea Ridge, in the north-west corner of Arkansas, and the Union army, although but eleven thousand strong, after a desperate battle of two days, repulsed him. During the rest of the war no important battles were fought in this State.

18. We left General Grant early in April at Pittsburg Landing, on the Tennessee. Here, before Buell could reinforce him, he was attacked, on the 6th of April, by a large Confederate force under Generals Johnston and Beauregard and driven step by step to the protection of the gun-boats on the river. During the night Buell came up, and on the next day Grant renewed the battle and compelled the Confederates to retreat to Corinth, fifteen miles distant.

19. In this battle the Confederate forces were estimated at forty thousand and Grant's at thirty-three thousand men. In the first day's fight the Confederates were substantially victorious, for they had taken the Union camp, three thousand prisoners and immense stores; but they had lost their commander, General Johnston, who fell in the heat of the action. On the second day the aspect of affairs completely changed, and the losses of the previous day were retrieved. After the battle General Halleck assumed command in person, and, having at

this time been put in charge of all the Union armies of the West, concentrated a force of over one hundred thousand men against Corinth, an important railroad centre. Beauregard, finding himself so greatly outnumbered, evacuated the place on the 30th of May.

20. While the second day's fight near Pittsburg Landing was going on, another event of great importance was occurring on the Mississippi River. The Confederates on leaving Columbus had taken up their position on Island No. 10, a point well fortified by nature, and which had been so strengthened that it was deemed impregnable. General Pope, however, by cutting a canal across Donelson's Point, a deep bend in the river, got in the rear and captured the island, taking between five and seven thousand prisoners.

21. After the evacuation of Corinth and the capture of Island No. 10, Captain Davis, who had taken the place of the wounded Commodore Foote, appeared before Memphis on the 6th of June, and took possession of the city. He was here joined by Farragut, who had successfully run the gauntlet of the Vicksburg batteries; and now, with the exception of the last-named stronghold and Port Hudson, every fortress on the great river was in Union hands, and Arkansas and Louisiana were cut off from the Confederacy; Kentucky and Western Tennessee had also been wrested from the enemy, and the area of the contest was thus greatly contracted.

22. The Federal forces now held a line from Memphis through Corinth nearly to Chattanooga, to which point General Buell was steadily pushing his way. The Confederate generals therefore concentrated themselves at Chattanooga under Bragg, at Iuka under Price, and at Holly Springs under Van Dorn.

23. The first movement was made by General Bragg, who with nearly fifty thousand men started for Louisville. Buell, finding out the object of his antagonist, immediately commenced a race with him for that city, distant three hundred miles, and by forced marches he came out one day ahead. On his way the Confederate general captured, on the 17th of September, four thousand five hundred Union troops at Munfordsville, but, finding that Buell had reached Louisville, and had now one

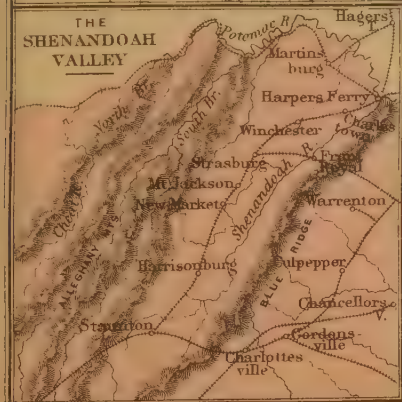
hundred thousand men under him, he retreated to Frankfort, where General Kirby Smith joined him on the 4th of October. The combined Confederate army then fell back. At Perryville, Buell, who was slowly pursuing, came up with Bragg on the 8th of October, when a bloody battle was fought, both sides losing heavily.

24. General Halleck having been called to Washington to take the position of general-in-chief, General Grant was appointed to the command of all the forces west of the Tennessee. While at Corinth with greatly diminished forces, his veterans having been sent to help Buell, he was threatened by the armies of Van Dorn and Price. Having been joined by General Rosecrans, Grant resolved to strike before they could effect a junction. Accordingly, he ordered Rosecrans to move against Price; the latter, however, made his escape, after being defeated at Iuka, September 19th. Leaving Rosecrans with twenty thousand men to defend the entrenchments at Corinth, Grant proceeded northward to Jackson, Tennessee.

25. On the 4th of October, Van Dorn and Price, at the head of forty thousand Confederates, attacked Rosecrans, but were signally defeated, losing over six thousand in killed and wounded, while the Union loss was only three hundred and fifteen killed. The Confederates lost heavily also during their retreat. The successful Federal general was soon afterwards promoted to the command of the Army of the Cumberland, which aggregated nearly one hundred thousand men.

26. Rosecrans began at once to concentrate his new army around Nashville, and then marched to attack Bragg, who with sixty thousand men had taken up his position at Murfreesboro', thirty miles to the south, and was preparing for a second grand expedition northward. On the 31st of December, at Stone River, Rosecrans was himself attacked and driven back some distance, but by the valor of General Sheridan was enabled to reform his line, and, notwithstanding the daring charges of the Confederates, held it unflinchingly. Two days after, Bragg renewed the attack, but was again unsuccessful, and retreated. Each side lost about one-fourth of the number engaged.

27. Meanwhile General Grant, at Jackson, had planned an







expedition against Vicksburg. General Sherman with forty thousand men was to move down the river to Memphis, accompanied by a fleet of gun-boats under Commodore Porter, while Grant was to take the Mississippi Central Railroad. The movement promised to be entirely successful, but Van Dorn's cavalry managed to get into the rear of Grant's army, and by cutting off its supplies at Holly Springs, December 20th, compelled him to abandon his part of the enterprise.

28. Sherman, unaware of this mishap, started from Memphis on the same day. He proceeded to the mouth of the Yazoo River, and, assisted by the gun-boats, attacked the Confederate works on the bluff at Chickasaw Bayou, north of Vicksburg, but was repulsed with great loss. Hearing now of Grant's misfortune, he fell back, capturing on his way Arkansas Post, on the Arkansas River, January 11th, 1863. This closed the campaign on the Mississippi.

29. In Virginia, General Banks, who commanded the Union troops in the Shenandoah Valley, after a victory at Winchester on the 23d of March, advanced towards the end of the month as far south as Harrisonburg. Here he was met by the Confederate general Stonewall Jackson, and pushed back to Strasburg, and thence to the Potomac, which he crossed just in time to save his army, losing, however, about three thousand prisoners and nine thousand small-arms.

30. By the celerity of his movements Jackson not only compelled the retreat of Banks, but also kept the army of Fremont occupied, and prevented McDowell from rendering aid to McClellan. Having accomplished his object, Jackson rapidly retreated southward, and, though pursued by Fremont and Shields, escaped with his prisoners, and soon after joined Lee before Richmond.

31. On the 10th of March the Army of the Potomac, numbering two hundred thousand men, made a movement in force towards Manassas, but found that the Confederate army had fallen back from all its advanced posts near Washington and had taken up a new line along the Rappahannock River. As the capture of Richmond, the Confederate capital, was the object in view, it was determined in a council of war to make the

advance upon it by way of the Peninsula, as the neck of land between the York and James Rivers is called. Therefore the entire force was brought back to Washington, and in order that he might give his undivided attention to the expedition, which it was agreed he should lead in person, McClellan was relieved of the generalship-in-chief.

**32.** Leaving about eighty thousand troops to guard Washington, McClellan embarked at Alexandria an army of one hundred and twenty thousand men for Fortress Monroe, which he reached on the 2d of April. On the 4th he commenced his march for the Confederate capital. In his way lay Yorktown, garrisoned by about five thousand men, under General Magruder. The latter maintained so bold a front that it was deemed necessary to invest the place. On the 4th of May the Federals entered Yorktown, which they found deserted, Magruder having quietly slipped away to join the Confederate force at Richmond. The Union troops followed, and won the battle of Williamsburg on the 5th, and that of West Point on the 9th, of May.

**33.** On the evacuation of Yorktown, Norfolk was abandoned by the Confederates; and when General Wool entered it on the 10th of May, he found the navy-yard burned, the military stores destroyed and the iron-clad Virginia blown up. The James River was now open to within eight miles of Richmond, and Union gun-boats, together with the Monitor, ascended to force a passage. On the 15th they reached Fort Darling, by whose heavy guns their further progress was stopped, and many of the vessels so badly damaged that the fleet was compelled to retire.

**34.** General McClellan, meantime, had advanced within seven miles of the Confederate capital. At this juncture, however, it was discovered that a Confederate force was at Hanover Court-House threatening the Federal general's communications. The delay thus caused enabled the Confederates to collect a large force at Richmond, and on the 31st of May they made an attack upon the left wing of the Union army, which had crossed the Chickahominy Creek. A severe storm had swollen the swamps and transformed an insignificant stream into a broad river. The Confederate general took advantage of the division of the Union forces, and the great battle of Fair Oaks was the result.

The advantage was entirely on the side of the Confederates; but their commander, General Johnston, was badly wounded.

**35.** On the next day, the struggle being renewed, the Union forces were victorious. General Robert E. Lee was now appointed to succeed the disabled Johnston, and he resolved at once to assume the offensive. His predecessor had taken the precaution to send General Jackson to intercept McDowell, who was on his way to reinforce McClellan, and whose arrival was anxiously awaited by that general.



GENERAL LEE.

**36.** Lee was aware of McDowell's detention, and on the 26th of June, when McClellan was on the point of marching on the defences of Richmond, he suddenly fell upon the Union right at Mechanicsville, but was repulsed with severe loss. Next day he renewed the attack at Cold Harbor, or Gaines's Mill, and the Union army barely saved itself by crossing to the south side of the Chickahominy, destroying the bridges behind it.

**37.** Previous to these encounters, McClellan, finding himself in danger of being cut off from his base of supplies at White House, and learning that McDowell had been called back to guard Washington, and that Stonewall Jackson was in his rear, had resolved upon establishing a new base on the James River.

**38.** On the night of the 28th, after the battle at Gaines's Mill, Lee penetrated McClellan's design, and instantly started his columns along the roads which crossed the line of the Union march. Magruder struck the flank at Savage's Station on the 29th, and Longstreet and Hill encountered the main body at Frazer's Farm on the 30th. There was nothing decisive in these engagements.

**39.** On the morning of July 1st the Union troops reached Malvern Hill, near the James, and made their final stand. Upon the terraced sides of the hill they mounted heavy guns tier upon tier. Here they found a momentary respite from their toils. The Confederates soon charged upon this last position, but

were driven back with great loss. Lee pressed the pursuit no farther, and the Federal troops retired unmolested to Harrison's Landing. Thus ended the series of encounters which afterwards became familiarly known as the "seven days' battles."

40. From Mechanicsville to Malvern Hill, McClellan had lost, in killed, wounded and prisoners, over fifteen thousand men, with immense quantities of stores, and his army was now cooped up on the James River under the protection of the gun-boats. Lee had also lost very heavily, but he had completely thwarted the object for which the splendid army of the Potomac had been so carefully trained and equipped. On the day of the battle of Malvern Hill, President Lincoln called for a fresh levy of three hundred thousand troops to supply the place of an army considered lost.

41. After a month spent in recruiting his army, Lee began to move towards Washington. In his way was an army of forty thousand men, under General Pope, who had been sent for from the West, and had united the commands of Banks, Fremont and McDowell. General McClellan was directed to transfer his army to Acquia Creek and put it under the command of Pope. Lee, anticipating this, determined to crush the latter before the reinforcements from McClellan could reach him. Pressing on rapidly, he encountered a portion of Pope's army under General Banks at Cedar Mountain, August 9th, and after a severe struggle drove it back on the main army.

42. While Lee held the enemy in front, he sent Jackson round through Thoroughfare Gap to the rear of Pope's army, where he captured an immense amount of stores. The Army of the Potomac being quite near on its way north from the James, Pope saw, as he supposed, an opportunity to fall upon the divided Confederates and crush them in detail, so he turned upon Jackson; but, the Army of the Potomac not reinforcing him as he expected, his plan failed, and, after severe fighting, he was attacked at Chantilly on the 1st of September by the entire Confederate force. Though overwhelmed by numbers, Pope repulsed the enemy; but he was glad to take refuge within the fortifications of Washington, having lost thirty thousand men in his brief campaign.

43. General McClellan was now reinstated, and immediately undertook the reorganization of the shattered army. Meanwhile, flushed with success, Lee entered Maryland, hoping to secure volunteers there. He divided his army, and sent a large portion of it under Jackson to capture Harper's Ferry. This post surrendered with thirteen thousand men on the 15th of September. But the expedition wellnigh proved the destruction of Lee, for McClellan, learning of the division of his force, hurried in pursuit, and pushed in between the two parts of the Confederate army at Turner's Gap.

44. Here was fought, on September 14th, what is known as the battle of South Mountain, in which the Confederate general was defeated. Lee, finding himself in a perilous situation, retreated to the Potomac, and took a position at Sharpsburg, with the Antietam Creek in front. Fortunately for him, McClellan delayed his attack until the 17th, by which time Jackson had come up from Harper's Ferry. On the morning of the 17th began the great battle of Antietam.

45. The Union force was nearly ninety thousand; that of Lee was probably one-third less. The Union attacks were impetuous, but the Confederates withstood them the entire day; and when night put an end to the doubtful contest, each side had lost over ten thousand men in killed, wounded and prisoners. Both armies rested on the night of the 17th where they had taken their position in the morning. On the 18th neither was in a condition to renew the attack, and on that night Lee retired from the field and crossed the Potomac.

46. Although this battle was indecisive, it was virtually a Federal victory; for it saved the North from invasion, and rendered Washington, for a time at least, secure. It was thought, however, that McClellan ought to have pursued Lee; and he was therefore superseded by General Burnside. The new commander pushed rapidly towards the Rappahannock, intending to march against Richmond. He crossed the river at Fredericksburg, and on the 13th of December attacked the Confederates, but was repulsed with terrific slaughter, losing over twelve thousand men. This defeat nearly demoralized the Army of the Potomac. It had not been pleased with the change of leaders,



and its dissatisfaction was now so strongly manifested that Burnside found himself compelled to resign the command.

47. In spite of these disasters, the general results of this year were favorable to the Unionists. The Confederates had, under Lee and Jackson, gained victories on the Peninsula and in the Shenandoah Valley; and the battles of Cedar Mountain, Chickasaw Bayou and Fredericksburg had been won by them. On the other hand, the Federals had captured Forts Henry, Donelson, Pulaski, Macon, Jackson and St. Philip, and Island No. 10; had opened the Mississippi to Vicksburg, occupied New Orleans, Roanoke Island, New-Berne, Yorktown and Memphis; and had gained the battles of Pea Ridge, Williamsburg, Fair Oaks, South Mountain, Antietam, Iuka, Corinth and Murfreesboro'. Charleston, Mobile, Wilmington and Savannah were all the ports that remained to the Confederates, and even these were tightly shut up by the blockade.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What were the opposing forces at the beginning of this year?
2. What was the object of the Federal campaign of 1862?
- 3, 4. How were their forces disposed?
5. What places in the West were occupied by the Confederates?
6. Describe the capture of Fort Henry.
7. Of Fort Donelson.
8. What movements followed these captures?
9. What of the expedition against Roanoke Island?
10. What places were captured in North and South Carolina?
11. Describe Farragut's and Butler's successes in the South.
12. How was New Orleans captured?
13. What was next done by Farragut?
14. Describe the destruction of the Cumberland.
15. What else was accomplished by the Virginia?
16. Describe the conflict between the Monitor and the Virginia.
17. What of the battle of Pea Ridge?
18. By whom was Grant attacked at Pittsburg Landing?
19. What was the result of the two days' fighting at Pittsburg Landing? What of General Halleck?
20. Describe the capture of Island No. 10.
21. Who succeeded Commodore Foote, and by whom was he joined? How was the area of the war greatly contracted?
22. What was the object of the Confederate generals in the West?
23. Describe the movements of Generals Bragg and Buell.

24. Why was a change made in the commanders of the West? Why was Rosecrans sent against Price, and with what result?
25. Describe the Union victory at Corinth.
26. What was done by Rosecrans on assuming command of the Army of the Cumberland? The battle of Murfreesboro'?
27. Describe Grant's plan for the capture of Vicksburg.
28. How did it result? What had been effected during this campaign?
29. Who was commander of the Union forces in the Shenandoah Valley? What of Banks and Stonewall Jackson?
30. What did the Confederate general Jackson accomplish?
31. What was the objective point of the Army of the Potomac? What was the plan of attack?
32. What preparations were made by McClellan before he began his march? Describe the siege of Yorktown.
33. In what condition did General Wool find Norfolk? What stopped the progress of the Army of the Potomac?
34. How near did the Union forces approach to Richmond? Describe the battle of Fair Oaks.
35. Who succeeded Johnston? What did he decide to do?
36. What of several encounters which now took place?
37. What weakened McClellan's forces? What did he then do?
38. How did Lee harass the Union army? To what place did they retreat, and in what condition were they?
39. Describe the battle of Malvern Hill.
40. What was the loss on both sides during these battles? Why were the seven days' battles discouraging to the North? What was done by the President?
41. Describe General Lee's movements after this. What of General Pope?
42. What was accomplished by Jackson in the mean time? What was attempted by Pope?
43. What change was then made in the commanders? Describe Lee's raid into Maryland.
44. What of the battle of South Mountain?
45. Describe the battle of Antietam.
46. What good resulted from this attack? Why was General McClellan removed, and who succeeded him? What great defeat did Burnside suffer? What caused dissatisfaction among the soldiers? How was this removed?
47. Give the results of this year's campaign.

## PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

GOLDSBOROUGH (Gölds'-bŭr-ro).	YAZOO (Yah-zoo').
FARRAGUT (Fär'-rä-gŭt).	SHENANDOAH (Shĕn-an-lō'-ă).
BUELL (Bu'-el).	HARRISONSBURG (Här'-rĭ-sons-burg).
DONELSON (Dŏn'-el-sŏn).	RAPPAHANNOCK (Răp-pă-hăn'-nok).
CORINTH (Cŏr'-inth).	MAGRUDER (Mă-groo'-der).
BEAUFORT (Bŭ'-fŭrt).	CHICKAHOMINY (Chik-ă-hŏm'-ĭ-ne).
FERNANDINA (Fer-năn-de'-nă).	FRAZIER (Fray'-zher).
BATON ROUGE (Bat'-un-roozh').	CHANTILLY (Shan-tĭl'-le).
VICKSBURG (Vix'-burg).	ANTIETAM (An-tee'-tam).
ERICSSON (Ēr'-ik-sŏn).	WORDEN (Wŭr'-den).
CHATTAHOOGA (Chat-tă-noo'-gă).	CHICKASAW BAYOU (Chik-ă-saw Bi'-you).
IUKA (I-ŭ'-kă).	
MURFREESBORO' (Mur'-friz-bŭr-ro).	

## CHAPTER III.

*LINCOLN'S PRESIDENCY.—CONTINUED.*

## THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR—1863.

1. On the opening of the year 1863 the Union armies operating in different parts of the country aggregated three-quarters of a million of men, most of whom were now inured to the hardships of war. The Confederates numbered rather more than half as many, or about four hundred thousand men. Both sides were in admirable fighting condition, and possessed of the spirit of true soldiers—indomitable courage, and faith in the righteousness of their cause.

2. The Union plan of operations did not materially differ from that of the preceding year. The great object in the West was the opening of the Mississippi, which involved the capture of Vicksburg, the separation of Mississippi, Alabama and Georgia from the Confederacy, and the restoration of Eastern Tennessee. In the East the capture of Richmond was still the Federal aim. And on the coast the occupation of the ports remaining in Confederate hands was determined upon.

3. As an additional war measure, President Lincoln, on the 1st of January, having in the previous September given notice of his intention, issued the now celebrated Emancipation Proc-

lamation, in which he declared all slaves in the States or parts of States then at war with the Federal government forever free.

4. Nothing was done in the Army of the Potomac during the early months of 1863 except to increase its numbers, and, by rigid discipline, bring it up to such a state of efficiency that General Hooker, who on the 26th of January had succeeded Burnside as its commander, declared that it was "the best army on the planet." Having spent three months in preparation, Hooker, near the end of April, crossed the Rappahannock with the main army, and took the road for Richmond by way of Chancellorsville, leaving General Sedgwick to carry the entrenchments at Fredericksburg.

5. The entire force amounted to one hundred and twenty thousand men, against which Lee, having sent a large part of his army under General Longstreet to help Bragg, could oppose only about seventy thousand. But the advantage of position was on the side of the Confederates; for, protected by dense woods, they could easily conceal their movements, and at unexpected points dash upon the exposed foe. Relying upon this advantage, Lee sent Stonewall Jackson, with twenty thousand men, to the rear of Hooker, while he engaged him in front.

6. Jackson, with his usual celerity, burst on the Union right, and forced back the entire army from its position. Just as Lee was about to make a grand charge along the whole line, word was brought that Sedgwick had crossed the Rappahannock, taken Fredericksburg, and was coming upon his rear. He was compelled to face his new antagonist, and Hooker took advantage of the circumstance and withdrew, so that when Sedgwick, after desperate fighting, was forced across the river, there was no foe left to confront Lee.

7. The Army of the Potomac was soon back in its old position opposite Fredericksburg, having lost in the terrible encounters of the 2d and 3d of May over



STONEWALL JACKSON.

twelve thousand men. The Confederate loss was numerically much less, but Stonewall Jackson was mortally wounded, through mistake, by his own men.

8. As soon as Lee had thus foiled Hooker's attempt to reach Richmond by the overland route he resolved to become in turn the invader, and in the first week in June he set his army in motion for the North. His idea was to capture Washington, or, failing in that, to push forward to Philadelphia, or even to New York, and, having seized one or both of these great cities, dictate terms of peace.

9. General Hooker, however, by forced marches, threw his army between Lee and Washington, and compelled the Confederate leader to turn into the valley of the Shenandoah, from which he entered Pennsylvania near Chambersburg. This was a moment of great alarm throughout the North, and Union troops poured into the invaded State. On the 28th of June the command of the Army of the Potomac was transferred to General Meade.

10. The two armies, each about one hundred thousand strong—for Longstreet had again joined Lee—marched in almost parallel lines on either side of the Blue Ridge and South Mountain range, until, on the 1st of July, they came into collision westward of Gettysburg on the Chambersburg road.

11. An engagement was at once brought on by the Confederate advance falling in with the Union cavalry, which was pushed forward to conceal the movement of the main body. The battle lasted until the evening of the 3d, when Lee was compelled to fall back, after losing forty thousand of the best soldiers of the South, and inflicting on his opponents a loss of twenty-four thousand men.

12. On the 14th the Confederate army again crossed the Potomac, and retreated to the south side of the Rappahannock, where it came to a stand. To Lee the battle of Gettysburg was an irreparable disaster. The South had done its best in raising and equipping this splendid army, and had no men to take the place of those who had fallen in the dreadful three days' conflict.

13. We now turn to the other Union movements. We left the part of Grant's army under Sherman at Arkansas Post, which,



with the aid of Admiral Porter's fleet, he had captured on the 11th of January, within two weeks after his repulse at Chickasaw Bayou. Grant himself, though delayed by Van Dorn's cavalry dash at Holly Springs, adhered to his great purpose, the capture of Vicksburg.

14. For three months he tried in various ways to take it from the north side. Finding this a hopeless task, he crossed the Mississippi at Milliken's Bend, and went down the west side of the river to New Carthage, while his transports and the gun-boats ran past the long line of river batteries, which extended eight miles and bristled with cannon. This was considered so hazardous an attempt that the officers would not order their crews to make it, but called for volunteers. So many offered themselves that lots were drawn for places.

15. These events occurred between the 16th and 22d of April. On the 29th Grant attacked Grand Gulf with the gun-boats, but was defeated; he then crossed farther south at Bruinsburg and defeated Pemberton, who had charge of the defence of the threatened city, at Port Gibson, May 1st, thereby compelling the evacuation of Grand Gulf. Hearing that General Joseph Johnston was coming to Pemberton's assistance, he pushed in between them, and in a hard-fought battle defeated the latter at Jackson, on the 14th of May.

16. Grant's object now was to drive Pemberton into Vicksburg and capture his whole army. The first part of the design he accomplished after two battles, one on the 16th at Champion Hills, and the other at Big Black River on the 17th.

17. Two fierce assaults were soon made upon the entrenchments, but failed, with heavy loss. Nothing remained but a regular siege, which was followed up so closely that not a man of the garrison dared show his head above the works, and shells burst everywhere throughout the city. Worn out with toil in the trenches, the garrison surrendered on the 4th of July; and on the same day that the North was gladdened by the news of Lee's retreat from Gettysburg, the tidings came that Vicksburg had fallen and an army of thirty-five thousand men been captured.

18. Four days after, the garrison at Port Hudson, another

stronghold on the Mississippi, just north of Baton Rouge, which had been for some time besieged by General Banks, surrendered, and now the great river from its source to the gulf was in Union hands.

19. While Grant was engaged at Vicksburg he sent General Grierson, at the head of two thousand cavalry, through Mississippi to destroy the railroads. Starting from La Grange, Tennessee, on the 17th of April, Grierson passed round Pemberton's army, and after traversing eight hundred miles of hostile territory in sixteen days, doing immense damage, reached Baton Rouge on the 2d of May, having lost only twenty-seven men in the expedition.

20. We left General Rosecrans at Murfreesboro', where, on the 22d of January, he had repulsed Bragg after a desperate battle of two days. Owing to the deficiency of his army in cavalry, he made no forward movement until June, when with sixty thousand men he marched against Bragg, who retreated southward into Georgia. Rosecrans pushed on in pursuit, supposing he was following a dispirited foe; Bragg, however, having received heavy reinforcements, suddenly turned upon his pursuers, scattered along a line forty miles in length, and attacked them on the 19th of September at Chickamauga.

21. Here occurred one of the bloodiest battles of the war, the struggle continuing for two days. The first day's fight was indecisive, but on the second day the Federal line was broken, and Longstreet, pushing into the gap, completely routed the centre and right, the commander himself being borne along by the crowd of fugitives. General Thomas, however, commanding the left, held fast, and not all the efforts of the Confederates against his line could break it.

22. This preserved the Union army from irretrievable disaster; and when evening came, Thomas retreated in good order to Chattanooga. In this engagement Rosecrans lost sixteen thousand men and fifty-one guns. Bragg, though victorious, fared even worse, losing eighteen thousand in killed and wounded. Nevertheless, he was able by occupying the hills commanding the town to keep the Federal army so closely shut up in Chattanooga that it was threatened with starvation.



THE CIVIL WAR.



23. At this juncture Rosecrans was removed from the command of the Army of the Cumberland, and General Grant was placed over all the Western forces. He at once set out for Chattanooga, where his arrival, together with reinforcements under Generals W. T. Sherman and Hooker, soon changed the aspect of affairs.

24. On the 24th of November, Hooker, with two corps of the Army of the Potomac, charged the Confederate batteries on Lookout Mountain, and before evening the "battle above the clouds" was won. On the following day he occupied Missionary Ridge, close by; Sherman assaulted the right wing, Thomas the centre. Everywhere the Confederates were overpowered.

25. The immediate result of this success was the restoration of East Tennessee to the Union, the opening of the way to Georgia, and the forced resignation of Bragg, one of the ablest of the Confederate generals.

26. After Burnside was relieved of the command of the Army of the Potomac, he was sent into Tennessee. At Knoxville, on the 17th of September, he was besieged by Longstreet, and was kept in great straits for provisions until after the battle of Chattanooga. Immediately after his victory Grant despatched Sherman to relieve the beleaguered army.

27. Sherman arrived just in time, for Longstreet, on the 29th of November, had made a terrible onslaught on Burnside's half-starved garrison, and, although repulsed with great slaughter, would probably have succeeded in capturing the place had it not been for this fortunate intervention. The besiegers heard of Sherman's approach on the 3d of December, and on the following day when the Union advance reached Knoxville, they had abandoned their works and retreated into Virginia.

28. In regard to other movements in the West a few words will suffice. General Holmes, who commanded the Confederates in Arkansas, attacked Helena on the same day that Vicksburg was taken, but was repulsed by General Prentiss with severe loss. In September the Union general Steele routed Marmaduke, and drove Price out of Little Rock, the capital. By October the entire State was free from Confederate troops. General Morgan with three thousand five hundred Confederate



cavalry made a raid through Kentucky, Indiana and Ohio, sweeping round Cincinnati, but, being unable to recross the river, owing to the gun-boats, was captured with nearly his entire force on the 27th of July.

29. On the coast, on the first day of the year, Galveston, Texas, was captured by General Magruder, and thus a new port for foreign vessels was furnished to the Confederates. A great naval expedition sent out under Admiral Dupont against Charleston, South Carolina, failed. In attempting to pass the forts and batteries in the harbor, on the 7th of April, nine of his iron-clads were badly injured, and the entire expedition signally defeated.

30. Three months later, another expedition, of land-troops chiefly, was sent to Charleston under the command of General Gillmore, who succeeded, on the 10th of July, in getting a position on the lower end of Morris Island, where he erected batteries. With these he bombarded Forts Wagner and Sumter, compelling the evacuation of the former and completely demolishing the latter on its land side. No blockade-runner could pass either in or out, so that as a port of foreign supply Charleston was virtually lost to the Confederacy.

31. On the whole, the Union cause made remarkable progress during the year 1863. The Confederates had gained the great battles of Chickamauga and Chancellorsville, captured Galveston and beaten off the iron-clad fleet from Charleston; but they had lost Vicksburg and Port Hudson; the Mississippi was guarded by Union vessels, and all supplies from the west side of it were cut off; Bragg had been driven out of Tennessee; Lee had met with a disastrous defeat at Gettysburg. Arkansas, East Tennessee, Mississippi and Texas had been either wholly or in great part won back to the Union. Supplies from abroad were cut off by the blockade, which was strictly maintained.

32. In this year West Virginia came into the Union as the thirty-fifth of the sisterhood. It refused to secede with the eastern part of Virginia, and demanded from the general government a separate organization, which was granted, and on the 20th of June it was admitted. Its geographical descrip-

tion has already been given under that of the old State, with the exception of its eastern boundary, which is extremely irregular, running from the Potomac at Harper's Ferry in a triangular form to the Alleghany Mountains, which constitute the boundary as far south as Uniontown, from which it inclines westward, generally following the mountain-range until it meets the western line where the Big Sandy River crosses the Cumberland Mountains. The length of the State from north-east to south-west is two hundred and twenty-five miles, and its breadth from east to west one hundred and sixty-five. The area is twenty thousand square miles.

### QUESTIONS.

1. What was now the aggregate number of the opposing armies? In what condition were they?

2. What was the great object of the Federals in the West? What was involved in this plan? The object in the East?

3. What is said of the Emancipation Proclamation?

4. Who succeeded Burnside as commander of the Army of the Potomac? What was his plan of operations?

5. How many men had he? What advantage of position had the Confederates?

6. Describe the battle of Chancellorsville.

7. Who was wounded here?

8. What did Lee determine upon after this victory?

9. How was he foiled in his attempt to capture Washington? Who succeeded Hooker in command of the Army of the Potomac?

10, 11. Describe the battle of Gettysburg.

12. Where did the Confederates retreat after their defeat?

13. What of Grant's army during this time?

14. Describe his attempt to capture Vicksburg.

15. How did Grant compel the evacuation of Grand Gulf?

16. What was his object after defeating the Confederates at Jackson? What part of his plan was successful?

17. Describe the capture of Vicksburg.

18. What place was next captured, and by whom?

19. Describe the raid of General Grierson.

20. What was done by Rosecrans after the battle of Murfreesboro'?

21, 22. Describe the battle of Chickamauga. How did General Thomas make himself famous? What was now the situation of Rosecrans?

23. Who was now placed in command of all the Western forces?
24. What of the battle that ensued?
25. What was the immediate result of this success?
26. What was done by Burnside in Tennessee?
27. How was his army saved from capture?
28. What is said of the other movements in the West at this time?
29. What had been accomplished by Magruder on the coast? Describe the naval expedition under Admiral Dupont.
30. What was the success of the expedition under General Gillmore?
31. What progress had the North made during the year? What losses had it sustained?
32. What State was added to the Union in 1863? Why was it separated from Virginia? What of its geographical limits, length, breadth and area?

---

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

CHANCELLORSVILLE (Chan'-sel-lors-vil).	GALVESTON (Gal'-ves-tŏn).
CHAMBERSBURG (Chām'-bers-burg).	GILLMORE (Ghil'-môr).
CHICKAMAUGA (Chik-ă-maw'-gă).	LA GRANGE (Lah Grănj).
CINCINNATI (Sin-sin-nat'-te).	MILLIKEN'S BEND (Mil'-lĭ-kens).
GETTYSBURG (Get'-tĭz-burg).	NEW CARTHAGE (Kar'-thĭj).
GRIERSON (Greer'-sŏn).	SEDGWICK (Sedj'-wik).

---

### CHAPTER IV.

#### *LINCOLN'S PRESIDENCY.—CONTINUED.*

##### FOURTH YEAR OF THE WAR—1864.

1. THE beginning of the year 1864 found the two sides in the great conflict very unequally matched. The South had put forth all its strength; it had exhausted its fighting population, and was in a wretched financial condition. The North had immense armies already in the field, and almost inexhaustible material from which to draw others; and the war, instead of weakening its resources, had stimulated every branch of industry.

2. The plan of the land campaign for this year had resolved itself into two great movements—Sherman's march eastward

through Georgia with the Army of the West, and Meade's march southward to Richmond with the Army of the Potomac. Subsidiary to these were various minor operations intended to make the advantages already gained secure. At sea the capture of the remaining Confederate forts was the great aim.

3. On the 20th of February General Seymour was disastrously defeated at Olustee, Florida, and compelled to return to Port Royal, South Carolina, whence his expedition had started. A little earlier, General Sherman left Vicksburg for the purpose of destroying the railroads in Eastern Mississippi. He advanced as far as Meridian, where two great railroads intersect, and, after tearing up one hundred and fifty miles of road, destroying numerous bridges and capturing or burning a large amount of property, returned to Vicksburg in the same month. His expedition would have been much more effective had not a large cavalry force which was to join him at Meridian been driven back to Memphis by a Confederate force under General Forrest.

4. After this exploit Forrest advanced as far as Union City, on the northern line of Tennessee. On the 24th of March he was repulsed at Paducah with a loss of fifteen hundred men. On the 12th of April he appeared before Fort Pillow, a post near Memphis, garrisoned by about six hundred troops, half of whom were negroes. He was stoutly resisted, but at length took the fort by assault.

5. Early in March a joint naval and land expedition, under General Banks, was sent up the Red River for the purpose of taking possession of Western Louisiana and Texas. Fort De Russey was captured March 14th; thence Banks pushed on for Shreveport, his line becoming gradually extended for thirty miles along a single road. Near Mansfield, at Sabine Cross Roads, a Confederate force, under General Dick Taylor, attacked his advance, April 8th, and drove it back with great loss. The Union troops, however, rallied at Pleasant Hill, and, receiving reinforcements the next day, repulsed the enemy. Banks continued his retreat, stopping to rout his pursuers at Cane River, and arrived at Alexandria on the 25th of April.

6. Here he met Admiral Porter's fleet of gun-boats, which

had gone up the river to co-operate with him. Hearing of his disaster, Porter had returned as far as Alexandria. The admiral had lost one of his boats in the expedition, and, but for the ingenuity of Colonel Bailey, would have been compelled to destroy the rest to prevent them from being captured.

7. When Porter ascended, the river was full, and he had no difficulty in passing the rapids near Alexandria; but on his return the river had fallen to such a degree that it was impossible for him to repass them. Colonel Bailey dammed up the water below the rapids; and when the river filled, the boats passed as easily as before.

8. The army now returned to New Orleans, and the fleet to the Mississippi. Banks lost in this affair five thousand men, eighteen guns and great quantities of supplies. Shortly afterwards he was relieved, and General Canby was appointed to the command.

9. At this time, April 20th, the Confederates were also successful in North Carolina, capturing Plymouth with the aid of the iron-clad ram Albemarle. Washington, in the same State, was soon after abandoned, and New-Berne alone on the mainland was occupied by Union forces. Before the end of the year this condition of affairs was changed, for on the 27th of October Lieutenant Cushing with thirteen volunteers went up the Roanoke River and exploded a torpedo under the Albemarle, destroying it; and four days after, Plymouth was taken by Union troops.

10. From the commencement of the war, efforts had been made by the Confederate government to cripple the North by attacking its merchant ships, and privateering was encouraged. The most noted of the Confederate privateers was a vessel built in England and called the *Alabama*.

11. Captain Semmes, who had been compelled to sell the *Sumter*, was the commander of the *Alabama*, and for a long time she continued to sweep American ships from the seas. Having captured sixty-four vessels and destroyed property to the value of ten millions, Semmes sailed into the harbor of Cherbourg, France, where he was blockaded by the United States sloop-of-war *Kearsarge*, commanded by Captain Winslow



12. Semmes sent a challenge of battle to Captain Winslow, which was accepted, but in the mean time he was ordered by the French government to leave the harbor. On the 19th of June, five miles from land, the battle began. It lasted one hour and a quarter, and resulted in the sinking of the Confederate ship.

13. Captain Semmes was picked up by an English yacht and carried to the British coast. The conduct of England in permitting this vessel to leave her shores for the avowed purpose of destroying American commerce gave rise to demands upon that country which were called the "Alabama Claims," of which more will be said hereafter.

14. We have said that the main Union movements on land had resolved themselves into two—Sherman's and Meade's. In the beginning of March, Grant was made commander of all the Union armies in the field, with the rank of lieutenant-general, and all military operations were thenceforward directed by a single head, whereas up to that time the several armies had acted independently, and often without concert.

15. Grant removed his headquarters to Washington, and General Sherman was appointed to the command of the military division of the Mississippi, which embraced the old divisions of the Ohio, Cumberland and Tennessee. The Southern strength was now concentrated in the two large armies of Lee in Virginia and Johnston in Georgia. The former guarded Richmond, the latter covered Atlanta. Grant's plan was that Meade, with the Army of the Potomac, should attack Lee, and Sherman, with the Mississippi force, should bear down upon Johnston.

16. On the 4th of May the forward movement commenced, the Potomac army, one hundred and forty thousand strong, crossing the Rappahannock. Grant telegraphed to Sherman to start, and that general began forthwith to move. We shall first follow his track.

17. With a magnificent army of one hundred thousand men, Sherman left Chattanooga on the 7th of May, on the march for Atlanta. Johnston was posted at Dalton with seventy thousand troops, prepared to dispute his advance. Outflanked by

Sherman there, he fell back to another stronghold at Resaca, where, after severe fighting on the 14th and 15th, he was again



GENERAL SHERMAN.

outflanked, retiring to Dallas. Here he was defeated in four days' heavy skirmishing, from the 25th to the 28th, and Allatoona Pass was turned. At Lost Mountain he made another stand, but was compelled to fall back to Kenesaw Mountain. Here he struggled desperately from the 22d of June to the 3d of July, when his position was again turned ; and finally, on the

10th of July he retired within the entrenchments of Atlanta.

18. Thus over a distance of one hundred miles these able strategists wrestled with each other for two months. Johnston's method of fighting did not satisfy the Confederate government, so he was superseded by General Hood, an officer of great reputation for energy. Hood made three fierce but unsuccessful attacks upon Sherman, when the latter, by a masterly movement, got between the two parts of his army, which chanced to be divided, and thereby compelled the evacuation of Atlanta.

19. On the 2d of September, after seventeen weeks of constant fighting and marching, and a loss of thirty thousand men, Sherman's army entered the abandoned city. Atlanta was a place of great importance to the Confederates ; several railroads centred there, and cannon and munitions of war were extensively manufactured. Rome, a city second only in importance to Atlanta, was also taken possession of by Union troops under command of General Davis.

20. General Hood, after leaving his stronghold, in order to draw Sherman out of Georgia, moved northward to Tennessee, where General Thomas was on the watch for him with the Army of the Tennessee. Sherman followed far enough to become satisfied that he was really going northward, and then returned to Atlanta to prepare for his next move.

21. Both armies were now heavily reinforced, and Hood, crossing the Tennessee, fought a severe battle with General

Schofield, November 30th, at Franklin, and drove him before him to Nashville, where Thomas was strongly fortified. For two weeks nothing, apparently, was done by the Union commander; but on the 15th of December, just as Hood was about to move on the Union works, Thomas, who had quietly made his preparations, fell upon him with all his force, and in a terrible two days' battle completely routed the Confederate army.

22. Meantime, Sherman, having rested his troops until the 14th of November, cut his railroad and telegraphic communications with the North, and set out, with sixty thousand men, on his march to the sea. He met with little resistance, and in four weeks reached the neighborhood of Savannah. On the 13th of December he took Fort McAllister by storm, and one week later, on the 21st, entered the city, which had been evacuated by the garrison. For four weeks Sherman had not been heard from by the North, and great anxiety was felt for his safety. This was now relieved by the news of his great success.

23. We left Grant and Meade just over the Rapidan on the 4th of May. Immediately after crossing the river, the Union army plunged into the Wilderness, and, while it was toiling along the narrow roads, Lee's army, one hundred thousand strong, attacked it on the 5th near the old ground of Chancellorsville. After three days' hard fighting, with very heavy losses on each side, both armies retreated to their entrenchments. By a flank movement, however, Grant compelled Lee to retreat to Spottsylvania Court-House, where the battle was renewed on the 8th, and continued until the 12th, neither side having gained any particular advantage.

24. Finding Lee immovable in front, Grant crossed the North Anna branch of the Pamunky River at Hanover Town, and again attacked the Confederates, who, moving on the inner line, reached the river first, and occupied the strong fortifications of Cold Harbor. Grant made two unsuccessful attempts to dislodge Lee from this point, one on the 1st of June and the other on the 3d, losing nine thousand men.

25. While this struggle was going on in the Wilderness, General Sheridan by Grant's order, proceeded with ten thousand cavalry, on the 7th of May, to cut the railroad connecting

Richmond with Lynchburg and the Shenandoah Valley. After a successful raid, in which he approached within a few miles of the Confederate capital, he rejoined Grant on the 25th of June.

26. General Butler, under orders from Grant, advanced from Fortress Monroe, and on the 5th of May occupied City Point and Bermuda Hundred, on the James River. On the 16th he was attacked by a strong Confederate force, was driven in between the James and Appomattox Rivers, and, a barrier being constructed from river to river, his army was prevented from advancing upon Richmond.

27. On the 1st of May General Sigel, with ten thousand men, was sent up the Shenandoah Valley to make a diversion in favor of the main army by threatening Lee's flank and rear. He was routed by Breckinridge on the 15th at New Market, and General Hunter took his place. Hunter defeated the Confederates at Piedmont, June 5th, but near Lynchburg he encountered a heavy force which Lee had sent to the relief of that place, and was driven into West Virginia.

28. On the 15th of June the Army of the Potomac, reinforced to one hundred and fifty thousand men, began to move across the James River. The object was to capture Petersburg, a railroad centre connecting Richmond with the South. Lee, as before, was confronting Grant. The latter made an assault upon the place on the 18th, but without any satisfactory result, and nothing now remained but to sit down before Richmond and Petersburg and conduct a regular siege.

29. On the 30th of July a mine charged with eight thousand pounds of powder was sprung, and through the chasm thus made the Federal soldiers charged, but were received with such a storm of shot and shell that they were obliged to fall back, after losing several hundred men. Again, from the 18th to the 20th of August, in a fierce conflict south of Petersburg, in which the Weldon Railroad, an important Southern link, was captured, the Federals lost heavily. Heavy fighting continued until almost the end of the year.

30. General Hunter's retreat into West Virginia had left the Shenandoah Valley open and Washington exposed. Lee took advantage of this to threaten the Federal capital, hoping thereby

to compel Grant to raise the siege of Petersburg. Accordingly, General Early, with twenty thousand men, crossed the Potomac and entered Maryland July 5th. On the 9th he defeated General Wallace at Monocacy River, and on the next day appeared before Fort Stevens, one of the defences of Washington.

31. Federal troops immediately hurried to the defence of the capital, and Early was forced to retreat across the Potomac. He retired up the valley, but returned again towards Pennsylvania and sent his cavalry into Chambersburg, which they partially burned. Sheridan was now put in command of all the forces in this quarter, and immediately began to follow Early, defeating him at Winchester on the 19th of September and at Fisher's Hill three days after. This compelled the Confederates to evacuate the Shenandoah Valley.

32. Early, being heavily reinforced, availed himself of the absence of Sheridan to attack his army at Cedar Creek, October 19th. The Union troops were driven in confusion, when Sheridan, who had heard the cannonading at a distance, rode briskly up, recalled his troops, renewed the battle and routed Early with tremendous slaughter.

33. Two other events of the year 1864 remain to be told,—the capture of the forts in Mobile Bay, and the attack upon Fort Fisher, at the entrance of Wilmington Harbor, North Carolina. The expedition against the Mobile forts was under the command of Admiral Farragut, and the battle took place on the 5th of August. That he might see the progress of the fight, Farragut had himself lashed to the main-mast of his flag-ship, and from this exposed position directed the movements. After a desperate engagement, in which the great iron ram Tennessee was taken, Forts Gaines and Morgan were surrendered to the Union forces; and although the city of Mobile was not captured until the next year, the port was effectually closed against blockade-runners.



ADMIRAL FARRAGUT.



34. There now remained but one port to the Confederacy north of the gulf. This was Wilmington. Fort Fisher, a work of extraordinary strength, commanded the entrance. Against this Admiral Porter with a fleet, and a land-force of eight thousand men under General Butler, were sent in December. On the 24th the fleet began the bombardment, but, as Butler deemed his force inadequate to take the fort by assault, the expedition returned to Fortress Monroe.

35. During this year, though the Confederates met with many successes, the Union gains were very decisive. Sherman captured Atlanta and Savannah, Grant drove Lee within the fortifications of Richmond, and Sheridan cleared the valley of the Shenandoah. At sea Farragut had captured the forts of Mobile; and though Wilmington was still in Confederate hands, it was practically sealed as a port.

36. The presidential election occurred in the fall; and a spirited contest took place between the Republican and Democratic parties. President Lincoln was the standard-bearer of the former, and General McClellan of the latter. Lincoln was re-elected by a popular majority of four hundred thousand, McClellan carrying but three States. Associated with Lincoln, as candidate for the Vice-Presidency, was Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee.

37. On the 31st of October Nevada was admitted as the thirty-sixth State of the Union. It lies directly east of California, having the 42d parallel for its northern boundary, and the meridian of  $114^{\circ}$  for its eastern limit, California bounding it on the west and south. Its greatest length from north to south is about four hundred and seventy-five miles, and its breadth from east to west three hundred. Its area is one hundred and twelve thousand square miles. In climate, soil and productions it resembles California, which has already been described.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What was the state of affairs at the beginning of the year 1864?
2. What two great movements were planned?
3. What of the battle of Olustee? Describe Sherman's raid into Eastern Mississippi.
4. What was done by the Confederate general Forrest?

5. Who commanded the Red River expedition? What was its object? With what success did it meet?
- 6, 7. What of Porter's fleet? What saved it from destruction?
8. What was Banks's loss in this expedition? Who succeeded Banks?
9. What success had the Union forces in North Carolina? What of Lieutenant Cushing?
10. What caused the destruction of much valuable property?
11. What of the Alabama? What did her commander accomplish?
12. Describe the battle between the Alabama and the Kearsarge.
13. What was the conduct of England, and what troubles ensued?
14. What change was now made in the command of the Union forces? What advantage was gained by this change?
15. Where were Grant and Sherman now quartered? Who had command of the two Confederate armies? What was Grant's plan of attack?
16. When was the great movement commenced, and with what force?
17. Describe Sherman's march to Atlanta.
18. What of Johnston's plan of fighting? By whom was he superseded? How did Sherman capture Atlanta?
19. Of what importance was Atlanta to the Confederates? What other city in Georgia was taken, and by whom?
20. How did Hood hope to draw Sherman out of Georgia?
21. What of a battle at Franklin? Describe that at Nashville.
22. What is said of Sherman's "march to the sea"?
23. Describe the battles of Chancellorsville.
24. What attempts were made by Grant to outflank Lee?
25. What was accomplished by Sheridan before joining Grant's army?
26. What of General Butler's expedition?
27. What happened to General Sigel at New Market? Who then attempted to carry out Grant's plan?
28. Describe the attempt to capture Petersburg. What did Grant then decide to do?
29. What of the explosion of a mine?
30. How did Lee hope to raise the siege of Petersburg?
31. Describe Early's raid into Pennsylvania. Where was he defeated?
32. Describe the battle of Cedar Creek.
33. What two other important events occurred this year? Describe the attack on the forts in Mobile Bay.
34. What was the only port remaining to the Confederates north of the Gulf? Who was sent to capture it? Why did he not undertake it?
35. What had been accomplished by the Union forces during the year?
36. Who were the opposing candidates for the Presidency at this time? Who was elected, and with what majority?
37. What State was admitted into the Union this year? What is said of its boundaries, climate, soil and products?

## PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

SEYMOUR (See'-môre).	KENESAW (Ken'-e-saw).
OLUSTEE (O-lüs'-tee).	ATLANTA (At-lan'-tä).
MERIDIAN (Me-rid'-e-an).	SCHOFIELD (Skō'-feeld).
PADUCAH (Pä-dū'-kä).	PIEDMONT (Peed'-mont).
TALLAHASSEE (Täl-lä-hass'-ee).	BERMUDA (Ber-mū'-dah).
CHERBOURG (Shēr'-bürg).	MCALLISTER (Mac-äl'-lis-ter).
RAPIDAN (Rap'-i-dan).	SPOTTSYLVANIA (Spot-sil'-va'-nī-ä).
DALTON (Daw'-tön).	KEARSARGE (Keer'-sarj).
ALLATOONA (Äl-lä-too'-nä).	MONOCACY (Mo-nok'-ä-se).

## CHAPTER V.

*LINCOLN'S PRESIDENCY.—CONCLUDED.*

## CLOSE OF THE WAR—1865.

1. THE end of the war was now clearly at hand, and the plan of the work to be performed by the Federal army was simple. Sherman was to move northward through the Carolinas into Virginia, and unite with Grant in closing in upon Lee, while Grant was to capture Petersburg and Richmond. Before describing the final operations of these two generals we must turn for a moment to the Atlantic coast.

2. We left Admiral Porter and General Butler at Fortress Monroe, having just withdrawn from their unsuccessful attack upon Fort Fisher. Porter, however, was of the opinion that the fort could be taken, and an expedition was sent against it in the beginning of 1865, with General Terry as commander of the troops. A landing was effected on the 12th of January, and after a terrific bombardment of three days an assault was made and the stronghold captured. Wilmington was occupied by Union soldiers on the 22d of February.

3. Sherman, after resting his troops for one month at Savannah, began his northward march in the latter part of January, and reached Columbia, the capital of South Carolina, on the 17th of February. General Hardee, in command at Charleston, finding that Sherman had destroyed the railroad north of

him, and fearing lest he should be hemmed in, left that city on the same day that Columbia was captured, and moved northward to join General Johnston, who had been recalled to the position from which he had been so hastily removed.

4. Sherman pressed steadily onward, waiting neither for roads nor for bridges. After some hard fighting, he reached Goldsborough on the 21st of March, where he was joined by Generals Schofield and Terry with reinforcements from Wilmington. Johnston was driven back until Raleigh was reached, and here he made a stand until the 10th of April, when he was again compelled to retreat, and on the 13th the Union army entered the capital of North Carolina, Johnston retiring to Hillsboro'.

5. Grant's army held fast to Lee at Petersburg and Richmond all winter. His line stretched round the former place beyond the Weldon railroad, and all means of supply from that direction were cut off from the Confederates. To sever their communications westward, Sheridan was sent with ten thousand cavalry up the Shenandoah Valley; he attacked Early, who was entrenched at Waynesboro', and compelled him to retreat with a loss of nearly two thousand prisoners. Having swung completely around Richmond, destroying railroads and canals on his route, he joined Grant at Petersburg on the 26th of March.

6. Lee's position was desperate; he had fruitlessly tried to break the Union lines at Fort Steadman, March 25th, and now his object was to evacuate Richmond and join Johnston in North Carolina. This, however, the Union commander was determined not to permit. Lee had lost thirty-five hundred men in his attempt of the 25th, and ere he had recovered from the failure Grant sent twenty thousand infantry, sustained by ten thousand cavalry under Sheridan, behind Five Forks, twelve miles south-west from Petersburg, and in the rear of the Confederate position.

7. Sheridan reached this point on the 1st of April, and immediately assailed the entrenchments, overwhelming the garrison and taking five thousand prisoners. At the same time Grant made an attack all along the front, breaking the Confederate lines. Lee's right was turned, and, his rear being successfully attacked, his position became untenable. He yielded to

his fate, and Petersburg was abandoned on the night of the 2d of April, and Richmond on the following day. On Monday, the 3d of April, the army of the North entered Richmond, and Lee retreated towards Lynchburg.

8. With sixty thousand men, the remnant of his once magnificent army, the Confederate leader sought some avenue of escape; but Grant hotly pursued him, and Sheridan pressed on his flanks. At length, weakened by desertions and worn out with fatigue and hunger, what remained of the Army of Virginia surrendered on the 9th of April, near Appomattox Court-House. The terms offered by the Union commander were generous, and, having laid down their arms, the Confederate army disbanded.

9. Johnston, at Hillsboro', having heard of Lee's surrender, entered into negotiations with Sherman for a similar purpose. Easy terms were granted, and on the 26th of April the two commanders signed the agreement for capitulation. The two largest Confederate armies having surrendered, the remaining forces in the field soon did likewise; and by the end of May the terrible civil war was at an end.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What was the plan for closing the war?
2. Describe the capture of Fort Fisher.
3. What of Sherman's march to Columbia? Why was Charleston abandoned?
4. What other cities did Sherman capture?
5. What of Sheridan's raid?
6. What was Lee's condition by this time? How did he hope to save himself?
7. Describe the plan of attack, and the capture of Petersburg and Richmond.
8. When and where did Lee surrender?
9. What was done by Johnston and the other Confederate generals?

#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

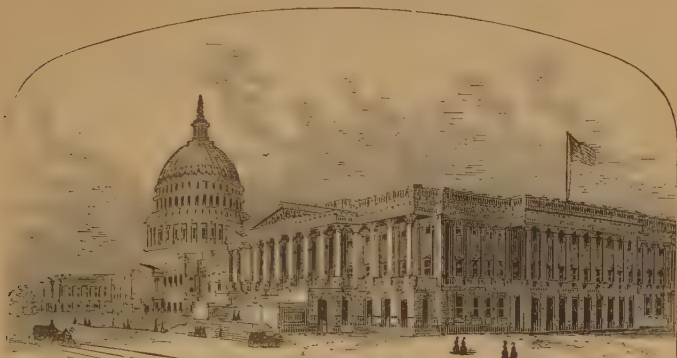
COLUMBIA (Co-lum'-bi-ä).

HARDEE (Har-dee').

HILLSBORO' (Hills'-bür-ro).

APPOMATTOX (Ap-po-mat'-tox).





THE CAPITOL, WASHINGTON.

## TENTH PERIOD.

EFFECTS OF THE CIVIL WAR—  
PASSING EVENTS.

## CHAPTER I.

JOHNSON'S PRESI-  
DENCY.

APRIL 14, 1865—MARCH 3, 1869.

1. WHILE the manifestations of delight at the advent of peace were at

their height, the intelligence was flashed over the country, on the morning of the 15th of April, that President Lincoln had been assassinated on the previous night. The great rejoicing of the nation was immediately hushed, and was followed by



THE MISSISSIPPI BRIDGE, ST. LOUIS.

the deepest mourning, his most strenuous political antagonists being among those who most deeply lamented his death.

2. Abraham Lincoln was shot while seated at Ford's theatre at Washington, on the night of the 14th, by John Wilkes Booth. He lingered in an unconscious state until the next morning, not having spoken from the time he received the wound.

3. Vice-President Andrew Johnson succeeded to the chief magistracy as seventeenth President. The task which devolved upon him was no easy one. The South was to be rehabilitated; the immense Union armies were to be disbanded; the public debt, now grown to the enormous sum of three billions of dollars, was to be provided for; the freedmen of the South were to be cared for, the claims for losses by privateering adjusted, and the general evil effects of civil war counteracted.



ANDREW JOHNSON.

4. On the 29th of April the President issued a proclamation removing the restrictions on Southern commerce. On the 1st of February, 1865, a resolution had passed Congress submitting to the legislatures of the several States an amendment to the Constitution abolishing slavery, and on the 18th of December the Secretary of State, William H. Seward, announced that this the thirteenth amendment to that instrument had been duly ratified by twenty-seven States.

5. On the assembling of Congress in December, 1865, a resolution was passed, with but one dissenting voice, declaring that "the public debt must and ought to be paid, principal and interest," and means were at once taken to provide the large amounts required to pay the interest, and to create a sinking fund for the reduction of the debt itself. This was done by means of duties on imported articles, taxes on manufactures and incomes, and in other ways, all of which were cheerfully submitted to by the people.

6. It was feared that the disbanding of the armies would cause great disturbance throughout the country; but the result

dissipated all doubts on that point, for in six months most of the soldiers had returned to their homes and quietly resumed the occupations of peace.

7. Before the assembling of Congress in the winter of 1865, the President had recognized the State governments formed in Virginia, Tennessee, Arkansas and Louisiana during the war under the protection of the Union army. In other States he appointed provisional governors, and authorized the calling of conventions to form new governments. These conventions having repealed the ordinances of secession, repudiated the Confederate war debt and ratified the thirteenth amendment to the Constitution, the States which they represented were pronounced by the President entitled to restoration to all their rights in the Union.

8. When Congress assembled, great displeasure was manifested with this action of the Executive. It was asserted that he usurped the right of Congress, which alone might prescribe the conditions for the readmission of the seceded States. Furthermore, that body was opposed to their full restoration unless sufficient guarantees of protection were extended to the freedmen, and other conditions complied with. The President's proclamation and orders were therefore treated as null and void, and the "Freedmen's bureau," "civil rights" and "tenure-of-office" bills were passed over his veto.

9. The difficulties between the President and Congress continued until February, 1868, when an order for his impeachment was issued for violating the "tenure-of-office act," in attempting to remove Edwin M. Stanton from the position of Secretary of War. There were eleven counts in the articles of impeachment, one of which was his declaration that Congress, as then constituted, was an illegal body. Upon these charges he was tried and acquitted.

10. On the 28th of July, 1868, another amendment to the Constitution was adopted, guaranteeing equal civil rights to all, and basing the representation in each State on the number of voters.

11. The purchase of Alaska, in October, 1867, from Russia, was effected through the diplomacy of William H. Seward.

Secretary of State. The price paid was seven millions two hundred thousand dollars. Alaska contains five hundred and



WILLIAM H. SEWARD.

sixty-seven thousand square miles, and is situated at the north-western extremity of the North American continent. The Arctic Ocean bounds it on the north, the Pacific Ocean on the south, the Sea of Kamschatka and Behring's Strait on the west, and British America on the east. It is especially valuable for its harbors, furs and fisheries.

**12.** During Johnson's administration a telegraphic cable eighteen hundred and sixty-four miles in length was laid from Valentia Bay, in Ireland, to Heart's Content, Newfoundland. The Old and New Worlds were thus brought into instantaneous communication, and this peaceful triumph of modern science promises to be of greater value to mankind than many victories upon the field.

**13.** A treaty with China was signed during this administration, through the instrumentality of Anson Burlingame, American minister to that country. While the civil war was in progress, an empire was established in Mexico, through the aid of the French, with an Austrian prince, Maximilian, as emperor. As soon as the war was over, the French soldiers, upon the demand of the United States, were recalled, and Maximilian, being left alone, was captured and shot by the Mexicans.

**14.** In the fall of 1868 the presidential election took place, resulting in the choice of General Grant, of Illinois, and Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, the Republican nominees for the Presidency and Vice-Presidency. The Democratic nominees were Horatio Seymour, of New York, and General Frank Blair, of Missouri.

**15.** In February, 1869, the Fifteenth Amendment, securing to negroes the right of voting, was recommended to the States by Congress. It was adopted as part of the Constitution in 1870.

**16.** Nebraska was admitted into the Union in 1867 as the

thirty-seventh State. It is bounded on the east by the Missouri river, south by the 40th parallel, north by the 43d parallel, and west by the 104th meridian. Its breadth is over two hundred miles, its length three hundred and fifty. Its area is seventy-six thousand square miles. It consists principally of prairie land, and has an excellent climate and soil.

### QUESTIONS.

1. What great calamity occurred on the 14th of April of this year?
2. Relate the circumstances.
3. Who succeeded to the Presidency? What difficulties had he to overcome?
4. What of the President's proclamation? What was done by Congress?
5. What resolution concerning the public debt was passed? How was this to be done?
6. What of fears concerning the disbanding of the army?
7. What was the President's policy concerning the seceded States?
8. Upon what grounds did Congress oppose him? What acts were passed over his veto?
9. What is said of his impeachment?
10. Describe the Fourteenth Amendment.
11. How did the United States obtain Alaska? Give its boundaries.
12. How were the Old and New Worlds connected?
13. Through whose influence was a treaty made with China? What empire was established in Mexico? What was its fate?
14. What of the Presidential election of 1868?
15. What of the Fifteenth Amendment?
16. What State was admitted in 1867? Name the boundaries and area of Nebraska.

### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

SEWARD (Soo'-ard).	BEHRING (Bā'-ring).
STANTON (Stān'-ton).	VALENTIA (Vah-len'-shĭ-ă).
ALASKA (Ah-lās'-kă).	BURLINGAME (Bŭr'-lin-gāme).
RUSSIA (Rŭsh'-yă).	MAXIMILIAN (Măx-y'-mil'-yan).
KAMCHATKA (Kām-chat'-kah).	BLAIR (Blāre).



## CHAPTER II.

## GRANT'S PRESIDENCY.

MARCH 4, 1869—MARCH 3, 1877.

1. ULYSSES S. GRANT was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1869, as the eighteenth President of the United States. Al-



ULYSSES S. GRANT.

though a military man by education and an officer of some distinction in the Mexican war, his name was unknown to the country before the breaking out of the civil war. His distinguished services during that struggle have been described at length, and the popularity which he thus won twice carried him triumphantly through the trying ordeal of a political canvass.

2. The first year of his administration was chiefly remarkable for the completion of the Pacific Railroad, connecting California with the Mississippi Valley. This was looked upon



COMPLETION OF THE PACIFIC RAILROAD.

as an event of national interest, and was celebrated by the holding of a service of thanksgiving in Trinity Church, New York.

3. The question of the "Alabama claims" became the subject of a special treaty with England which was signed at Washington on the 8th of May, 1871. The court of arbitration appointed in accordance with this treaty met at Geneva, Switzerland, in 1872, and after a protracted session awarded fifteen millions of dollars damages to the United States as compensation for all losses inflicted by the Alabama and other privateers, which amount was paid in full September 9, 1873.

4. By the same treaty the "fishery," "navigation" and "north-west boundary" questions were settled, the first by permitting Americans to fish on the British-American coasts, the second by opening the river St. Lawrence equally to both nations, and the third by submitting the question to the decision of the emperor William of Germany, who gave the United States a little more than they actually claimed.

5. Two destructive fires occurred during the years 1871 and 1872, in which the cities of Chicago and Boston were in great part consumed. Chicago, which was accidentally set on fire on the 8th of October, 1871, was more than half destroyed, and Boston, in November, 1872, was greatly damaged in its business portions. Many millions of dollars were lost in these conflagrations, but the recuperative energy of their people has restored both cities.

6. In the fall of 1872 the presidential campaign resulted in the re-election of President Grant; Senator Wilson, of Massachusetts, was elected Vice-President on the same ticket. The opposing candidates for the Presidency and Vice-Presidency were Horace Greeley, of New York, and B. Gratz Brown, of Missouri: they carried but six out of the thirty-seven States.

7. After President Grant's re-inauguration, which took place on the 4th of March, 1873, the work of reconstruction of the Southern States continued, until each State now controls its own fortunes and is mistress of its own destiny, except so far as these are inseparable from those of the country at large.

8. Colorado was admitted into the Union as the thirty-eighth State, in 1875, the act taking effect on the 1st of August, 1876. In shape it is a parallelogram, having the 37th and 41st parallels for its northern and southern boundaries and the 102d

and 109th meridians for its eastern and western limits. It is nearly three hundred miles in breadth and four hundred in length; its area is one hundred and forty-one thousand square miles. The State is quite mountainous, and is noted for its healthful climate. The rapidity of its growth in population and material wealth is remarkable.

9. On the 10th of May, 1876, the Centennial Exposition, in Fairmount Park, Philadelphia, was formally opened, President Grant starting the grand machinery, with Dom Pedro, Emperor of Brazil, assisting in the ceremonies. It proved a great success, and, after having been visited by millions of people, a large number of whom were foreigners, it was closed with impressive formalities on the 10th of November of the same year.

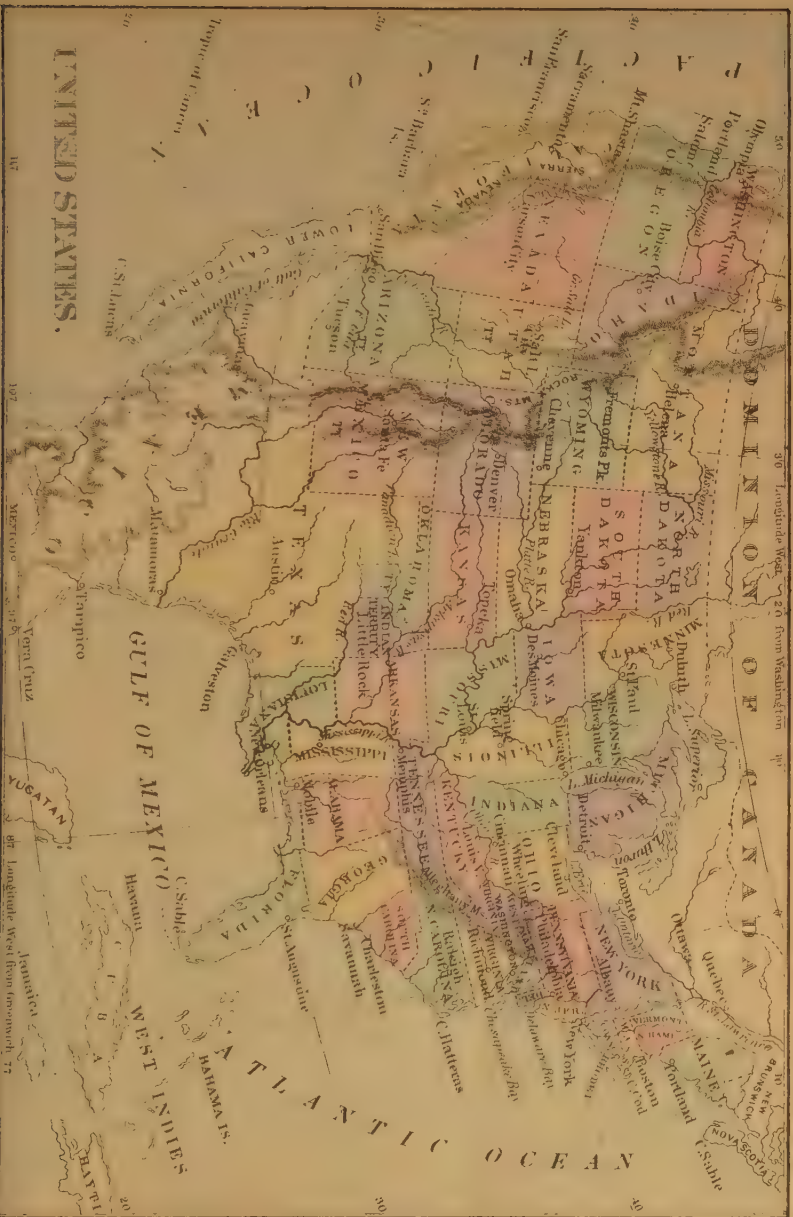
10. On the 16th of June, Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, and William A. Wheeler, of New York, were nominated by the Republicans for the offices of President and Vice-President of the United States; and on the 28th and 29th of the same month the Democrats nominated Samuel J. Tilden, of New York, and Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana, respectively, for the same high positions.

11. Indian troubles continued to afflict the nation during the remainder of Grant's administration, and many valuable officers, among them General Custer, lost their lives in the seemingly irrepressible struggle with the wild children of the forest. Corruption and dishonesty in high political and commercial positions also exercised the public mind greatly at this time, and manifested clearly how terribly demoralizing upon a nation are the effects of a long-continued, gigantic war.

12. The November elections for the Presidency were exceedingly close, the result depending upon the vote in South Carolina, Florida, and Oregon. These States were claimed by both parties; and, after various ineffectual means of settlement had been tried, by Congressional enactment an Electoral Commission was formed, consisting of fifteen members—five from the Senate, five from the House of Representatives, and five from the Justices of the Supreme Court.

13. To these Commissioners was intrusted the final settlement

UNITED STATES.



127

127

MEXICO

127

Yucatan

Yucatan

Yucatan

Yucatan

Yucatan

Yucatan

Yucatan

Yucatan

36 Longitude West 120 from Washington

W

36

36

36

36

36

36

36

36

36

36

36

36





of the question, and they, by a vote of eight to seven, decided in favor of the Republican nominees, Hayes and Wheeler.

14. On the 3d of March, 1877, President Grant retired from the presidential chair, after having occupied it for eight years of a very momentous period of the country's history. Although surrounded by corrupt, intriguing men, his personal integrity was never doubted by the people, and he occupies a high place in the regard of men of all parties.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. When was Grant inaugurated? How did he gain his popularity?
2. For what was the first year of his administration remarkable?
3. How were the Alabama claims settled?
4. What other questions were settled by this treaty?
5. What is said of the Boston and Chicago fires?
6. What was the result of the presidential campaign of 1872?
7. When did Grant's second inauguration take place? What of the reconstruction of the Southern States?
8. What is the thirty-eighth State? Give its boundaries and area.
9. What took place on the 10th of May, 1876? Who assisted President Grant on the occasion? When did the Exhibition close?
10. What event took place on the 16th of June, 1876? and what on the 28th and 29th of the same month?
11. What is said of Indian troubles? What of corruption?
12. What was the result of the November elections? Upon the votes of what States did it depend? Who claimed these States? What mode of settlement was agreed upon? How was the Commission composed?
13. What was the decision of the Commissioners?
14. What is said of President Grant's administration?



#### PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

ULYSSES (Yoo-liss'-ēs).

CHICAGO (Shĭ-kaw'-gō).

(ENEVA (Jĕn-ē'-vah)

| COLORADO (Cōl-ō-rah'-dō).

DOM PEDRO (Dōm Pay'-dro).

## CHAPTER III.

*HAYES'S PRESIDENCY.*

MARCH 5, 1877—MARCH 4, 1881.

1. RUTHERFORD B. HAYES was inaugurated President of the United States, March 5, 1877 (the 4th falling upon Sunday), and with him was associated William A. Wheeler as Vice-President. Mr. Hayes had the reputation in his own State—Ohio—of being a conservative and prudent public man, with many of the elements of the true statesman.

2. Coming into office as a Republican, with the lower house of Congress Democratic and the upper house barely Republican, it behooved him to pursue a middle course, and this seemed to be in accordance with his natural disposition.

3. His first efforts were turned to the restoration of fraternal feelings between the two sections so lately open enemies, and evidently not yet cordial friends. But whether the policy adopted by him was the correct one, time only can decide. We are not yet in a condition to form a judgment, and can but express the hope that those efforts shall not prove abortive.

4. Among the most noted events in President Hayes's administration have been the issuing of a proclamation on June 22, 1877, forbidding office-holders to take active part in politics; the terrible labor-riots of July, 1877, which convulsed many of the States in the North; and the decision of the Fishery Commission, November 23, 1877, requiring the United States to pay five and a half millions of dollars for the privilege of fishing in Canadian waters.

5. Of the proclamation of June 22, it can only be said that it was very distasteful to Mr. Hayes's Republican supporters, as was, indeed, his whole Southern policy up to that time. The riots of July, which were especially directed against certain railroad companies, subsided after the wanton destruction of many millions' worth of property. The justice of the Fishery award is still a mooted question.

6. Other important events occurred during Mr. Hayes's ad-

ministration, but they were of such a character as hardly to call for a place in a brief work like this. Toward the end of his term there was a manifest revival of business and a natural return to national prosperity.

7. A matter which especially exercised the public mind at the close of Mr. Hayes's term was the succession to the presidency. A portion of the Republican party favored the nomination of General Grant, who had just returned from a "voyage around the world." During his travels he was everywhere received with the respect accorded to the chief magistrate of a great nation.

8. But, though General Grant still retained the respect and gratitude of the country, there were serious objections to a "third term." In the Republican Convention, which met at Chicago on the 2d of June, 1880, he and his principal competitor, James G. Blaine of Maine, were defeated, and General James A. Garfield of Ohio was nominated.

9. With General Garfield for President, General Chester A. Arthur of New York was associated as nominee for the Vice-Presidency. As a rule, the Vice-Presidency is an office of small political moment, but four memorable occasions have brought the occupants of this office into prominence. John Tyler succeeded William Henry Harrison; Millard Fillmore, Zachary Taylor; Andrew Johnson, Abraham Lincoln; and (as will be seen presently) Chester A. Arthur succeeded James A. Garfield.

10. The Hayes administration expired by limitation on the 4th of March, 1880, at which time Mr. Hayes retired to private life.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. When was President Hayes inaugurated? What is said of him?
2. What of his course as President?
3. To what were his first efforts turned?
4. What noted events in his administration?
5. What is said of the proclamation of June 22 and the riots of July?
6. What mention is made of the return to national prosperity at the close of Mr. Hayes's administration?

7. What seemed to exercise the public mind at this time?
8. What is said of General Grant's popularity?
9. Who were nominated by the Republican party for President and Vice-President?
10. When did the Hayes administration terminate?

PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

HAYES (Hāze).

---

CHAPTER IV.

*GARFIELD'S PRESIDENCY.*

MARCH 4, 1881—SEPTEMBER 19, 1881.

1. JAMES ABRAM GARFIELD was elected the twentieth President of the United States on the 2d of November, 1880. His competitor was General Winfield Scott Hancock, a brilliant soldier of the war for the preservation of the Union.

2. Soon after President Garfield's inauguration a dispute arose between the administration and leading Republican senators. Popular sentiment was with the administration; and when the two senators from the State of New York resigned, they found they had made a mistake, for, instead of being returned as their own successors, they were permitted to remain in private life.

3. The controversy between the factions of the Republican party proved fatal to the President; for on the 2d of July, 1881, a disappointed office-seeker, named Guiteau, shot the President in a railway-station at Washington.

4. President Garfield, after lingering until the 19th of September, died from the wound inflicted by the assassin. All the governments of the civilized world officially expressed their sympathy with the nation in this bereavement.

5. No measures of importance were accomplished during the brief presidency of General Garfield, but the wise reform in the civil service was advanced in his time, and bids fair to become the settled policy of the country.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who was elected President on the 2d of November, 1880, and who was his competitor?
2. How did the masses regard the President's dispute with certain senators?
3. What was the fatal result of the controversy?
4. When did President Garfield die?
5. What now appears to be the settled policy of the country with regard to the public offices?

PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

GARFIELD (Gar'field).

CHAPTER V.

ARTHUR'S PRESIDENCY.

SEPTEMBER 19, 1881—MARCH 3, 1885.

1. UPON the death of President Garfield, on the 19th of September, Vice-President Arthur was immediately sworn into office at his home in the city of New York by one of the judges of the Supreme Court of the State of New York, and formally in Washington on the 22d by the Chief-Justice of the Supreme Court of the United States.

2. His first official act was to proclaim a day of mourning for his predecessor, which was universally observed throughout the Union, and to a great extent in other countries.

3. Fearing that great trouble would ensue in case of the death of both the President and the Vice-President, Congress at its next session took the matter into consideration, and it was finally decided that in case of the removal, death, resignation, or inability of both these officers, a member of the Cabinet should succeed to the Presidency, the order of succession being the Secretary of State, the Secretary of the Treasury, the Secretary of War, the Attorney-General, the Postmaster-General, the Secretary of the Navy, and the Secretary of the Interior.



4. In 1882, Congress passed an act forbidding Chinese immigration into the United States for a period of ten years. During the same year the Northern Pacific Railroad was completed, and the great suspension bridge connecting the cities of New York and Brooklyn was opened to the public. This bridge is a wonderful triumph of engineering skill. The length of the central span is 1596 feet, and its height above the water 135 feet.

5. In June, 1884, Lieutenant Greely and six companions, survivors of a polar expedition sent out by the United States government in 1881, were rescued near Cape Sabine, Smith Sound. The remainder of the party, nineteen in number, had perished through exposure and starvation. Two members of the expedition, Lieutenant Lockwood and Sergeant Brainerd, journeyed with dogs along the coast of Greenland to latitude  $83^{\circ} 24'$ , the highest northern latitude yet reached by man.

6. At the Republican National Convention, held in Chicago in June, 1884, James G. Blaine, of Maine, was nominated for President, and John A. Logan, of Illinois, for Vice-President. The Democratic nominations made at the same city in July, 1884, were Grover Cleveland, of New York, for President, and Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana, for Vice-President. The election resulted in the success of the Democratic candidates.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. When and where was President Arthur sworn into office?
2. What was his first official act?
3. How was the question of the Presidential succession decided?
4. What were the principal events of 1882?
5. What is said of the Greely expedition? Of Lockwood and Brainerd?
6. What nominations for President and Vice-President were made in 1884? What was the result of the election?

## CHAPTER VI.

## CLEVELAND'S PRESIDENCY.

MARCH 4, 1885—MARCH 3, 1889.

1. PRESIDENT CLEVELAND was duly inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1885. A widespread business depression existed at the time, which, however, gradually gave way to renewed confidence and a brighter outlook for the future. The return to prosperity was retarded by the agitation of the labor question, leading in 1886 and 1887 to extensive "strikes" throughout the country, accompanied, in some cases, by riots and bloodshed.

2. On the 23d of July, 1885, General Grant died, after a long and painful illness. His death was sincerely mourned both at home and abroad. General George B. McClellan, at one time commander-in-chief of the Army of the Potomac, died in October, 1885; Vice-President Hendricks, in November of the same year; General W. S. Hancock, in February, 1886; and General John A. Logan, in December, 1886.

3. The Centennial anniversary of the adoption of the Constitution of the United States (see paragraph 8, page 157) occurred in September, 1887. It was appropriately celebrated, on the part of the thirteen original States, by civic and military displays in the city of Philadelphia. These displays were witnessed by President Cleveland and other high officials.

4. Toward the close of President Cleveland's administration the Tariff became the subject of much discussion, and various bills affecting the existing Tariff laws were proposed in Congress. The President in his annual message took a decided stand in favor of a reduction of the Tariff duties, and this question was made the leading issue of the Presidential campaign of 1888.

5. The Democratic convention met at St. Louis, June 5, 1888, and nominated President Cleveland for a second term and Allen G. Thurman of Ohio for Vice-President. The

Republican convention met at Chicago, June 19, and nominated for President, Benjamin Harrison of Indiana, grandson of the ninth President of the United States; and for Vice-President, Levi P. Morton of New York. The Prohibition candidates were Clinton B. Fisk of New Jersey for President, and John A. Brooks of Missouri for Vice-President.

6. At the election, held in November, 1888, there were eight Presidential candidates in the field. Public interest centred in the state of New York, whose vote was expected to decide the contest. This state, which had hitherto given Democratic majorities, was carried by the Republicans, which event assured the election of Harrison and Morton, who were duly inaugurated on the fourth of March, 1889.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. When was President Cleveland inaugurated? What condition of business affairs existed at that time? What of the labor question?
2. What is said of the death of General Grant? What other deaths occurred soon after?
3. Give an account of the celebration of the Centennial anniversary of the adoption of the Constitution.
4. What is said of the Tariff? Of President Cleveland's position?
5. What was done by the Democratic National Convention of 1888? By the Republican Convention? Who were the Prohibition candidates?
6. What is said of the November election of 1888?

---

## CHAPTER VII.

### *HARRISON'S PRESIDENCY.*

MARCH 4, 1889.

1. The centennial celebration of the anniversary of Washington's inauguration as the first President of the United States was held in the city of New York. President Harrison, who took a prominent part in the proceedings, left Washington City April 29, 1889, and passed as nearly as possible over the route traversed by the first President. The

journey from Elizabethport, New Jersey, to Wall Street, New York, was by water, which gave occasion for a fine naval display. The day following this display was marked by impressive ceremonies, including a splendid military review, and the celebration closed with appropriate festivities.

2. In May, 1889, the central and western portions of Pennsylvania were visited by the most disastrous floods ever known in the United States. Many towns and districts suffered severely, but nowhere was the loss of life and property so appalling as in the valley of the Conemaugh River. A dam at the head-waters of that stream gave way, and an immense volume of water rushed down the narrow valley, sweeping away the cities and towns along its banks. The city of Johnstown was almost totally destroyed, and upwards of 2000 people perished.

3. In 1889 the territories of Washington, Montana, and Dakota became states, the latter being divided into North Dakota and South Dakota. During this year the western part of Indian Territory was thrown open to settlers. The land was taken up with unexampled rapidity, and the following year the district was organized as the Territory of Oklahoma.

4. In 1890 Congress passed an act admitting Idaho as the 43d state, and Wyoming as the 44th. The most important event of President Harrison's administration—the passage of the McKinley tariff bill—occurred during this session. The population of the United States at this time was shown by the census of 1890 to be nearly 63,000,000.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Give an account of the Centennial celebration of the anniversary of Washington's inauguration.

2. Describe the great floods in Pennsylvania in May, 1889.

3. What new states were admitted in 1889? What territory was organized the following year?

4. What new states were formed in 1890? What of the McKinley tariff bill? Of the population?





# APPENDIX.

---

## DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

A DECLARATION BY THE REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, IN CONGRESS ASSEMBLED, ADOPTED JULY 4, 1776.

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident—that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these states. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the state remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these states; for that purpose obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislature.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation :

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us;

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these states;

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world;

For imposing taxes on us without our consent;

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury;

For transporting us beyond seas, to be tried for pretended offences;

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies ;

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our governments ;

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries, to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the

most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in General Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the World for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these Colonies, solemnly publish and declare that these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved, and that, as free and independent states, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent states may of right do. And for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

Signed by

JOHN HANCOCK, of Massachusetts.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

Josiah Bartlett,  
William Whipple,  
Matthew Thornton.

MASSACHUSETTS BAY.

Samuel Adams,  
John Adams,  
Robert Treat Paine,  
Elbridge Gerry.

RHODE ISLAND, ETC.

Stephen Hopkins,  
William Ellery.

CONNECTICUT.

Roger Sherman,  
Samuel Huntington,  
William Williams,  
Oliver Wolcott.

NEW YORK.

William Floyd,  
Philip Livingston,  
Francis Lewis,  
Lewis Morris.

NEW JERSEY.

Richard Stockton,  
John Witherspoon,  
Francis Hopkinson,  
John Hart,  
Abraham Clark.

PENNSYLVANIA.

Robert Morris,  
Benjamin Rush,  
Benjamin Franklin  
John Morton,  
George Clymer,  
James Smith,  
George Taylor,  
James Wilson,  
George Ross.

DELAWARE.

Cæsar Rodney,  
George Read,  
Thomas M'Kean.

MARYLAND.

Samuel Chase,  
William Paca,  
Thomas Stone,  
Charles Carroll, of Carrollton.

VIRGINIA.

George Wythe,  
Richard Henry Lee,  
Thomas Jefferson,  
Benjamin Harrison,  
Thomas Nelson, Jr.,  
Francis Lightfoot Lee,  
Carter Braxton.

NORTH CAROLINA.

William Hooper,  
Joseph Hewes,  
John Penn.

SOUTH CAROLINA

Edward Rutledge,  
Thomas Heyward, Jr  
Thomas Lynch, Jr.,  
Arthur Middleton.

GEORGIA.

Button Gwinnett  
Lyman Hall,  
George Walton.

## ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION

And perpetual union between the States of New Hampshire, Massachusetts Bay, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia.

## ARTICLE I.

The style of this confederacy shall be "THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA."

## ARTICLE II.

Each State retains its sovereignty, freedom, and independence, and every power, jurisdiction, and right which is not by this confederation expressly delegated to the United States in Congress assembled.

## ARTICLE III.

The said States hereby severally enter into a firm league of friendship with each other, for their common defence, the security of their liberties, and their mutual and general welfare, binding themselves to assist each other against all force offered to, or attacks made upon them, or any of them, on account of religion, sovereignty, trade, or any other pretence whatever.

## ARTICLE IV.

The better to secure and perpetuate mutual friendship and intercourse among the people of the different States in this Union, the free inhabitants of each of these States, paupers, vagabonds, and fugitives from justice excepted, shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of free citizens in the several States; and the people of each State shall have free ingress and regress to and from any other State, and shall enjoy therein all the privileges of trade and commerce, subject to the same duties, impositions, and restrictions as the inhabitants thereof respectively; provided that such restriction shall not extend so far as to prevent the removal of property imported into any State, to any other State of which the owner is an inhabitant; provided also that no imposition, duties, or restriction shall be laid by any State, on the property of the United States, or either of them.

If any person guilty of, or charged with, treason, felony, or other high misdemeanor, in any State, shall flee from justice, and be found in any of the United States, he shall, upon demand of the governor or executive power of the State from which he fled, be delivered up and removed to the State having jurisdiction of his offence.

Full faith and credit shall be given in each of these States to the records, acts, and judicial proceedings of the courts and magistrates of every other State.

## ARTICLE V.

For the more convenient management of the general interest of the United States, delegates shall be annually appointed in such manner as the legislature of each State shall direct, to meet in Congress on the first Monday in November, in every year, with a power reserved to each State to recall its delegates, or any of them, at any time within the year, and to send others in their stead, for the remainder of the year.

No State shall be represented in Congress by less than two, nor by more than seven members; and no person shall be capable of being a delegate for more than three years in any term of six years; nor shall any person, being a

delegate, be capable of holding any office under the United States, for which he, or another for his benefit, receives any salary, fees, or emolument of any kind.

Each State shall maintain its own delegates in any meeting of the States, and while they act as members of the committee of the States.

In determining questions in the United States in Congress assembled, each State shall have one vote.

Freedom of speech and debate in Congress shall not be impeached or questioned in any court, or place out of Congress; and the members of Congress shall be protected in their persons from arrests and imprisonments, during the time of their going to and from, and attendance on, Congress, except for treason, felony, or breach of the peace.

#### ARTICLE VI.

No State, without the consent of the United States in Congress assembled, shall send any embassy to, or receive any embassy from, or enter into any conference, agreement, alliance, or treaty with any king, prince, or state; nor shall any person holding any office of profit or trust under the United States, or any of them, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state; nor shall the United States in Congress assembled, or any of them, grant any title of nobility.

No two or more States shall enter into any treaty, confederation, or alliance whatever between them, without the consent of the United States in Congress assembled, specifying accurately the purposes for which the same is to be entered into, and how long it shall continue.

No State shall lay any imposts or duties, which may interfere with any stipulations in treaties entered into by the United States in Congress assembled, with any king, prince, or state, in pursuance of any treaties already proposed by Congress to the courts of France and Spain.

No vessels of war shall be kept up, in time of peace, by any State, except such number only, as shall be deemed necessary, by the United States in Congress assembled, for the defence of such State, or its trade; nor shall any body of forces be kept up by any State, in time of peace, except such number only as, in the judgment of the United States in Congress assembled, shall be deemed requisite to garrison the forts necessary for the defence of such State; but every State shall always keep up a well-regulated and disciplined militia, sufficiently armed and accoutred; and shall provide and have constantly ready for use, in public stores, a due number of field-pieces and tents, and a proper quantity of arms, ammunition, and camp equipage.

No State shall engage in any war, without the consent of the United States in Congress assembled, unless such State be actually invaded by enemies, or shall have received certain advice of a resolution being formed by some nation of Indians to invade such State, and the danger is so imminent as not to admit of a delay till the United States in Congress assembled can be consulted; nor shall any State grant commissions to any ship or vessels of war, nor letters of marque or reprisal, except it be after a declaration of war by the United States in Congress assembled; and then only against the kingdom or state, and the subjects thereof, against which war has been so declared, and under such regulations as shall be established by the United States in Congress assembled; unless such State be infested by pirates, in which case vessels of war may be fitted out for that occasion, and kept so long as the danger shall continue, or until the United States in Congress assembled shall determine otherwise.

#### ARTICLE VII.

When land forces are raised by any State for the common defence, all officers of or under the rank of colonel shall be appointed by the legislature of



each State respectively by whom such forces shall be raised, or in such manner as such State shall direct; and all vacancies shall be filled up by the State which first made the appointment.

#### ARTICLE VIII.

All charges of war, and all other expenses that shall be incurred for the common defence, or general welfare, and allowed by the United States in Congress assembled, shall be defrayed out of a common treasury, which shall be supplied by the several States in proportion to the value of all land within each State, granted to or surveyed for any person, as such land and the buildings and improvements thereon shall be estimated, according to such mode as the United States in Congress assembled shall, from time to time, direct and appoint. The taxes for paying that proportion shall be laid and levied by the authority and direction of the legislatures of the several States within the time agreed upon by the United States in Congress assembled.

#### ARTICLE IX.

The United States in Congress assembled, shall have the sole and exclusive right and power of determining on peace and war, except in the cases mentioned in the sixth article: of sending and receiving ambassadors: entering into treaties and alliances: provided that no treaty of commerce shall be made whereby the legislative power of the respective States shall be restrained from imposing such imposts and duties on foreigners as their own people are subjected to, or from prohibiting the exportation or importation of any species of goods or commodities whatsoever: of establishing rules for deciding, in all cases, what captures on land or water shall be legal, and in what manner prizes taken by land or naval forces in the service of the United States shall be divided or appropriated: of granting letters of marque and reprisal in times of peace: appointing courts for the trial of piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and establishing courts for receiving and determining, finally, appeals in all cases of captures: provided that no member of Congress shall be appointed a judge of any of the said courts.

The United States in Congress assembled shall also be the last resort on appeal in all disputes and differences now subsisting, or that hereafter may arise, between two or more States, concerning boundary, jurisdiction, or any other cause whatever; which authority shall always be exercised in the manner following. Whenever the legislative or executive authority, or lawful agent, of any State in controversy with another, shall present a petition to Congress, stating the matter in question, and praying for a hearing, notice thereof shall be given, by order of Congress, to the legislative or executive authority of the other State in controversy, and a day assigned for the appearance of the parties by their lawful agents, who shall then be directed to appoint, by joint consent, commissioners or judges to constitute a court for hearing and determining the matter in question: but if they cannot agree, Congress shall name three persons out of each of the United States, and from the list of such persons each party shall alternately strike out one, the petitioners beginning, until the number shall be reduced to thirteen, and from that number not less than seven, nor more than nine, names, as Congress shall direct, shall, in the presence of Congress, be drawn out by lot; and the persons whose names shall be so drawn, or any five of them, shall be commissioners or judges to hear and finally determine the controversy, so always as a major part of the judges who shall hear the cause shall agree in the determination: and if either party shall neglect to attend at the day appointed, without showing reasons which Congress shall judge sufficient.

or being present shall refuse to strike, the Congress shall proceed to nominate three persons out of each State, and the secretary of Congress shall strike in behalf of such party absent or refusing; and the judgment and sentence of the court, to be appointed in the manner before prescribed, shall be final and conclusive: and if any of the parties shall refuse to submit to the authority of such court, or to appear or defend their claim or cause, the court shall, nevertheless, proceed to pronounce sentence or judgment, which shall in like manner be final and decisive; the judgment, or sentence, and other proceedings, being in either case transmitted to Congress, and lodged among the acts of Congress, for the security of the parties concerned: provided that every commissioner, before he sits in judgment, shall take an oath, to be administered by one of the judges of the supreme or superior court of the State where the cause shall be tried, "well and truly to hear and determine the matter in question, according to the best of his judgment, without favor, affection, or hope of reward:" provided also that no State shall be deprived of territory for the benefit of the United States.

All controversies concerning the private right of soil claimed under different grants of two or more States, whose jurisdictions, as they may respect such lands and the States which passed such grants, are adjusted, the said grants, or either of them, being at the same time claimed to have originated antecedent to such settlement of jurisdiction, shall, on the petition of either party to the Congress of the United States, be finally determined, as near as may be, in the same manner as is before prescribed for deciding disputes respecting territorial jurisdiction between different States.

The United States in Congress assembled shall also have the sole and exclusive right and power of regulating the alloy and value of coin struck by their own authority, or by that of the respective States: fixing the standard of weights and measures throughout the United States: regulating the trade and managing all affairs with the Indians, not members of any of the States; provided that the legislative right of any State within its own limits be not infringed or violated: establishing or regulating post-offices from one State to another, throughout all the United States, and exacting such postage on the papers passing through the same as may be requisite to defray the expenses of the said office: appointing all officers of the land forces in the service of the United States, excepting regimental officers: appointing all the officers of the naval forces, and commissioning all officers whatever in the service of the United States: making rules for the government and regulation of the said land and naval forces, and directing their operations.

The United States in Congress assembled shall have authority to appoint a committee, to sit in the recess of Congress, to be denominated A COMMITTEE OF THE STATES, and to consist of one delegate from each State; and to appoint such other committees and civil officers as may be necessary for managing the general affairs of the United States under their direction: to appoint one of their number to preside; provided that no person be allowed to serve in the office of president more than one year in any term of three years: to ascertain the necessary sums of money to be raised for the service of the United States, and to appropriate and apply the same for defraying the public expenses: to borrow money or emit bills on the credit of the United States, transmitting every half year to the respective States an account of the sums of money so borrowed or emitted: to build and equip a navy: to agree upon the number of land forces, and to make requisitions from each State for its quota, in proportion to the number of white inhabitants in such State, which requisition shall be binding; and thereupon the legislature of each State shall appoint the regimental officers, raise the men, and clothe, arm, and equip them, in a soldierlike manner, at the expense of

the United States; and the officers and men so clothed, armed, and equipped shall march to the place appointed, and within the time agreed on, by the United States in Congress assembled; but if the United States in Congress assembled shall, on consideration of circumstances, judge proper that any State should not raise men, or should raise a smaller number than its quota, and that any other State should raise a greater number of men than the quota thereof, such extra number shall be raised, officered, clothed, armed, and equipped, in the same manner as the quota of such State, unless the legislature of such State shall judge that such extra number cannot be safely spared out of the same; in which case they shall raise, officer, clothe, arm, and equip as many of such extra number as they judge can be safely spared; and the officers and men so clothed, armed, and equipped shall march to the place appointed, and within the time agreed on, by the United States in Congress assembled.

The United States in Congress assembled shall never engage in a war; nor grant letters of marque and reprisal in time of peace; nor enter into any treaties or alliances; nor coin money; nor regulate the value thereof; nor ascertain the sums and expenses necessary for the defence and welfare of the United States, or any of them; nor emit bills; nor borrow money on the credit of the United States; nor appropriate money; nor agree upon the number of vessels of war to be built or purchased or the number of land or sea forces to be raised; nor appoint a commander-in-chief of the army or navy; unless nine States assent to the same; nor shall a question on any other point, except for adjourning from day to day, be determined, unless by the votes of a majority of the United States in Congress assembled.

The Congress of the United States shall have power to adjourn to any time within the year, and to any place within the United States, so that no period of adjournment be for a longer duration than the space of six months; and shall publish the journal of their proceedings monthly, except such parts thereof relating to treaties, alliances, or military operations as in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the delegates of each State, on any question, shall be entered on the journal, when it is desired by any delegate; and the delegates of a State, or any of them at his or their request, shall be furnished with a transcript of the said journal, except such parts as are above excepted; to lay before the legislatures of the several States.

#### ARTICLE X.

The committee of the States, or any nine of them, shall be authorized to execute, in the recess of Congress, such of the powers of Congress as the United States in Congress assembled, by the consent of nine States, shall, from time to time, think expedient to vest them with; provided that no power be delegated to the said committee, for the exercise of which, by the articles of confederation, the voice of the nine States in the Congress of the United States assembled is requisite.

#### ARTICLE XI.

Canada acceding to this confederation, and joining in the measures of the United States, shall be admitted into and entitled to all the advantages of this Union. But no other colony shall be admitted into the same, unless such admission be agreed to by nine States.

#### ARTICLE XII.

All bills of credit emitted, moneys borrowed, and debts contracted, by or under the authority of Congress, before the assembling of the United States in pursuance of the present confederation, shall be deemed and considered

as a charge against the United States, for payment and satisfaction whereof the said United States, and the public faith, are hereby solemnly pledged.

### ARTICLE XIII.

Every State shall abide by the determinations of the United States in Congress, on all questions which by this confederation are submitted to them. And the articles of this confederation shall be inviolably observed by every State, and the union shall be perpetual. Nor shall any alteration at any time hereafter be made in any of them, unless such alteration be agreed to in a Congress of the United States, and be afterwards confirmed by the legislatures of every State.

And whereas it hath pleased the Great Governor of the World to incline the hearts of the legislatures we respectively represent in Congress to approve of, and to authorize us to ratify, the said articles of confederation and perpetual union:

KNOW YE, That we, the undersigned delegates, by virtue of the power and authority to us given for that purpose, do by these presents, in the name and in behalf of our respective constituents, fully and entirely ratify and confirm each and every of the said articles of confederation and perpetual union, and all and singular the matters and things therein contained. And we do further solemnly plight and engage the faith of our respective constituents, that they shall abide by the determinations of the United States in Congress assembled on all questions which by the said confederation are submitted to them; and that the articles thereof shall be inviolably observed by the States we respectively represent; and that the union shall be perpetual.

In witness whereof, we have hereunto set our hands in Congress.

Done at Philadelphia, in the State of Pennsylvania, the ninth day of July, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and seventy-eight, and in the third year of the Independence of America.

## CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

WE the People of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

### ARTICLE I.

SECTION 1 All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION 2. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several



States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three; Massachusetts, eight; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, one; Connecticut, five; New York, six; New Jersey, four; Pennsylvania, eight; Delaware, one; Maryland, six; Virginia, ten; North Carolina, five; South Carolina, five; and Georgia, three.

When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION 3. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year; and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the Legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

The Vice-President of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECTION 4. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting



shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION 5. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties, as each house may provide.

Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy, and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

SECTION 6. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

SECTION 7. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it, but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House

of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION 8. The Congress shall have power—

To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States and with the Indian tribes;

To establish an uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;

To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

To establish post-offices and post-roads;

To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;

To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;

To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations;

To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

To provide and maintain a navy;

To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections and repel invasions;

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the Legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards, and other needful buildings; and

To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION 9. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

No bill of attainder or ex-post-facto law shall be passed.

No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States: and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECTION 10. No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex-post-facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any impost or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war, in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

## ARTICLE II.

SECTION 1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress: but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

[The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; and they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each, which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate. The president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed: and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for President; and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list the said House shall, in like manner, choose the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation

from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the Vice-President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them by ballot the Vice-President.]

The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

No person except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President; and such officer shall act accordingly until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation: "I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

SECTION 2. The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States: he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate shall appoint, ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law: but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION 3. He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient: he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn



them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION 4. The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

### ARTICLE III.

SECTION 1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the Supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECTION 2. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction: to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more States; between a State and citizens of another State; between citizens of different States; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens or subjects.

In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SECTION 3. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort.

No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

### ARTICLE IV.

SECTION 1. Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State; and the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION 2. The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof,



escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECTION 3. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned, as well as of the Congress.

The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SECTION 4. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion, and on application of the Legislature, or of the executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence.

#### ARTICLE V.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the Legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

#### ARTICLE VI.

All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the confederation.

This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

#### ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

Done in convention, by the unanimous consent of the States present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth.

In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON,  
*President, and Deputy from Virginia*

NEW HAMPSHIRE.  
John Langdon,  
Nicholas Gilman.

MASSACHUSETTS.  
Nathaniel Gorham,  
Rufus King.

CONNECTICUT.  
William Samuel Johnson,  
Roger Sherman.

NEW YORK.  
Alexander Hamilton.

NEW JERSEY.  
William Livingston,  
David Brearley,  
William Paterson,  
Jonathan Dayton.

PENNSYLVANIA.  
Benjamin Franklin,  
Thomas Mifflin,  
Robert Morris,  
George Clymer,  
Thomas Fitzsimons,  
Jared Ingersoll,  
James Wilson,  
Gouverneur Morris.

DELAWARE.

George Reed,  
Gunning Bedford, Jr.,  
John Dickinson,  
Richard Bassett,  
Jacob Broom.

MARYLAND.

James McHenry,  
Daniel of St. Thomas Jenifer,  
Daniel Carroll.

VIRGINIA.

John Blair,  
James Madison, Jr.

NORTH CAROLINA.

William Blount,  
Richard Dobbs Spaight,  
Hugh Williamson.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

John Rutledge,  
Charles Cotesworth Pinckney,  
Charles Pinckney,  
Pierce Butler.

GEORGIA.

William Few,  
Abraham Baldwin.

*Attest :*

WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

## AMENDMENTS

TO THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES, RATIFIED ACCORDING TO THE PROVISIONS OF THE FIFTH ARTICLE OF THE FOREGOING CONSTITUTION.

ARTICLE THE FIRST.—Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for redress of grievances.

ARTICLE THE SECOND.—A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE THE THIRD.—No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE THE FOURTH.—The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

ARTICLE THE FIFTH.—No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

ARTICLE THE SIXTH.—In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation: to be confronted with the witnesses against him: to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

ARTICLE THE SEVENTH.—In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States than according to the rules of the common law.

ARTICLE THE EIGHTH.—Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

ARTICLE THE NINTH.—The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE THE TENTH.—The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

ARTICLE THE ELEVENTH.—The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

ARTICLE THE TWELFTH.—The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate; the president of the Senate shall, in presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice: and if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or

other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

ARTICLE THE THIRTEENTH.—*Section 1.* Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

*Section 2.* Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

ARTICLE THE FOURTEENTH.—*Section 1.* All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

*Section 2.* Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive or judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

*Section 3.* No person shall be a senator or representative in Congress, or elector of President and Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

*Section 4.* The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

*Section 5.* The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

ARTICLE THE FIFTEENTH.—*Section 1.* The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

*Section 2.* The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

HISTORICAL AND STATISTICAL TABLE OF THE UNITED STATES.

No.	State.	When settled.	Where settled first.	By whom settled.	When adopted the Constitution.	When admitted into the Union.	Area in sq. miles.	Pop. in 1890.
1	Virginia.....	1607	Jamestown.....	English.....	June 26, 1788.....	.....	42,450	1,655,980
2	New York.....	1614	Albany.....	Dutch.....	July 26, 1788.....	.....	49,170	5,997,843
3	Massachusetts.....	1620	Plymouth.....	English.....	February 6, 1788.....	.....	8,315	2,298,943
4	New Hampshire.....	1624	Dover.....	English.....	June 21, 1788.....	.....	9,305	376,330
5	New Jersey.....	1624	Bergen.....	Dutch and Daves.....	December 18, 1787.....	.....	7,815	1,444,933
6	Delaware.....	1627	Cape Henlopen.....	Swedes and Finns.....	December 7, 1787.....	.....	2,050	168,463
7	Connecticut.....	1633	Windsor.....	Emigrants from Massachusetts.....	January 9, 1788.....	.....	4,990	746,258
8	Maryland.....	1634	St. Mary's.....	English.....	April 28, 1788.....	.....	12,210	1,042,390
9	Rhode Island.....	1636	Providence.....	Roger Williams.....	May 29, 1790.....	.....	1,290	345,506
10	North Carolina.....	1653	Albemarle.....	English.....	November 21, 1789.....	.....	52,250	1,617,947
11	South Carolina.....	1670	Port Royal.....	English.....	May 23, 1788.....	.....	30,570	1,311,149
12	Pennsylvania.....	1682	Philadelphia.....	English.....	December 12, 1787.....	.....	45,215	5,238,014
13	Georgia.....	1733	Savannah.....	English.....	January 9, 1788.....	.....	59,475	1,897,363
14	Vermont.....	1725	Fort Drummer.....	Emigrants from Massachusetts.....	March 4, 1791.....	.....	9,365	382,422
15	Kentucky.....	1775	Boonesborough.....	Daniel Boone and associates.....	June 1, 1792.....	.....	40,100	1,858,685
16	Tennessee.....	1757	Fort Loudon.....	Emigrants from N. Carolina.....	June 1, 1796.....	.....	42,050	1,767,518
17	Ohio.....	1783	Marietta.....	Emigrants from New England.....	November 29, 1802.....	.....	41,060	3,672,316
18	Louisiana.....	1699	Iberville.....	French.....	April 8, 1812.....	.....	48,720	1,118,587
19	Indiana.....	1690	Vincennes.....	French.....	December 11, 1816.....	.....	36,350	2,192,404
20	Mississippi.....	1716	Natchez.....	French.....	December 10, 1817.....	.....	46,810	1,280,000
21	Illinois.....	1720	Kaskaskia.....	French.....	December 3, 1818.....	.....	56,650	3,896,351
22	Alabama.....	1711	Mobile.....	French.....	December 14, 1819.....	.....	52,250	1,513,017
23	Maine.....	1623	Bristol.....	English.....	March 16, 1820.....	.....	33,040	661,086
24	Missouri.....	1764	St. Louis.....	French.....	August 10, 1821.....	.....	69,415	2,679,184
25	Arkansas.....	1685	Arkansas Post.....	French.....	June 15, 1836.....	.....	53,850	1,138,179
26	Michigan.....	1670	Detroit.....	French.....	January 26, 1837.....	.....	58,915	2,093,889
27	Florida.....	1565	St. Augustine.....	Spanish.....	March 3, 1845.....	.....	58,080	391,422
28	Texas.....	1690	S. Antonio de Bexar.....	Spanish.....	December 27, 1845.....	.....	265,780	2,255,533
29	Iowa.....	1833	Burlington.....	Emigrants from Eastern States.....	December 28, 1846.....	.....	56,625	1,911,896
30	Wisconsin.....	1669	Green Bay.....	French.....	May 29, 1848.....	.....	56,040	1,686,880
31	California.....	1769	San Diego.....	Spanish.....	September 9, 1850.....	.....	158,360	1,208,130
32	Minnesota.....	1846	Saint Paul.....	Emigrants from Eastern States.....	May 11, 1858.....	.....	83,365	1,301,826
33	Oregon.....	1811	Astoria.....	Emigrants from Eastern States.....	February 14, 1859.....	.....	96,030	313,797
34	Kansas.....	1850	Topeka.....	Emigrants from Eastern States.....	January 29, 1861.....	.....	82,080	1,427,096
35	West Virginia.....	.....	.....	Emigrants from Eastern States.....	June 20, 1863.....	.....	24,780	762,794
36	Nevada.....	.....	.....	Emigrants from Eastern States.....	October 31, 1864.....	.....	110,700	45,761
37	Nebraska.....	.....	.....	Emigrants from Eastern States.....	March 1, 1867.....	.....	77,510	1,058,910
38	Colorado.....	.....	.....	Emigrants from Eastern States.....	August 1, 1876.....	.....	103,925	412,198

Washington, Montana, North Dakota and South Dakota were admitted as States in 1889, and Idaho and Wyoming in 1890. Besides these there are Alaska, Utah, New Mexico, Oklahoma, and Indian Territories, and the District of Columbia.



## PRESIDENTS AND VICE-PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES.

No.	Presidents.	From what State.	Born.	Died.	Inaugurated.	Vice-Presidents.	From what State.
1	George Washington.....	Virginia.....	1732	1799	April 30, 1789.....	John Adams.....	Massachusetts.
2	George Washington.....	Virginia.....	1732	1799	March 4, 1793.....	John Adams.....	Massachusetts.
3	John Adams.....	Massachusetts.....	1735	1826	March 4, 1797.....	Thomas Jefferson.....	Virginia.
4	Thomas Jefferson.....	Virginia.....	1743	1826	March 4, 1801.....	Aaron Burr.....	New York.
5	James Madison.....	Virginia.....	1751	1836	March 4, 1805.....	George Clinton.....	New York.
6	James Monroe.....	Virginia.....	1758	1831	March 4, 1809.....	Elbridge Gerry.....	Massachusetts.
7	John Q. Adams.....	Massachusetts.....	1767	1848	March 4, 1813.....	Daniel D. Tompkins.....	New York.
8	Andrew Jackson.....	Tennessee.....	1767	1845	March 4, 1817.....	Daniel D. Tompkins.....	New York.
9	Andrew Jackson.....	Tennessee.....	1767	1845	March 4, 1821.....	John C. Calhoun.....	South Carolina.
10	*William H. Harrison.....	New York.....	1782	1862	March 4, 1825.....	John C. Calhoun.....	South Carolina.
11	James K. Polk.....	Ohio.....	1773	1841	March 4, 1829.....	Martin Van Buren.....	New York.
12	*Zachary Taylor.....	Tennessee.....	1790	1862	March 4, 1833.....	Richard M. Johnson.....	Kentucky.
13	Millard Fillmore.....	Louisiana.....	1795	1849	March 4, 1837.....	John Tyler.....	Virginia.
14	Franklin Pierce.....	New York.....	1784	1862	March 4, 1841.....	George M. Dallas.....	Pennsylvania.
15	James Buchanan.....	New Hampshire.....	1804	1868	March 4, 1845.....	Millard Fillmore.....	New York.
16	*Abraham Lincoln.....	Pennsylvania.....	1791	1865	March 5, 1849.....	William R. King.....	Alabama.
17	Andrew Johnson.....	Illinois.....	1809	1865	July 10, 1850.....	John C. Breckinridge.....	Kentucky.
18	Ulysses S. Grant.....	Illinois.....	1803	1875	March 4, 1853.....	Hannibal Hamlin.....	Maine.
19	Rutherford B. Hayes.....	Illinois.....	1822	1885	March 4, 1855.....	Andrew Johnson.....	Tennessee.
20	*James A. Garfield.....	Ohio.....	1822	1881	March 4, 1865.....	Schuyler Colfax.....	Indiana.
21	Chester A. Arthur.....	New York.....	1831	1881	March 4, 1869.....	Henry Wilson.....	Massachusetts.
22	Grover Cleveland.....	New York.....	1837	1895	March 5, 1873.....	William A. Wheeler.....	New York.
23	Benjamin Harrison.....	Indiana.....	1833	1893	March 4, 1877.....	Chester A. Arthur.....	New York.
					Sept. 19, 1881.....	*Thomas A. Hendricks.....	Indiana.
					March 4, 1885.....	Levi P. Morton.....	New York.

\* Died in office.

## CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.

- 1492 Columbus sailed from Palos, Spain, August 3.
- “ Columbus discovered Guanahani, October 12.
- “ Columbus discovered Cuba, November 7.
- 1497 The Cabots discovered the Continent, July 3.
- 1499 Voyage of Amerigo Vespucci.
- 1501 Cortereal's expedition.
- 1512 Ponce de Leon discovered Florida, April.
- 1520 Carolina visited by Lucas Vasquez de Ayllon.
- 1524 Verrazzani's expedition.
- 1528 De Narvaez attempted to conquer Florida.
- 1534 Cartier's expedition.
- 1539-40 De Soto made a tour through Florida.
- 1540 Roberval's attempt to colonize New France.
- 1541 Mississippi River discovered by De Soto.
- 1562 Huguenots attempted a settlement at Port Royal.
- 1564 Settlement of Huguenots on St. John's River, Florida.
- 1565 Spaniards founded St. Augustine and destroyed the French colony.
- 1583 Expedition of Sir Humphrey Gilbert.
- 1584 Expedition of Raleigh reached Roanoke Island; land called Virginia in honor of Queen Elizabeth.
- 1585 Raleigh's second expedition under Grenville.
- 1587 Raleigh sent out a colony under White.
- 1606 Patents issued to the London and Plymouth Companies.
- 1607 Jamestown settled by the London Company, May 23.
- “ Plymouth Company formed settlements on the Kennebec River, August 21.
- 1609 Henry Hudson discovered the Hudson River, September 21.
- “ Powhatan's plot.
- 1613 Marriage of Pocahontas.
- 1614 The Dutch built a fort on Manhattan Island.
- “ Captain Smith explored the coast of New England.
- 1615 Tobacco first introduced into Virginia.
- 1620 First permanent settlement in New England by the Puritans, December 21.
- 1622 Indian massacre in Virginia.
- “ Grant of land to Gorges and Mason.
- 1623 New Hampshire settled.
- “ Albany, on the Hudson, founded.
- 1621 James I. dissolved the London Company.
- 1627 Swedes settled near the Delaware River.
- 1628 John Endicott settled at Salem, Massachusetts.
- 1629 “Massachusetts Bay Colony” chartered, March 4.
- “ Lord Baltimore's arrival.
- 1630 Boston, Dorchester, Roxbury and Cambridge founded.
- 1631 Plymouth Company's grant to Lord Say-and-Seal and Lord Brooke.
- 1633 Connecticut settled at Windsor.
- 1634 St. Mary's, Maryland, founded by Leonard Calvert, April 27.
- 1635 First Assembly in Maryland.
- 1636 Roger Williams settled Providence, Rhode Island.

- 
- 1636 Connecticut separated from Massachusetts.
  - 1637 Pequod War.
  - 1638 Delaware colonized by Swedes and Finns, April.
  - “ Colony of New Haven founded.
  - “ Harvard College founded.
  - 1639 Printing introduced into New England.
  - “ Berkeley appointed governor of Virginia.
  - 1641 New Hampshire united with Massachusetts.
  - 1643 Union of the New England colonies.
  - “ Swedes from Delaware settled in Pennsylvania.
  - 1644 Opecancanough's second plot in Virginia, April.
  - “ Rhode Island and Providence united.
  - “ Clayborne's Rebellion in Maryland.
  - 1647 Peter Stuyvesant arrived in New York.
  - 1649 Maryland “ Toleration Act ” passed.
  - 1651 Navigation Act passed.
  - 1652 First money coined in New England.
  - 1655 Dutch conquered the Swedes of Delaware, October.
  - 1663 Carolina granted to Clarendon and others.
  - 1664 Carolina settled on Albemarle Sound.
  - “ Charles II.'s grant to the Duke of York.
  - “ New Amsterdam taken, and name changed to New York.
  - “ All the Dutch possessions pass into the hands of the English.
  - “ New Jersey granted to Berkeley and Carteret.
  - 1670 South Carolina settled at Port Royal.
  - 1671 North and South Carolina divided.
  - 1673 New York and New Jersey captured by the Dutch.
  - “ Virginia granted to Culpepper and Arlington.
  - 1674 New York and New Jersey restored to England.
  - “ Andros made governor of New York.
  - 1675 King Philip's War in New England.
  - 1676 King Philip killed and his tribe destroyed.
  - “ Bacon's Rebellion in Virginia.
  - “ New Jersey divided into East and West Jersey.
  - 1677 Quakers settled West Jersey.
  - 1680 New Hampshire separated from Massachusetts.
  - “ Charleston, South Carolina, founded.
  - “ La Salle explored the Mississippi River.
  - 1681 William Penn obtained a grant from Charles II.
  - “ Colonists arrived in Pennsylvania.
  - 1682 Penn's arrival in Pennsylvania.
  - “ East Jersey bought by the Quakers.
  - 1683 Philadelphia founded.
  - 1685 Massachusetts, Rhode Island and Plymouth disfranchised by James II.
  - “ Arkansas first settled at Arkansas Post.
  - 1686 Andros made governor of all New England.
  - 1687 The Connecticut charter saved.
  - 1688 Andros sent to England.
  - 1689 King William's War.
  - 1690 Sir William Phipps's expedition.
  - 1691 Union of the colonies of Massachusetts and Plymouth.
  - “ Delaware separated from Pennsylvania.
  - 1692 Delaware reunited with Pennsylvania.
  - “ Schuyler's expedition.
  - “ William and Mary College founded in Virginia.

- 
- 1697 French expedition against Boston and New York.
  - " Close of King William's War by the treaty of Ryswick.
  - 1699 First permanent settlement in Louisiana.
  - " Pensacola, Florida, founded.
  - 1701 Yale College founded.
  - " Detroit, Michigan, founded by the French, June.
  - 1702 Jersey became a royal province, and was united to New York.
  - " Settlements on Mobile River, Alabama.
  - " Queen Anne's War commenced.
  - 1703 Delaware again separated from Pennsylvania.
  - 1704 "Boston News Letter" commenced.
  - 1706 Spaniards and French invaded the Carolinas.
  - 1707 Expedition against Port Royal.
  - 1708 Expedition against Canada.
  - 1710 Port Royal, Nova Scotia, captured by the English.
  - 1713 Close of Queen Anne's War by the treaty of Utrecht.
  - 1715 Yamasee Indians in South Carolina destroyed.
  - 1717 New Orleans settled.
  - 1729 North and South Carolina became distinct provinces.
  - " Natchez Indians massacred the French in the Mississippi Valley.
  - " Natchez Indians destroyed by the French.
  - 1732 George Washington born at Pope's Creek, Virginia, February 22.
  - " Georgia granted to General Oglethorpe.
  - 1733 Georgia settled by Oglethorpe at Savannah, February.
  - 1738 Princeton College, New Jersey, founded.
  - " New Jersey separated from New York.
  - 1740 General Oglethorpe invaded Florida.
  - 1742 Spaniards invaded Georgia.
  - 1744 George II.'s War commenced.
  - 1745 Louisburg captured, June 17.
  - 1746 French fleet under D'Anville destroyed.
  - 1748 End of King George's War by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, October.
  - 1749 Ohio Company formed.
  - 1750 French encroachments.
  - 1751 Battle of Great Meadows, May 28.
  - " Fort Necessity surrendered, July 4.
  - " Union of English colonies.
  - 1755 Expedition against Nova Scotia.
  - " Braddock's defeat, July 9.
  - " Dieskau's defeat at Lake George.
  - 1756 War formally declared between France and England, May.
  - " Montcalm captured the English forts at Oswego, August.
  - 1757 Massacre at Fort William Henry, August 9.
  - " Tennessee settled at Fort Loudon.
  - 1758 Abercrombie repulsed, July 8.
  - " Surrender of Louisburg, July 27.
  - " Fort Frontenac taken, August 27.
  - " Grant defeated, September 21.
  - " Fort Du Quesne captured, and name changed to Pittsburg.
  - 1759 Battle on the Plains of Abraham, September 13.
  - " Quebec surrendered, September 18.
  - " Niagara, Ticonderoga and Crown Point taken.
  - " Rogers's expedition against the Indians.
  - 1760 Montreal taken, September 8.
  - " All Canada in possession of the English.

- 
- 1763 Frèñch and Indian War ended by treaty of Paris, February 10.
  - “ Florida ceded to Great Britain by Spain.
  - “ Pontiac's War.
  - 1764 Sugar Act passed.
  - 1765 Stamp Act passed, March 8.
  - “ Colonial Congress met in New York, October.
  - 1766 Stamp Act repealed, March 18.
  - 1767 Duty laid on tea, glass, paper and painters' colors, June.
  - 1768 British troops arrived in Boston, October 1.
  - “ Petition sent to the king from Massachusetts.
  - 1769 California settled by Spaniards.
  - 1770 “Boston Massacre,” March 5.
  - “ Duties removed except on tea, April 12.
  - 1771 Regulators in North Carolina.
  - 1773 Tea thrown overboard at Boston, December 16.
  - 1774 Boston Port Bill passed, March.
  - “ First Continental Congress met at Philadelphia, September 5.
  - “ Tea-vessel burned at Annapolis, October 19.
  - 1775 Kentucky settled by Boone, at Boonesborough.
  - “ Battle of Lexington, April 19.
  - “ Ticonderoga captured by Allen and Arnold, May 10.
  - “ Second meeting of the Continental Congress, May 10.
  - “ Crown Point captured by Warren, May 12.
  - “ Washington made commander-in-chief, June 16.
  - “ Battle of Bunker's Hill, June 17.
  - “ Bills of credit issued by Congress, June.
  - “ Arnold's expedition.
  - “ Montreal captured by Montgomery, November 13.
  - “ Unsuccessful assault on Quebec, December 31.
  - 1776 Hessian troops employed by the British.
  - “ British troops evacuated Boston, March 17.
  - “ Norfolk burned, June 1.
  - “ British repulsed at Charleston, South Carolina, June 28.
  - “ Declaration of Independence, July 4.
  - “ British attacked Long Island, August 27.
  - “ British took possession of New York, September 15.
  - “ Battle of White Plains, October 28.
  - “ British captured Fort Washington, November 16.
  - “ British captured Fort Lee, November 20.
  - “ British took possession of Rhode Island, December 8.
  - “ Congress adjourned to Baltimore, December.
  - “ Washington crossed the Delaware during the night, December 25
  - “ Battle of Trenton, December 26.
  - “ Naval exploits of John Paul Jones.
  - 1777 Battle of Princeton, New Jersey, January 3.
  - “ Vermont declared an independent State.
  - “ Burgoyne invaded New York, June.
  - “ Ticonderoga evacuated by the Americans, July 5.
  - “ Battle of Oriskany, August 6.
  - “ Battle at Bennington, Vermont, August 16.
  - “ Battle of Brandywine, September 11.
  - “ First battle of Stillwater, September 19.
  - “ Wayne defeated near Paoli, September 20.
  - “ Howe entered Philadelphia, September 26.
  - “ Battle of Germantown, October 4.



- 1777 Second battle of Stillwater, October 7.  
 " Battle of Saratoga, New York, October 7.  
 " Burgoyne's surrender, October 17.  
 " Present flag of the United States adopted.  
 " Name of the " United States of America " adopted.  
 " Forts Mercer and Mifflin unsuccessfully attacked, October 22.  
 " Plan of confederation adopted by Congress, November 17.
- 1778 Treaty of alliance with France, February 6.  
 " Philadelphia evacuated by the British, June 18.  
 " Battle of Monmouth, New Jersey, June 28.  
 " Massacre in Wyoming Valley, July 3.  
 " Arrival of a French fleet under D'Estaing, July.  
 " Massacre at Cherry Valley, New York, November 11 and 12.  
 " British took Savannah, Georgia, December 29.
- 1779 General Lincoln took command of the Southern army.  
 " Capture of Stony Point, New York, by the British, May 31.  
 " Tryon's raid in Connecticut, July.  
 " Recapture of Stony Point by the Americans, July 15.  
 " Sullivan defeated the Indians in Western New York, August 29.  
 " Savannah, Georgia, besieged by Americans and French, September  
 " John Paul Jones captured two British vessels, September 23.  
 " Unsuccessful assault on Savannah, October 9.
- 1780 Charleston, South Carolina, besieged by the British, April and May  
 " Charleston surrendered to the British, May 12.  
 " French fleet arrived off Newport, Rhode Island, July 10.  
 " Battle at Hanging Rock, South Carolina, August 6.  
 " Battle at Sander's Creek, South Carolina, August 16.  
 " Battle at Fishing Creek, South Carolina, August 18.  
 " Meeting of Arnold and André, September 22.  
 " Execution of André at Tappan, New York, October 2.  
 " Battle of King's Mountain, South Carolina, October 7.  
 " Exploits of Marion.
- 1781 Bank of North America established.  
 " Battle of Cowpens, South Carolina, January 17.  
 " Battle near Guilford Court-House, North Carolina, March 15.  
 " Battle of Hobkirk's Hill, South Carolina, April 25.  
 " The Alliance captured two vessels, May 28.  
 " Battle of Eutaw Springs, South Carolina, September 8.  
 " Siege of Yorktown commenced, October 9.  
 " Surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown, October 19.
- 1782 Sir Guy Carleton commander of the British forces in America.  
 " Savannah, Georgia, evacuated by the British, July.  
 " Preliminary treaty of peace signed at Paris, November 30.  
 " Charleston, South Carolina, evacuated by the British, December 14
- 1783 Definitive treaty of peace signed, September 3.  
 " British evacuated New York, November 25.  
 " Washington resigned his commission, December 23.
- 1786 Shays's Insurrection.
- 1787 Constitution adopted by Convention, September 17.
- 1788 Constitution adopted by eleven States.  
 " First permanent settlement in Ohio at Marietta.
- 1789 First Congress under the new Constitution met at New York, March 4  
 " Washington inaugurated the first President at New York, April 30.
- 1790 Philadelphia made the seat of government for ten years.  
 " General Harmer defeated by Indians, October.

- 1791 Vermont admitted into the Union, March 4.  
" St. Clair defeated by the Indians in Ohio, November 4.
- 1792 Kentucky admitted into the Union, June 1.
- 1793 Washington and Adams re-inaugurated President and Vice-President, March 4.
- 1794 Wayne defeated the Indians in Ohio.  
" Whisky Rebellion in Pennsylvania.
- 1795 Jay's treaty with Great Britain ratified.  
" Treaties with Algiers, Spain and the Miami Indians.
- 1796 Tennessee admitted into the Union, June 1.  
" Washington's Farewell Address issued.
- 1797 John Adams inaugurated President—Thomas Jefferson inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.
- 1798 Threatened war with France.  
" Congress authorized the raising of an army.
- 1799 Washington died, December 14.
- 1800 Treaty of peace with Napoleon, September 30.  
" Seat of government removed to Washington.  
" Second census of the United States taken; population, 5,305,482.
- 1801 Thomas Jefferson inaugurated President—Aaron Burr inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.  
" War with Tripoli commenced, June 10.
- 1802 Ohio admitted into the Union, November 29.  
" Louisiana ceded by Spain to France.
- 1803 Louisiana purchased by the United States for \$15,000,000.  
" Commodore Preble sent against Tripoli.  
" United States frigate Philadelphia captured by the Tripolitans.
- 1804 Decatur destroyed the Philadelphia at Tripoli, February.  
" Lewis and Clarke's expedition set out.
- 1805 Jefferson re-inaugurated President—George Clinton inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.  
" Peace concluded with Tripoli.
- 1806 Burr's Conspiracy.  
" British "Orders in Council."  
" Bonaparte's "Berlin decree."
- 1807 United States frigate Chesapeake attacked by the Leopard, June 22.  
" Burr tried for treason, and acquitted.  
" British armed vessels forbidden to enter American ports.  
" British prohibited trade with France or her allies, November.  
" Napoleon's "Milan decree," December 17.  
" Robert Fulton's first steamboat afloat.  
" Embargo on American ships, December 22.
- 1809 Embargo repealed, March 1.  
" Commerce with Great Britain and with France prohibited, March 1  
" James Madison inaugurated President—Clinton re-inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.  
" Embargo renewed, August 10.
- 1810 French decrees repealed.  
" Population of the United States, 7,239,903.
- 1811 Battle between President and Little Belt, May 16.  
" Battle of Tippecanoe, Indiana, November 7.
- 1812 War declared with Great Britain, June 18.  
" Hull invaded Canada, July 12.  
" Surrender of Fort Mackinaw, Michigan, July 17.  
" Hull's surrender, August 16.

- 1812 Louisiana admitted into the Union, April 8.
- 1813 The Hornet captured the Peacock, February 22.
- “ Madison re-inaugurated President—Elbridge Gerry inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.
- “ Battle at Fort Meigs, May 5.
- “ Americans took Fort George, May 21.
- “ The Shannon captured the Chesapeake, June 1.
- “ The Pelican captured the Argus, August 14.
- “ Massacre at Fort Mims, Alabama, August 30.
- “ The Enterprise captured the Boxer, September 5.
- “ Capture of British fleet on Lake Erie, September 10.
- “ Battle on the Thames, in Canada, October 5.
- “ Capture of Fort Niagara, New York, by the British, December 19
- 1814 Jackson defeated the Creek Indians, March 27.
- “ Capture of the Essex at Valparaiso, March 28.
- “ The Peacock captured the Epervier, April 29.
- “ The Wasp captured the Reindeer, June 28.
- “ Fort Erie, Canada, taken by the Americans, July 3.
- “ Battle of the Chippewa, Canada, July 5.
- “ Battle of Lundy’s Lane, July 25.
- “ Battle of Fort Erie, August 15.
- “ Battle of Bladensburg, Maryland, August 24.
- “ Washington City captured and burned, August 24.
- “ Alexandria capitulated to the British, August 27.
- “ Battle at Plattsburg, September 11.
- “ Battle at Lake Champlain, September 11.
- “ Battle near North Point, Maryland, September 12.
- “ British repulsed at Fort McHenry, September 13.
- “ Battle on Lake Borgne, Louisiana, December 14.
- “ Meeting of the Hartford Convention, December 15.
- “ Treaty of peace signed, December 14.
- 1815 Battle of New Orleans, January 8.
- “ The frigate President captured by the British squadron, January 15.
- “ Peace with Great Britain proclaimed, February 18.
- “ The Constitution captured the Cyane and Levant, February 20.
- “ The Hornet captured the Penguin, March 3.
- “ War with Algiers declared, March.
- “ Decatur sent against Algiers, May.
- “ Peace between the United States and Algiers, June 28.
- “ Treaties with the Indians, September.
- “ Indiana admitted into the Union, December 11.
- 1817 James Monroe inaugurated President—Daniel D. Tompkins inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.
- “ Seminole War begun.
- “ Mississippi admitted into the Union, December 10.
- 1818 Treaty with Sweden and Great Britain.
- “ Jackson seized Pensacola, Florida, May 24.
- “ Illinois admitted into the Union, December 3.
- 1819 Alabama admitted into the Union, December 14.
- 1820 Population of the United States, 9,638,191.
- “ Missouri Compromise Act passed, March 3.
- “ Maine admitted into the Union, March 16.
- “ Spain ceded Florida to the United States.
- 1821 Monroe re-inaugurated President—Tompkins re-inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.

- 1821 Missouri admitted into the Union, August 10.
- 1825 John Quincy Adams inaugurated President—John C. Calhoun inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.
- 1829 Andrew Jackson inaugurated President—John C. Calhoun re-inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.
- 1832 Black-Hawk War.
- “ Treaty with the Seminole Indians.
- “ Nullification in South Carolina, November.
- 1833 Clay's Compromise Act passed, March 3.
- “ Jackson removed the deposits from the United States Bank.
- “ Jackson re-inaugurated President—Martin Van Buren inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.
- “ Indian Territory formed.
- 1835 War with Creek and Seminole Indians commenced, December.
- 1836 Arkansas admitted into the Union, June 15.
- 1837 Michigan admitted into the Union, January 26.
- “ Osceola seized by General Jessup.
- “ Martin Van Buren inaugurated President—Richard M. Johnson inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.
- “ Great financial crisis.
- “ Commencement of Canadian troubles.
- 1838 Difficulty about the Maine boundary.
- 1840 United States exploring expedition discovered an Antarctic continent.
- “ Sub-Treasury Bill passed.
- “ Population of the United States, 17,069,453.
- 1841 William H. Harrison inaugurated President—John Tyler inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.
- “ Sub-Treasury Bill repealed.
- “ President Harrison died in office, April 4.
- “ Tyler (Vice-President) inaugurated President, April 6.
- 1842 North-eastern boundary settled with England.
- “ Treaty of peace with the Seminole Indians.
- “ Dorr's Rebellion in Rhode Island.
- 1845 Texas annexed to the Union, March 1.
- “ Florida admitted into the Union, March 3.
- “ James K. Polk inaugurated President—George M. Dallas inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.
- “ Texas admitted as a State, December 27.
- 1846 War with Mexico commenced, April 26.
- “ Battle at Palo Alto, Texas, May 8.
- “ Battle at Resaca de la Palma, Texas, May 9.
- “ Formal declaration of war by Congress, May 11.
- “ Taylor captured Matamoras, Mexico, May 18.
- “ North-western boundary settled with Great Britain, June.
- “ Americans obtain possession of California, August.
- “ Capture of Monterey, September 24.
- “ Iowa admitted into the Union, December 28.
- 1847 Battle of Buena Vista, February 23.
- “ Scott attacked Vera Cruz, March 9.
- “ Scott occupied Vera Cruz, March 29.
- “ Battle of Cerro Gordo, April 18.
- “ Puebla captured, May 15.
- “ Contreras and Churubusco taken, August 20.
- “ Armistice from August 21 to September 7.
- “ Molino del Rey taken, September 8.

- 
- 1847 Chapultepec captured, September 13.
  - “ Scott entered Mexico, September 14.
  - 1848 Treaty of peace signed at Guadalupe Hidalgo, February 2.
  - “ Peace with Mexico proclaimed, July 4.
  - “ Wisconsin admitted into the Union, May 29.
  - 1849 Zachary Taylor inaugurated President—Millard Fillmore inaugurated Vice-President, March 5.
  - 1850 President Taylor died in office, July 9.
  - “ Fillmore (Vice-President) inaugurated President, July 10.
  - “ California admitted into the Union, September 9.
  - “ Population of the United States, 23,191,876.
  - 1852 Difficulties with Great Britain on the fishery question.
  - 1853 Franklin Pierce inaugurated President—William R. King inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.
  - “ William R. King died, April 18.
  - “ Japan expedition.
  - “ Trouble with Great Britain about fisheries settled.
  - 1854 Treaty with Japan.
  - “ Kansas-Nebraska Bill passed.
  - 1857 James Buchanan inaugurated President—John C. Breckinridge inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.
  - 1858 Minnesota admitted into the Union, May 11.
  - 1859 Oregon admitted into the Union, February 14.
  - “ John Brown’s raid on Harper’s Ferry.
  - 1860 Secession of South Carolina, December 20.
  - “ Population of the United States, 31,443,322.
  - 1861 Secession of Mississippi, January 9.
  - “ Secession of Alabama and Florida, January 10.
  - “ Secession of Georgia, January 19.
  - “ Secession of Louisiana, January 26.
  - “ Kansas admitted into the Union, January 29.
  - “ Secession of Texas, February 1.
  - “ Southern Confederacy formed, February 4.
  - “ Jefferson Davis elected President, and Alexander H. Stephens Vice-President, of the Confederate States.
  - “ Abraham Lincoln inaugurated President of the United States—Hannibal Hamlin inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.
  - “ Fort Sumter fired upon, April 12.
  - “ Fort Sumter surrendered, April 13.
  - “ Harper’s Ferry seized, April 18.
  - “ Norfolk Navy Yard seized, April 21.
  - “ Secession of Virginia, April 25.
  - “ Secession of Arkansas, May 6.
  - “ Secession of North Carolina, May 20.
  - “ Secession of Tennessee, June 8.
  - “ Battle near Carthage, Missouri, July 5.
  - “ Battle at Rich Mountain, Virginia, July 11.
  - “ Battle at Carrick’s Ford, Virginia, July 14.
  - “ Confederate Congress met at Richmond, Virginia, July 20.
  - “ Battle of Bull Run, Virginia, July 21.
  - “ Battle of Wilson’s Creek, Missouri, August 10.
  - “ Forts upon Hatteras Inlet captured, August 29.
  - “ Lexington, Missouri, captured by the Confederates, September 20.
  - “ Battle at Ball’s Bluff, Virginia, October 21.
  - “ Battle of Belmont, Missouri, November 7.



- 
- 1861 Capture of Port Royal, South Carolina, November 7.  
 " Mason and Slidell seized, November 8.
- 1862 Fort Henry, Tennessee, captured, February 6.  
 " Roanoke Island, North Carolina, captured, February 8.  
 " Fort Donelson captured, February 16.  
 " Battle of Pea Ridge, Arkansas, March 7 and 8.  
 " The Virginia sinks the Cumberland and Congress, March 8.  
 " Merrimac (Virginia) checked by the Monitor, March 9.  
 " Capture of New-Berne, North Carolina, March 14.  
 " Battle at Winchester, Virginia, March 23.  
 " McClellan commenced his Peninsular campaign, April 4.  
 " Battle of Shiloh, April 7.  
 " Island No. 10 in Mississippi River captured, April 7.  
 " Fort Pulaski, Georgia, surrendered, April 11.  
 " New Orleans captured, April 25.  
 " Beaufort, South Carolina, captured, April 25.  
 " Forts Jackson and St. Philip, Louisiana, captured, April 23.  
 " Capture of Yorktown, Virginia, May 4.  
 " Battle of Williamsburg, Virginia, May 5.  
 " Norfolk, Virginia, captured by General Wool, May 10.  
 " Corinth, Mississippi, captured, May 30.  
 " Battle of Fair Oaks, May 31 and June 1.  
 " Lee assumed command of the Confederate army before Richmond June 3.  
 " Memphis, Tennessee, surrendered, June 6.  
 " Seven days' battles commenced, June 25.  
 " Battle at Cedar Mountain, August 9.  
 " Second battle of Bull Run, August 30.  
 " Lee invaded Maryland, September 5.  
 " Battle at South Mountain, Maryland, September 14.  
 " Stonewall Jackson captured Harper's Ferry, September 15.  
 " Battle of Antietam, September 17.  
 " Battle of Munfordsville, September 17.  
 " Battle of Iuka, Mississippi, September 19.  
 " Battle at Corinth, Mississippi, October 4.  
 " Battle at Fredericksburg, Virginia, December 13.  
 " Attack on Vicksburg, Mississippi, December 29.  
 " First battle of Murfreesboro', Tennessee, December 31.
- 1863 "Emancipation Proclamation," January 1.  
 " Second battle of Murfreesboro', January 2.  
 " Capture of Arkansas Post, Arkansas, January 11.  
 " Naval attack on Fort Sumter, April 7.  
 " Grierson's raid in Mississippi, April 17 to May 1.  
 " Battle at Port Gibson, Mississippi, May 1.  
 " Battles at Chancellorsville, Virginia, May 2 and 3.  
 " Lee's second invasion of Maryland, June.  
 " West Virginia admitted into the Union, June 20.  
 " Battle of Gettysburg, Pennsylvania, July 1-3.  
 " Capture of Vicksburg, July 4.  
 " Capture of Port Hudson, Louisiana, July 8.  
 " Capture of Fort Wagner, September 7.  
 " Little Rock, Arkansas, captured, September 10.  
 " Battle of Chickamauga, Georgia, September 19 and 20.  
 " Knoxville, Tennessee, besieged, November 13.  
 " Battle at Lookout Mountain, November 24.

- 
- 1863 Battle at Chattanooga, November 23-25.
  - " Battle at Missionary Ridge, November 25.
  - " Siege of Knoxville raised, December 3.
  - 1864 Red River Expedition, March and April.
  - " Plymouth, North Carolina, captured by the Confederates, April 20.
  - " Battle of the Wilderness, Virginia, May 5-7.
  - " Battles near Spottsylvania Court-House, Virginia, May 7-12.
  - " Battle of Resaca, Georgia, May 15.
  - " Battles near Dallas, Georgia, May 25-28.
  - " Battle at Cold Harbor, June 3.
  - " The Alabama sunk by the Kearsarge, June 19.
  - " Battle of Lost Mountain, Georgia, June 15-17.
  - " Early invaded Maryland, July 5.
  - " Battle at Monocacy, Maryland, July 9.
  - " Battles before Atlanta, Georgia, July 20, 22 and 28.
  - " Battle in Mobile Bay, August 5.
  - " Capture of Atlanta, Georgia, September 2.
  - " Battle at Winchester, Virginia, September 19.
  - " Battle of Cedar Creek, October 19.
  - " Nevada admitted into the Union, October 31.
  - " Sherman left Atlanta for Savannah, November 14.
  - " Milledgeville, Georgia, captured, November 20.
  - " Battle of Franklin, Tennessee, November 30.
  - " Fort McAllister, Georgia, captured, December 13.
  - " Hood defeated by Thomas at Nashville, December 15 and 16.
  - " Savannah, Georgia, captured, December 21.
  - 1865 Fort Fisher, North Carolina, captured, January 15.
  - " Columbia, South Carolina, captured, February 17.
  - " Charleston, South Carolina, captured, February 18.
  - " Wilmington, North Carolina, captured, February 22.
  - " Attack on Fort Steadman, Virginia, March 25.
  - " Battle at Five Forks, Virginia, April 1.
  - " Petersburg and Richmond captured, April 3.
  - " Lee's surrender, April 9.
  - " Capture of Raleigh, North Carolina, April 13.
  - " Assassination of President Lincoln, April 14.
  - " Andrew Johnson (Vice-President) inaugurated President, April 15.
  - " Johnston surrendered his army, April 26.
  - " Taylor's surrender, May 8.
  - " Kirby Smith's surrender, May 26.
  - 1866 Submarine Telegraph successfully laid.
  - 1867 Nebraska admitted into the Union, March 1.
  - " Russian America purchased, October.
  - 1868 President Johnson impeached, and acquitted.
  - 1869 Ulysses S. Grant inaugurated President—Schuyler Colfax inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.
  - " Opening of the Pacific Railroad.
  - 1870 Population of the United States, 38,556,000.
  - 1871 Great fire in Chicago, October 7, 8 and 9.
  - 1873 Grant re-inaugurated President—Henry Wilson inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.
  - 1877 Rutherford B. Hayes inaugurated President—William A. Wheeler inaugurated Vice-President, March 5.
  - 1881 James A. Garfield inaugurated President—Chester A. Arthur inaugurated Vice-President, March 4.

- 
- 1881 Assassination of President Garfield—died, September 19.  
“ Chester A. Arthur (Vice-President) sworn into office September 19,  
again, September 22.  
“ Presidential succession settled.
- 1882 Chinese immigration forbidden for 10 years.  
“ Northern Pacific Railroad completed.  
“ Brooklyn bridge opened to the public.
- 1884 Lieutenant Greely and six other survivors of Polar expedition rescued.
- 1885 Grover Cleveland inaugurated President, Thomas A. Hendricks Vice-  
President, March 4.  
“ General Grant died, July 23.  
“ Vice-President Hendricks died, November.
- 1886 Wide-spread labor agitation and “strikes.”
- 1887 Centennial anniversary of the adoption of the Constitution of the  
United States.
- 1889 Benjamin Harrison inaugurated President, Levi P. Morton Vice-  
President, March 4.  
“ Centennial celebration of the anniversary of Washington’s inaugura-  
tion as first President of the United States.  
“ Great floods and loss of life in Pennsylvania.  
“ Washington, Montana, North Dakota, and South Dakota admitted as  
States.
- 1890 Territory of Oklahoma organized.  
“ Idaho and Wyoming admitted as States.
- 1891 Passage of the McKinley tariff bill.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS.

1. When, where and by whom was America discovered?
2. Why was it named America?
3. How many voyages did Columbus make?
4. Who first discovered the continent of America? When?
5. What rendered the discovery of the Cabots important?
6. What name was given to the early inhabitants of America? Why?
7. Name the four great Indian tribes.
8. When, where and by whom was the first attempt made to settle America?
9. When and by whom was Mexico conquered?
10. What discovery was made by De Leon?
11. When and by whom was the Mississippi River discovered?
12. Name the two oldest settlements in the United States, and the dates of their settlement.
13. Who discovered the St. Lawrence River?
14. What rendered his discoveries important?
15. Which is the oldest French settlement in America?
16. What grants of land were made the London and Plymouth Companies?
17. Which first succeeded in making a permanent settlement?
18. Name the countries of Europe that now laid claim to parts of the New World.
19. Which of the New England States was first settled?
20. When, where and by whom was this settlement made?
21. What college was founded by the Puritans?
22. Who settled Connecticut?
23. With whom were the settlers involved in war?
24. What was the result of the battle of the Mystic River?
25. What led to the settlement of Rhode Island?
26. When and by whom was New Hampshire settled?
27. Who was John Eliot?
28. What two countries laid claim to New York, and upon what grounds?
29. Which of the Middle States was first settled?
30. When and where was the first permanent Dutch settlement made?
31. What possessions did the Dutch lose in 1664?
32. What caused this change?
33. Name the early Dutch governors of New York.
34. Who was the first English governor of New York?
35. When and where did the Negro Plot occur?
36. Who was Leisler? Of what was he accused?
37. When and by whom was Pennsylvania settled?
38. How did Penn win the friendship of the natives?
39. What was the Dutch name of New Jersey?
40. What nations made settlements in New Jersey?
41. Who was the first English governor of New Jersey?
42. What change took place in its government in 1728?
43. From whom did Penn receive a grant of land?
44. Why was this country named Pennsylvania?
45. With whom had Penn disputes about the boundary?
46. What led to the founding of the colony of Delaware?
47. Which is the smallest of the thirteen original States?

48. When and by whom was Maryland first settled?
49. Why was it so named?
50. How did the charter of Maryland differ from the other colonial charters?
51. Describe Clayborne's Rebellion.
52. Name the three colonies whose charters granted religious freedom.
53. Which is the oldest English settlement in the New World?
54. When and where was the first attempt made by the English to settle the New World?
55. Name the early governors of Virginia.
56. Which period in Virginia is known as the "starving time"?
57. When and where was the first legislative body convened in America?
58. Which colony had the first written constitution?
59. Which was the first slave State in the New World?
60. When and how was slavery introduced?
61. Who was chief of the Indians when the massacres occurred in Virginia?
62. When did Virginia become a royal province?
63. Describe Bacon's Rebellion.
64. Who was governor of Virginia when this rebellion began?
65. What change took place in the government of Virginia after Culpepper was removed?
66. What grant of land was made in 1663?
67. What name was given to this country?
68. Name the three colonies established there, and the date of the settlement of each.
69. When were they first known as North and South Carolina?
70. Which of the thirteen original States was last settled?
71. Why was Georgia so named?
72. What caused trouble between the settlers of Georgia and the Spaniards?
73. Name the most noted of the early French explorers.
74. In honor of whom was Louisiana named?
75. Name the three great intercolonial wars; give the date and name of each.
76. What led to the great French and Indian War?
77. Who was governor of Virginia at this time?
78. When and where was the first battle of the French and Indian War fought?
79. Name the four expeditions sent against the French in 1755, and the commander of each.
80. What is said of these expeditions?
81. What change took place in 1756?
82. Who were made commanders-in-chief of the opposing parties?
83. Name the expeditions planned for the campaign of 1756.
84. Give an account of these expeditions.
85. What massacre occurred during this war?
86. What change was made in the British ministry in 1757?
87. What expeditions were arranged for the year 1758?
88. In which of these were Wolfe and Montcalm killed?
89. What is said of the plan of campaign for 1759?
90. How long did the French and Indian War last?
91. What closed it?
92. What possessions did the French lose by this treaty?
93. Give an account of Pontiac's War.
94. How many forms of government were there in the colonies?
95. Name and describe them.
96. What was the population of the colonies at the beginning of the French and Indian War?



97. What was the population when the American Revolution began?
98. What had the French and Indian War cost England?
99. What had it cost the colonies?
100. How did England expect to decrease this debt?
101. To what struggle did this lead?
102. Who was king of England when the Revolution began in America?
103. Name the different acts passed by the British Parliament which gave offence to the colonists.
104. What convention is known as the First Colonial Congress?
105. Describe the Boston Massacre.
106. Describe the Boston Tea-Party.
107. How were the people of Boston punished for this?
108. When and where was the Second Colonial Congress convened?
109. By what other name is it known?
110. Who were the minute-men?
111. Name some of the early patriots.
112. When and where was the first blood shed during the Revolution?
113. Name all the battles fought before the Declaration of Independence, and the opposing leaders.
114. Who was commander-in-chief of the American forces?
115. When and where was General Warren killed?
116. Where did Congress meet during the Revolution?
117. Who were the Tories?
118. When and where was the Declaration of Independence signed?
119. Name the thirteen original colonies, and the date of settlement of each.
120. Where was the first battle fought after the Declaration of Independence?
121. Name four important battles fought in the year 1776.
122. What was the first engagement of 1777?
123. Name the foreigners who fought on the American side.
124. When did General Howe take Philadelphia?
125. What victory closed the year 1777?
126. Name four important battles fought in the year 1777.
127. When was the American flag adopted?
128. Describe the Conway cabal.
129. What victory induced France to enter into an alliance with the colonies? What were the terms of agreement?
130. Name the important battles of the year 1778.
131. What did Robert Morris do?
132. With what battle did the campaign of 1779 begin?
133. What is said of the naval battle of September 23?
134. What were the leading events of the year 1779?
135. What was Clinton's design in the beginning of 1780?
136. Give the history of Benedict Arnold.
137. Name all the battles of the year 1780.
138. What dissatisfaction prevailed in the beginning of the year 1781?
139. What was the first attack of this year?
140. Describe the last great battle of the American Revolution.
141. Name the battles of the year 1781.
142. When and where was the treaty signed that closed the war?
143. How many years had the American Revolution continued?
144. What possessions did England lose by the treaty of 1783?
145. How long had England claimed these possessions?
146. When was the Constitution of the United States adopted?

147. What two political parties existed at the close of the Revolution?
148. What was the financial condition of the country after the war?
149. To what disturbances did these difficulties lead?
150. Who was the first President of the United States? Who was Vice-President?
151. Into how many departments did Congress divide the government?
152. What was the amount of the national debt when Washington was elected?
153. What were the State debts contracted during the Revolution?
154. Who restored the national credit?
155. When and where was a national bank established?
156. When was the seat of government transferred to Philadelphia, and when to Washington?
157. Describe the Whisky Rebellion in Pennsylvania.
158. By what names were the political parties known in 1794?
159. When and where was Washington born, and where did he die?
160. What troubles arose with France during Washington's administration?
161. What troubles with England?
162. Who was the second President of the United States, and who Vice-President?
163. Describe the Alien and Sedition laws.
164. What threatened troubles with France during Adams's administration?
165. Who was the third President, and who Vice-President?
166. During whose administration was the seat of government transferred to Washington?
167. What important purchase was made by President Jefferson?
168. Give an account of the war with the Barbary States.
169. Describe Burr's conspiracy.
170. What threatened a rupture with England during Jefferson's term?
171. When was the introduction of slavery into the United States prohibited?
172. What State was admitted during Jefferson's administration?
173. Who was the fourth President, and who Vice-President?
174. What Indian troubles existed at this time?
175. Who was the hero of Tippecanoe?
176. What foreign war began during Madison's administration?
177. What State was admitted when Madison was President?
178. Give the cause of the war of 1812.
179. What was the first engagement of this war?
180. What is said of General Hull?
181. Name the most noted battles of the year 1812.
182. Who was the hero of Chippewa?
183. Name the battles of 1813.
184. What great naval victory was won this year?
185. When and by whom was the city of Washington captured?
186. What was the last great battle of this war?
187. Name all the victories on the American side in the year 1813.
188. When and upon what terms was the treaty signed that closed the war of 1812?
189. What was the financial condition of the country after the return of peace?
190. Give an account of the Hartford Convention.
191. During whose administration was Indiana admitted?

192. Who was the fifth President, and who Vice-President?
193. What Indian troubles arose during Monroe's term?
194. Name the States admitted during Monroe's administration.
195. Describe the Missouri Compromise.
196. What is the Monroe Doctrine?
197. When did Lafayette visit the United States?
198. Who was the sixth President, and who Vice-President?
199. For what is the Fourth of July, 1826, noted?
200. Describe the Tariff troubles.
201. Who was the seventh President, and who Vice-President?
202. By whom was the system of rotation in office introduced?
203. What was the fate of Osceola?
204. What led to the State Rights difficulties?
205. Describe the Compromise Bill of 1843.
206. What States were admitted during Jackson's administration?
207. Who was the eighth President, and who Vice-President?
208. What Indian war now came to a close?
209. Who was the ninth President, and who Vice-President?
210. Describe Dorr's Rebellion.
211. Which President admitted Texas into the Union?
212. What other States were added during his term?
213. Who was the tenth President, and who Vice-President?
214. Who was President when the Mexican War began?
215. Who was the eleventh President, and who Vice-President?
216. What led to the Mexican War?
217. When and where was the first battle of this war fought?
218. Name the principal battles fought during this war, and the opposing generals in each.
219. When and where was the last battle of this war fought?
220. When was the treaty signed that closed the war?
221. What States were included in the grant of land thus obtained?
222. Who was the twelfth President, and who Vice-President?
223. What threatened the disruption of the Union during Taylor's administration?
224. Who was the thirteenth President, and who Vice-President?
225. During whose administration was California admitted as a State?
226. Who was the fourteenth President, and who Vice-President?
227. Describe the Gadsden purchase.
228. Who was the fifteenth President, and who Vice-President?
229. Describe the Dred-Scott decision.
230. Describe the John Brown raid.
231. Who was the sixteenth President, and who Vice-President?
232. What was the result of the election of Abraham Lincoln?
233. What was done by the convention that met at Montgomery, Alabama?
234. Describe the "peace conference."
235. What States were admitted during Buchanan's administration?
236. Describe the attack upon Fort Sumter.
237. When and where was the first great battle of the war fought?
238. Who succeeded McDowell in the command of the army?
239. What was the capital of the Southern Confederacy?
240. What of the Mason and Slidell affair?
241. Name the principal battles of 1861, and the opposing commanders in each.
242. What was the Federal plan for the campaign of 1862?

243. What four forts were captured this year?
244. Describe the naval battle at Hampton Roads.
245. Who commanded the Southern forces this year?
246. Name the important battles of 1862.
247. What was the condition of the opposing forces at the beginning of 1863?
248. What was the Emancipation Proclamation, and when was it issued?
249. In what battle was Stonewall Jackson mortally wounded?
250. Name the forces and opposing generals in the battle of Gettysburg.
251. Name the important battles of 1863.
252. What caused the separation of West Virginia from Virginia?
253. How did the Southern forces compare in number with those of the North in 1864?
254. What were the two great Federal movements of 1864?
255. Which was the most noted of the Confederate privateers?
256. What led to the Alabama claims?
257. Describe the Red River expedition.
258. What cities in Georgia were captured?
259. Name the battles of 1864.
260. What State was admitted in 1864?
261. When and where was the last great battle fought?
262. When and to whom did the three Southern armies surrender?
263. When did the Union forces enter Richmond?
264. Describe the assassination of President Lincoln.
265. Who succeeded him as the seventeenth President?
266. What of President Johnson's impeachment?
267. How did the United States obtain Alaska?
268. Name three other important events of Johnson's administration.
269. What State was admitted during Johnson's term?
270. Who was the eighteenth President, and who Vice-President?
271. For what was the first year of Grant's administration remarkable?
272. How were the Alabama claims adjusted?
273. What State came into the Union August 1, 1876?
274. What can you tell about the Centennial Exposition?
275. What is said of the national elections of November, 1876?
276. What can you tell of the Electoral Commission?
277. Who became President, and who Vice-President, March 3, 1877?
278. When did Hayes's inauguration take place?
279. Name three noted events in President Hayes's administration.
280. What seemed to exercise the public mind at the end of Hayes's administration?
281. Who became President and Vice-President March 4, 1881?
282. Who resigned their seats in the Senate of the United States?
283. Describe the events of Garfield's shooting and death.
284. When and how was President Arthur sworn into office?
285. What order of succession was established in case of the death of both President and Vice-President?
286. Give an account of the rescue of Lieutenant Greely and his party.
287. What noted generals died during Cleveland's administration?
288. What Centennial anniversaries occurred in 1887 and 1889?
289. Give an account of the great Pennsylvania flood in 1889.
290. What new States were admitted in 1889?
291. When and how was the Territory of Oklahoma organized?
292. What new States were admitted in 1890?
293. When was the McKinley tariff bill passed?





















